December 1995
Volume 40, Number 12
ISSN 0020-1324-RECACP

# RESPIRATORY CARE

A MONTHLY SCIENCE JOURNAL
40TH YEAR—ESTABLISHED 1956

Call for
1996 OPEN FORUM Abstracts
Early Deadline February 11, 1996!


- Editorials
  - CPGs: Why, Whence, & Whither?
  - Call for CPG Implementation & Assessment
- WOB with Ventilators for Long-Term Support
- Airway Management of the Chronically Intubated Patient
- Special Article from NHLBI: Sleep Apnea
- Clinical Practice Guidelines
  - Assessing Response to Bronchodilator Therapy at Point of Care
  - Discharge Planning for the Respiratory Care Patient
  - Long-Term Invasive Mechanical Ventilation in the Home
  - Capnography/Capnometry during Mechanical Ventilation
  - Selection of an Aerosol Delivery Device for Neonatal and Pediatric Patients
  - Polysomnography

The act of

# Insight

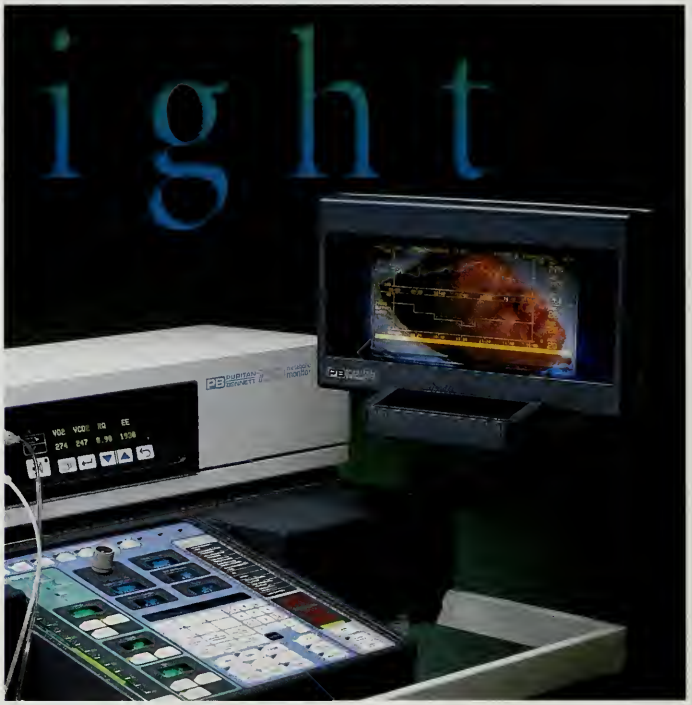
apprehending

the inner nature

of things

or of

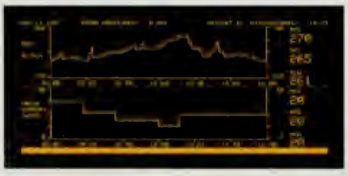
seeing intuitively.



Look closely. Here lies the reflection of your good judgement. In recognizing that your patients rely upon the most qualified clinical decisions, Nellcor Puritan Bennett brings you effective information tools for making them with confidence and clarity.

## Introducing new trending parameters for the 7250™ Metabolic Monitor

Together, with the 7200® Series Ventilator, they comprise a ventilatory system that gives you more than respiratory and metabolic data. It gives you the means to look beyond the surface to evaluate a patient's status at a glance.



*With the new 7250 Metabolic Monitor and Graphics 2.0, trending parameters such as $VO_2$ clearly show your patient's response to decreased ventilatory support during weaning.*

*According to Dr. C. Price, M.D., C.M., F.R.C.P. and Gail Lang, RRT, of Credit Valley Hospital in Ontario Canada,*

**"In our opinion, the 7250 Metabolic Monitor provided an accurate assessment of our patient's nutritional requirements and assisted us in making the necessary adjustments to quickly wean him from the ventilator."**

We even make continuous trending look easy. With the new Graphics 2.0 software option, you can opt for a breath-by-breath display of metabolic parameters like $O_2$ consumption, $CO_2$ production, respiratory quotient and energy expenditure. So you won't waste your own energy attempting to estimate the complete daily nutritional picture from inconclusive spot checks.

## See *your* patients more clearly

To find out more about our "New Tools for Greater Insight," contact the world's leading supplier of ventilator systems. Call Nellcor Puritan Bennett at 800-255-6773 (U.S.A.)
44-181-577-1870 (Europe)
619-929-4551 (Far East / Latin America)

NELLCOR PURITAN BENNETT™

7200 and 7250 are trademarks of Puritan-Bennett.

©1995 Nellcor Puritan Bennett All rights reserved.
A-AA2210-00 (9/95)

Circle 155 on reader service card

Visit AARC Booths 802, 1302, 1303, and 1305 in Orlando

# Your Critical Skills Made The Difference, Tell Us How. . .

## "Positive Outcomes with Positive Closure" Contest

Share your expertise utilizing the "positive closure" Passy-Muir Speaking Valves with your ventilator dependent patients. You could win an opportunity for you, your patient and/or your department to be featured in a full page color advertisement in a national respiratory journal, as well as a $250 scholarship to the CEU program of your choice and Passy-Muir Ventilator Speaking Valves for your department or facility.

### Positive Closure Design

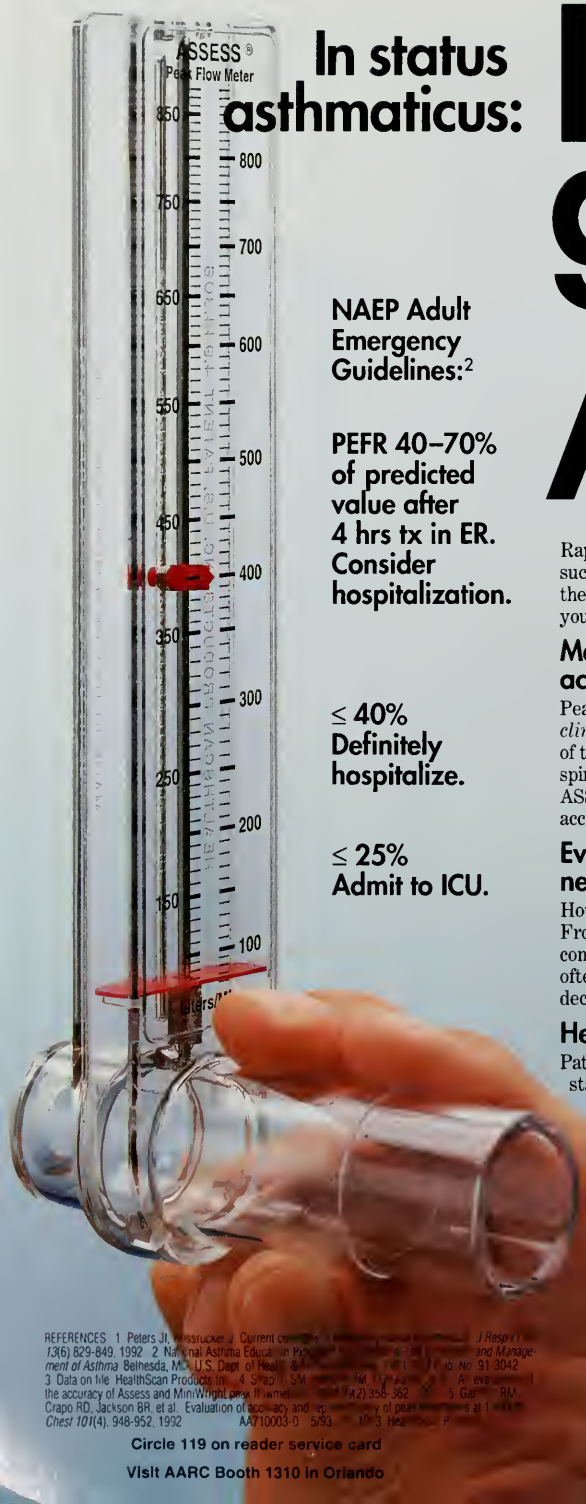
The Passy-Muir Tracheostomy Speaking Valves are designed for communication for tracheostomized and ventilator dependent patients. They are the only one-way valves that have positive closure. The valves are closed except when the patient inhales, providing a positive seal with no air leak on expiration. Positive closure provides significant benefits over over-pressure one-way valves because it promotes a "closed system" which restores the patient's airway to a more normal physiology. This facilitates improvement in swallowing, secretion management, restoration of physiologic PEEP and speech production. Positive closure, however, does not provide a protective column of air while tracheostomy tube, to restrict secretions from coming up the tube into the throat.

### Rules

1. Entries must be submitted by ventilator dependent patients and must be accompanied by a letter of recommendation from a physician, respiratory therapist, nurse, speech pathologist or family member describing the patient's progress with the Passy-Muir Valve. Submissions must be typed, double-spaced and limited to 500 words. Photographs of the patient using the Passy-Muir Valve are encouraged but not required. Entries will not be returned.
2. Submit a photocopy of the patient's consent to participate in the Passy-Muir Valve contest. Passy-Muir will secure any necessary consents for publication.
3. U.S. residents only. Entries must be received by December 31, 1996. Winners will be notified by February 1, 1997.

*Passy Muir Inc.*

Please contact us to set a free in-service or a Continuing Education Seminar to schedule and order your Passy-Muir Valves. Information subject to change without notice. Patent Nos. 4,571,741; 4,827,925; 5,027,807; 5,074,299; 5,094,235; 5,150,291; 5,271,389; 5,279,289; 5,325,861; 5,363,838; 5,390,669; 5,398,676; 5,439,451; 5,474,532; 5,509,895; 5,520,612; 5,529,060; 5,542,923; 5,560,354; 5,582,167; 5,603,315; 5,611,335; 5,645,049; 5,647,347; 5,657,752; 5,664,562; 5,678,539; 5,685,296; 5,687,715; 5,697,364; 5,701,892; 5,704,345; 5,715,812; 5,720,283; 5,730,121; 5,735,271; 5,735,272; 5,738,094; 5,738,095; 5,738,096; 5,738,097; 5,738,098; 5,738,099; 5,738,100; 5,738,101; 5,738,102; 5,738,103; 5,738,104; 5,738,105; 5,738,106; 5,738,107; 5,738,108; 5,738,109; 5,738,110; 5,738,111; 5,738,112; 5,738,113; 5,738,114; 5,738,115; 5,738,116; 5,738,117; 5,738,118; 5,738,119; 5,738,120; 5,738,121; 5,738,122; 5,738,123; 5,738,124; 5,738,125; 5,738,126; 5,738,127; 5,738,128; 5,738,129; 5,738,130; 5,738,131; 5,738,132; 5,738,133;




# In status asthmaticus:

# Don't guess.

# Assess.

**NAEP Adult Emergency Guidelines:[2]**

**PEFR 40–70% of predicted value after 4 hrs tx in ER. Consider hospitalization.**

**≤ 40% Definitely hospitalize.**

**≤ 25% Admit to ICU.**

Rapid initiation and close monitoring of therapy are vital to successful ER management of severe asthma.[1] That's why the ASSESS® Peak Flow Meter should be a vital part of your armamentarium. ASSESS lets you —

## Measure airway obstruction easily, accurately, cost-effectively.

Peak expiratory flow rate (PEFR) provides an objective, *clinically relevant* measurement of airflow — at a fraction of the cost, bulk, and inconvenience of conventional spirometry.[2] And when seconds count, you can count on ASSESS to deliver those measurements with superior accuracy and reproducibility.[3-5]

## Evaluate response to therapy and need for hospitalization.

How is your patient doing? What should *you* be doing? From initial presentation through discharge, the rugged, compact ASSESS gives you the hard data you need — as often as you need it — to help you make informed treatment decisions in line with NAEP recommendations.[2]

## Help prevent future acute exacerbations.

Patients don't come back when their maintenance therapy stays on track. Keep it on track with ASSESS — and a regular program of PEFR monitoring at home, work, or school — as a routine part of your discharge orders.

For more information about how ASSESS can help you deliver better asthma care, **call HealthScan Products at 1-800-962-1266.**

**ASSESS® Peak Flow Meter**

**STANDARD RANGE** 60 to 880 L/min

**LOW RANGE** 30 to 390 L/min

**Setting the standard for peak flow monitoring.**

REFERENCES 1. Peters JI, Strucker J. Current [illegible] J Respir [illegible] 13(6) 829-849, 1992 2. National Asthma Education [illegible] and Management of Asthma Bethesda, MD: U.S. Dept of Health [illegible] No 91 3042 3. Data on file HealthScan Products Inc. 4. Sharp JT, Sly [illegible] A evaluation of the accuracy of Assess and MiniWright peak flowmeters [illegible] (2) 358-362 5. Gardner RM, Crapo RO, Jackson BR, et al. Evaluation of accuracy and [illegible] of peak flow meters at 1 [illegible] Chest 101(4), 948-952, 1992

AA710003-0 5/93

Circle 119 on reader service card

Visit AARC Booth 1310 in Orlando

# RESPIRATORY CARE

A Monthly Science Journal. Established 1956. Official Journal of the American Association for Respiratory Care.



**EDITOR**
Pat Brougher BA RRT

**ASSOCIATE EDITOR**
Kaye Weber MS RRT

**EDITORIAL OFFICE**
11030 Ables Lane
Dallas TX 75229
(214) 243-2272

**EDITORIAL BOARD**

James K Stoller MD, Chairman
Cleveland Clinic Foundation
Cleveland, Ohio

Richard D Branson RRT
University of Cincinnati
Medical Center
Cincinnati, Ohio

Crystal L Dunlevy EdD RRT
The Ohio State University
Columbus, Ohio

Charles G Durbin Jr MD
The University of Virginia
Health Sciences Center
Charlottesville, Virginia

Thomas D East PhD
LDS Hospital
University of Utah
Salt Lake City, Utah

Dean R Hess PhD RRT
Massachusetts General Hospital
Harvard Medical School
Boston, Massachusetts

Neil R MacIntyre Jr MD
Duke University Medical Center
Durham, North Carolina

Shelley C Mishoe PhD RRT
Medical College of Georgia
Augusta, Georgia

Joseph L Rau PhD RRT
Georgia State University
Atlanta, Georgia


## Contents ...


December 1995
Volume 40, Number 12


### EDITORIALS


1264 Clinical Practice Guidelines: Why, Whence, and Whither?
*by Dean Hess—Boston, Massachusetts*

1269 Guidelines: A Call for Local Implementation and Assessment of Impact
*by Kingman P Strohl—Cleveland, Ohio*


### ORIGINAL CONTRIBUTIONS


1270 Work of Breathing Imposed by Five Ventilators Used for Long-Term Support: The Effects of PEEP and Simulated Patient Demand
*by Richard D Branson and Kenneth Davis Jr—Cincinnati, Ohio*


### REVIEWS, OVERVIEWS, & UPDATES


1279 Airway Management of the Chronically Intubated Patient
*by George S Leisure, David J Stone, Burkhard F Spiekermann, and David L Bogdonoff—Charlottesville, Virginia*


### SPECIAL ARTICLE


1287 Sleep Apnea: Is Your Patient at Risk?
*A special article from the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute, reprinted with permission.*


### GUIDELINES, RECOMMENDATIONS, & STATEMENTS


1299 AARC Clinical Practice Guidelines
1300 Assessing Response to Bronchodilator Therapy at Point of Care
1308 Discharge Planning for the Respiratory Care Patient
1313 Long-Term Invasive Mechanical Ventilation in the Home
1321 Capnography/Capnometry during Mechanical Ventilation
1325 Selection of an Aerosol Delivery Device for Neonatal and Pediatric Patients
1336 Polysomnography

# TELL YOUR PATIENTS NOT TO HURRY BACK.

INTRODUCING THE PULSAIR®.5 LIQUID OXYGEN PORTABLE FROM DEVILBISS.

Now your patients can enjoy a relaxing visit with their friends and family, take a leisurely stroll or an unhurried shopping trip without having to worry about running out of oxygen.

The compact Pulsair.5 weighs just over 6 pounds when full. Yet, it provides over 10 hours of oxygen at 2 liters per minute*, giving your patients the longest use time of any comparably-sized unit on the market today.

Featuring proven PulseDose™ oxygen delivery technology, the unit senses the precise moment of inspiration and delivers the prescribed volume of oxygen on the leading edge of every breathing cycle—the very moment it is clinically needed.

The Pulsair.5 not only lets your patients go further before refilling, it lets you go longer between deliveries. Saving you time and money. And, with several cryogenic coupler styles available, the Pulsair.5 is compatible with most liquid oxygen systems.

For more information about the Pulsair.5 Liquid Oxygen Portable, call 1-800-DeV-1988. In Canada, call 1-800-263-3390. Then get ready to send your patients on their way.

PulseDose
*On demand from DeVilbiss.*

DEVILBISS
a division of
SUNRISE MEDICAL

Sunrise Medical
Official Sponsor
1996 Paralympics

*20 breaths per minute.

Circle 133 on reader service card

Visit AARC Booths 1010, 1012, and 1014 in Orlando

**MANAGING EDITOR**
Ray Masferrer BA RRT

**ASSISTANT EDITOR**
Kris Williams BA

**EDITORIAL ASSISTANT**
Linda Barcus BBA

**SECTION EDITORS**
Robert R Fluck Jr MS RRT
MS Jastremski MD
*Blood Gas Corner*

Hugh S Mathewson MD
*Drug Capsule*

Richard D Branson RRT
Robert S Campbell RRT
*Kittredge's Corner*

Charles G Irvin PhD
Jack Wanger MBA RPFT RRT
*PFT Corner*

Patricia Ann Doorley MS RRT
Charles G Durbin Jr MD
*Test Your Radiologic Skill*

**CONSULTING EDITORS**
Frank E Biondo BS RRT
Howard J Birenbaum MD
Robert L Chatburn RRT
Donald R Elton MD
Ronald B George MD
James M Hurst MD
Robert M Kacmarek PhD RRT
Michael McPeck BS RRT
David J Pierson MD
John Shigeoka MD
Jeffrey J Ward MEd RRT

**PRODUCTION**
Steve Bowden
Donna Knauf
Karen Singleterry

**MARKETING**
Director
Dale Griffiths

Advertising Assistant
Beth Binkley

**ADVERTISING**
Tim Goldsbury

# ... Contents

December 1995
Volume 40, Number 12

## BOOKS, FILMS, TAPES, & SOFTWARE

1344 Assisted Mechanical Ventilation at Home: A Practical Guide
*reviewed by Teri Nikolai Wilson—Dayton, Ohio*

## CLASSIC REPRINTS

1346 RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX: The Inside Story
*by Julius H Comroe Jr—Reprinted, with permission, from the American Review of Respiratory Disease 1976;113:381-385.*

## APPRECIATION OF REVIEWERS

1351 Listing of This Year's Manuscript & OPEN FORUM Reviewers

## ANNUAL INDEXES FOR VOLUME 40, 1995

1352 Author Index
1357 Subject Index

## NOTICES

1373 1995 ARCF Literary Award Winners

## IN THIS ISSUE

1246 Abstracts from other Journals
1384 Advertisers Index & Help Lines
1384 Author Index
1383 Calendar of Events
1379 Call for OPEN FORUM Abstracts
1374 Manuscript Preparation Guide
1381 MedWatch
1378 New Products & Services

**RESPIRATORY CARE** (ISSN 0020-1324) is published monthly by Daedalus Enterprises Inc, at 11030 Ables Lane, Dallas TX 75229-4593, for the American Association for Respiratory Care. One volume is published per year beginning each January. Subscription rates are $65 per year in the US; $80 in all other countries (for airmail, add $84).
The contents of the Journal are indexed in Hospital and Health Administration Index, Cumulative Index to Nursing and Allied Health Literature, and Excerpta Medica. Ahridged versions of RESPIRATORY CARE are also published in Italian and Japanese, with permission from Daedalus Enterprises Inc.
Second class postage paid at Dallas TX. POSTMASTER: Send address changes to RESPIRATORY CARE, Membership Office, Daedalus Enterprises Inc, 11030 Ables Lane, Dallas TX 75229-4593.

**Editorials, Commentaries, and Reviews To Note**

**Smoking and Health: Physician Responsibility A Statement of the Joint Committee on Smoking and Health** (special report)—American College of Chest Physicians; American Thoracic Society; Asia Pacific Society of Respirology; Canadian Thoracic Society; European Respiratory Society; and International Union Against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease. Chest 1995;108(4):1118-1121.

**Assessment of Asthma in the Workplace** (statement)—Chair: M Chan-Yeung. Chest 1995;108(4):1084-1117.

**The Challenge of Tuberculosis: Statements on Global Control and Prevention** (statement)—DA Enarson, J Grosset, A Mwinga, ES Hershfield, R O'Brien, S Cole, L Reichman, and finalized by conference participants, Washington DC, Sept 14-15, 1995. Lancet 1995;346:809.

**Towards the Elimination of Tuberculosis** (editorial)—R Horton. Lancet 1995;346:790.

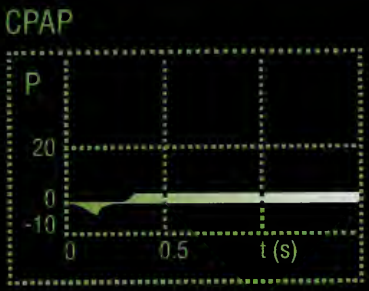
**Standardization of Spirometry, 1994 Update** (statement)—The American Thoracic Society Committee on Proficiency Standards for Clinical Pulmonary Function Laboratories. Am J Respir Crit Care 1995;152:1107-1136.

**Continuing Patient Care with Metered-Dose Inhalers**—A Woodcock. J Aerosol Med 1995;8 (Suppl 2):S-5.

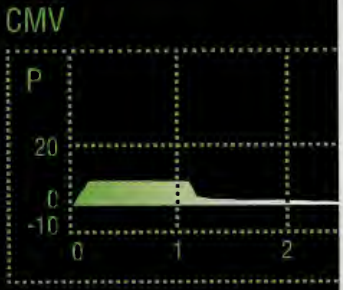
International guidelines recommend inhaled therapy over oral therapy for asthma because of greater efficacy and safety. Metered-dose inhalers (MDIs) are the delivery system of choice for the majority of patients with asthma. They have been well tried and tested and proven to be safe, reliably delivering a reproducible and precise dose, and account for 85% of the 400 million inhalers currently sold worldwide. Current products using chlorofluorocarbon (CFC) 11/12 as the propellant are being reformulated. Under the Montreal Protocol, CFCs are to be phased out worldwide, though MDIs have been granted temporary exemption, thus far until 1997. Two propellants, hydrofluoroalkane (HFA) 134a and 227, have been identified by the pharmaceutical industry to replace CFCs. However, they have different properties and reformulation has been difficult in relation to surfactants, valves and elastomeric seals. The manufacturing process has been re-engineered to take place at high pressure, because at normal pressure HFA 134a is a gas, in contrast with CFC 11 which is a liquid at room temperature. Glaxo has carried out an extensive toxicological assessment of HFA 134a and thorough clinical testing has shown it to be well tolerated. To date they have carried out safety and efficacy testing on reformulations of salbutamol, salmeterol, and fluticasone propionate (FP). Single-dose studies of salbutamol, 200 $\mu$g, with HFA 134a have been shown to provide equivalent protection against bronchial provocation by histamine in both adults and children with asthma when compared with the currently available CFC preparations. In a subsequent 4-week study, both formulations had similar effects on morning peak flow and the patients believed that the 2 preparations were equivalent. Single doses of salmeterol, 50 $\mu$g and 100 $\mu$g, provide equal protection against bronchial provocation by methacholine compared with the respective dose of the current CFC formulation. A 4-week study comparing both preparations showed equivalent effect with similar improvements in morning peak flow for both preparations. A double-blind study has compared FP, 250 $\mu$g twice daily, with HFA 134a and the current CFC formulation in moderate asthmatics previously taking up to 800 $\mu$g a day of inhaled corticosteroid. Morning peak flow improved by approximately 20 L/min in both treatment groups. Monitoring of adverse events and clinical and laboratory test data has shown a very similar profile for safety and tolerability of HFA 134a formulations when compared with current CFC formulations, with no new or unexpected adverse events in over 2,000 patients. Both propellants will be available during the transition period. Doctors and patients will continue to see the need for MDIs and they will remain the most widely used delivery system for asthma therapy into the next millennium.

**Ambient Air Pollution and Hospitalization for Congestive Heart Failure among Elderly People in Seven Large US Cities**—RD Morris, EN Naumova, RL Munasinghe. Am J Public Health 1995;85(10):1361.

OBJECTIVES: Preexisting data sets were used to investigate the association between hospital admissions for congestive heart failure and air pollutants. METHODS: Medicare hospital admissions data, ambient air pollution monitoring data, and meteorological data were used to create daily values of hospital admissions for congestive heart failure, maximum hourly temperature, and maximum hourly levels of carbon monoxide, nitrogen dioxide, sulfur dioxide, and ozone. Data were compiled for each of 7 cities (Chicago, Detroit, Houston, Los Angeles, Milwaukee, New York, and Philadelphia) for 1986 through 1989. Single-pollutant and multipollutant models with adjustments for temperature, seasonal effects, and weekly cycles were used in conducting negative binomial regression analyses. RESULTS: Ambient carbon monoxide levels were positively associated with hospital admissions for congestive heart failure in the single-pollutant and multipollutant models for each of the 7 cities. The relative risk of hospital admission for congestive heart failure associated with an increase of 10 ppm in carbon monoxide ranged from 1.10 in New York to 1.37 in Los Angeles. CONCLUSIONS: Hospital admissions for congestive heart failure ex-




Occlusion-pressure




Intrinsic PEEP

# Always A Step Ahead!

Evita makes work of breathing even easier!

Now **Dräger** provides you with two more powerful tools to optimize weaning of your patients.

Introducing **Flowtrigger** without increase of expiratory resistance, combined with **P01 measurement** to determine the patients ventilatory drive.

To extend monitoring capabilities Evita now includes the ability to measure **Intrinsic Peep** with the display of **Trapped Volume.**

With **Dräger** you can stay one step ahead in providing safe, patient friendly ventilation. For the difference your patients can feel, choose...

**Dräger:** Technology for Life

Flowtrigger

**Dräger**

**Technology for life**

4101 Pleasant Valley Road Suite 100 Chantilly, VA 22021
Tel (703) 817-0100 Fax (703) 817-0101

**Circle 101 on reader service card**

hibited a consistent association with daily variations in ambient carbon monoxide. This association was independent of season, temperature, and other major gaseous pollutants.

**Multidrug-Resistant Tuberculosis in Patients without HIV Infection**—EE Telzak, K Sepkowitz, P Alpert, S Mannheimer, F Medard, W El-Sadr, S Blum, A Gagliardi, N Salomon, G Turett. N Engl J Med 1995;333(14):907.

BACKGROUND: Investigations of outbreaks of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis have found low rates of treatment response and very high mortality, and they have mainly involved patients with advanced human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection. For patients without HIV infection, 1 study reported an overall rate of response to treatment of 56%, and the mortality from tuberculosis was 22%. We investigated treatment response and mortality rates in 26 HIV-negative patients in New York with multidrug-resistant tuberculosis. METHODS: We obtained detailed data from 7 teaching hospitals in New York City on patients with multidrug-resistant tuberculosis—defined as tuberculosis resistant at least to isoniazid and rifampin—who were HIV-negative on serologic testing. Lengths of times from diagnosis to the initiation of appropriate therapy and from the initiation of appropriate therapy to conversion to negative cultures were assessed. Therapeutic responses were evaluated by both microbiologic and clinical criteria. RESULTS: Between March 1991 and September 1994, 26 HIV-negative patients were identified and treated. Of the 25 patients for whom adequate data were available for analysis, 24 (96%) had clinical responses; all 17 patients for whom data on microbiologic response were available had such a response. The median times from diagnosis to the initiation of appropriate therapy and from the initiation of therapy to culture conversion were 44 days (range, 0 to 181) and 69 days (range, 2 to 705), respectively. Side effects requiring the discontinuation of medication occurred in 4 of 23 patients (17%) who were treated with second-line antituberculosis medications. The median follow-up for the 23 patients who responded and who received appropriate therapy was 91 weeks (range, 41 to 225). CONCLUSIONS: In this report from New York City, HIV-negative patients with multidrug-resistant tuberculosis, contrary to previous reports, responded well to appropriate chemotherapy, both clinically and microbiologically.

**Physical Properties of Aerosolized Immunoglobulin for Inhalation Therapy**—PC Rimensberger, C Roth. J Aerosol Med 1995;8(3):255.

Animal studies suggest that passive immunization by intratracheal application of gammaglobulins may succeed in treating small children and infants with severe lower respiratory tract infection caused by respiratory syncytial virus (RSV). Since proteins foam easily when stirred up or used with compressed air, the feasibility of nebulization of the immunoglobulin solution (IVIG, Sandoglobulin®) had to be tested. The therapeutic effect of a drug delivered via inhalation is proportional to the mass of aerosol deposited in the lungs. For a fixed breathing pattern, the amount deposited per unit of time in the thoracic region depends on mass flowrate and distribution of aerosol mass by droplet size. Both these variables were determined in relation to the weight concentration (osmolality), viscosity, and surface tension of the IVIG solution for 4 compressed air nebulizers. The mass flowrate of the spray decreases as the weight concentration of the solution increases, but droplet size distribution does not change. If the IVIG solution does not exceed 5% and the airflow rate is 6 L/min, a mass flow of about 150 mg to 250 mg (7.5 to 12.5 mg IVIG) per minute is obtained, depending on the physical characteristics of the nebulizer used. Low mass median diameter of about 2 $\mu$m and a mass distribution with a high percentage of the droplets below 6 $\mu$m will allow optimum intrapulmonary deposition in infants.

**The Effectiveness of Vaccination against Influenza in Healthy, Working Adults**—KL Nichol, A Lind, KL Margolis, M Murdoch, R McFadden, M Hauge, S Magnan, M Drake. N Engl J Med 1995;333(14):889.

BACKGROUND: Although influenza causes substantial morbidity and mortality in all age groups, current recommendations emphasize annual immunization for people at high risk for complications of influenza. We conducted a double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of vaccination against influenza in healthy, working adults. METHODS: In the fall of 1994, we recruited working adults from 18 to 64 years of age from in and around the Minneapolis-St Paul area and randomly assigned them to receive either influenza vaccine or placebo injections. The primary study outcomes included upper respiratory illnesses, absenteeism from work because of upper respiratory illnesses, and visits to physicians' offices for upper respiratory illnesses. The economic benefits of vaccination were analyzed by estimating the direct and indirect costs associated with immunization and with upper respiratory illnesses. RESULTS: We enrolled a total of 849 subjects. Baseline characteristics were similar in the 2 groups. During the follow-up period, consisting of the 1994-1995 influenza season (December 1, 1994, through March 31, 1995), those who received the vaccine reported 25% fewer episodes of upper respiratory illness than those who received the placebo (105 vs 140 episodes/100 subjects, $p < 0.001$), 43% fewer days of sick leave from work due to upper respiratory illness (70 vs 122 days/100 subjects, $p = 0.001$), and 44% fewer visits to physicians' offices for upper respiratory illnesses (31 vs 55 visits/100 subjects, $p = 0.004$). The cost savings were estimated to be $46.85/person vaccinated. CONCLUSIONS: Vaccination against influenza has substantial health-related and economic benefits for healthy, working adults. *See the related editorial:* ***Influenza Vaccine for Healthy Adults?****—PA Patriarca, RA Strikas. N Engl J Med 1995;333(14):933-934.*

**Delivery and Retention of an Insulin Aerosol Produced by a New Jet Nebulizer**—J Jendle, BE Karlberg, J Persliden, L Franzén, M Arborelius Jr. J Aerosol Med 1995;8(3):243.

This study describes the delivery and distribution of an aerosol generated by a jet nebulizer (MAXIN®) in an experimental animal model. Anesthetized, intubated and ventilated piglets inhaled radiolabeled technetium diethylenetriaminepenta-acetic acid ($^{99m}$Tc-DTPA) through the endotracheal tube. The lungs were excised en bloc and scintigraphed, using a computerized gamma camera to evaluate the pattern of distribution. By nebulizing radiolabeled $^{125}$I-insulin and comparing the activity deposited on inspiratory and expiratory electrostatic filters, delivery and retention of nebulized insulin was assessed. The distribution of aerosol in the lungs was very even and reached the most peripheral parts. The delivery of nebulized insulin was calculated to be 88.9 ± 5.3% and 36.1 ± 8.8% of the insulin delivered to the respiratory tract was retained. The immediate local effects of insulin aerosol administration on the lungs were evaluated using light microscopy. No adverse effects were observed at histopathologic examination of the lung tissue. CONCLUSION: This study shows a high penetration of aerosol to the peripheral parts of the lung and efficient delivery of nebulized insulin when using the MAXIN-nebulizer.

**Bacterial Pneumonia in Persons Infected with the Human Immunodeficiency Virus**—RE Hirschtick, J Glassroth, MC Jordan, TC Wilcosky, JM Wallace, PA Kvale, N Markowitz, MJ Rosen, BT Mangura, PC Hopewell, the Pulmonary Complications of HIV Infection Study Group. N Engl J Med 1995;333(13):845.

BACKGROUND: Patients with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection are at increased risk for bacterial pneumonia in addition to opportunistic infection. However, the risk factors for bacterial pneumonia and its incidence in this population are not well defined. METHODS: In a multicenter, prospective, observational study, we monitored 1,130 HIV-positive and 167 HIV-negative participating adults for up to 64 months for pulmonary disease. The HIV-positive group comprised 814 homosexual or bisexual men, 261 injection drug users, and 55 female partners of HIV-infected men. RESULTS: There were 237 episodes of bacterial pneumonia among the HIV-positive participants (rate, 5.5/100 person-years), as compared with 6 episodes among the HIV-negative participants (rate, 0.9/100 person-years; $p < 0.001$). The rate of bacterial pneumonia increased

# WHICH

HUMIDIFICATION SYSTEM PROVIDES THE OPTIMUM LEVEL OF HUMIDITY

# WHICH

MAINTAINS THE MUCOCILIARY TRANSPORT SYSTEM IN PEAK CONDITION

# WHICH

PRESERVES NATURAL RESISTANCE TO THE DEVELOPMENT OF NOSOCOMIAL PNEUMONIA

Circle 124 on reader service card

Visit AARC Booths 818 and 820 in Orlando

with decreasing CD4-lymphocyte counts (2.3, 6.8, and 10.8 episodes/100 person-years in the strata with more than 500, 200 to 500, and fewer than 200 cells/mm$^3$, respectively; $p \leq 0.022$ for each comparison). Injection-drug users had a higher rate of bacterial pneumonia than did homosexual or bisexual men or female partners. In the stratum with the fewest CD4 lymphocytes, cigarette smoking was associated with an increased rate of pneumonia. Mortality was almost 4 times higher among participants with an episode of pneumonia than among the others. Prophylaxis with trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole was associated with a 67% reduction in confirmed episodes of bacterial pneumonia ($p = 0.007$). CONCLUSIONS: Bacterial pneumonia is more frequent in HIV-positive persons than in seronegative controls, and the risk is highest among those with CD4-lymphocyte counts below 200/mm$^3$ and among injection-drug users.

**Noninvasive Ventilation for Acute Exacerbations of Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease**—L Brochard, J Mancebo, M Wysocki, F Lofaso, G Conti, A Rauss, G Simonneau, S Benito, A Gasparetto, F Lemaire, D Isabey, A Harf. N Engl J Med 1995;333(13):817.

BACKGROUND: In patients with acute exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, noninvasive ventilation may be used in an attempt to avoid endotracheal intubation and complications associated with mechanical ventilation. METHODS: We conducted a prospective, randomized study comparing noninvasive pressure-support ventilation delivered through a face mask with standard treatment in patients admitted to 5 intensive care units over a 15-month period. RESULTS: A total of 85 patients were recruited from a larger group of 275 patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease admitted to the intensive care units in the same period. A total of 42 were randomly assigned to standard therapy and 43 to noninvasive ventilation. The 2 groups had similar clinical characteristics on admission to the hospital. The use of noninvasive ventilation significantly reduced the need for endotracheal intubation (which was dictated by objective criteria): 11 of 43 patients (26%) in the noninvasive-ventilation group were intubated, as compared with 31 of 42 (74%) in the standard-treatment group ($p < 0.001$). In addition, the frequency of complications was significantly lower in the noninvasive-ventilation group (16% vs 48%, $p = 0.001$), and the mean (±SD) hospital stay was significantly shorter for patients receiving noninvasive ventilation (23 ± 17 days vs 35 ± 33 days, $p = 0.005$). The in-hospital mortality rate was also significantly reduced with noninvasive ventilation (4 of 43 patients, or 9%, in the noninvasive-ventilation group died in the hospital, as compared with 12 of 42, or 29%, in the standard-treatment group; $p = 0.02$). CONCLUSIONS: In selected patients with acute exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, noninvasive ventilation can reduce the need for endotracheal intubation, the length of the hospital stay, and the in-hospital mortality rate. *See the related editorial: **Noninvasive Ventilation in Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease**—MW Elliott. N Engl J Med 1995;333(13):870-871.*

**Hyperbaric Oxygen Treatment for Haemorrhagic Radiation Cystitis**—RFM Bevers, DJ Bakker, KH Kurth. Lancet 1995;346:803.

Radiation-induced severe haemorrhagic cystitis is difficult to treat. Conventional treatments may decrease haematuria but do not affect the radiocystitis itself. Hyperbaric oxygen treatment has been reported to do both. We report the results of a prospective study of hyperbaric oxygen (20 sessions of 100% oxygen inhalation at 3 bar for 90 min in a multiplace hyperbaric chamber) to 40 patients with biopsy-proven radiation cystitis and severe haematuria. Haematuria disappeared completely or improved in 37 patients after treatment. Mean follow-up was 23.1 months (range 1-74); and the recurrence rate was 0.12/year. There were no adverse effects. Hyperbaric oxygen treatment should be considered for patients with severe radiation-induced haematuria.

**Are Asthma-Like Symptoms Due to Bronchial or Extrathoracic Airway Dysfunction?**—C Bucca, G Rolla, L Brussino, V De Rose, M Bugiani. Lancet 1995;346:791.

Patients with asthma-like symptoms may not have asthma but obstruction of the extrathoracic airway (EA). To evaluate if dysfunction of the EA causes asthma-like symptoms, we assessed bronchial and EA responsiveness to inhaled histamine in 441 patients who presented with at least 1 of 3 key symptoms—cough, wheeze, dyspnoea—but had neither documented asthma nor bronchial obstruction. The histamine concentrations causing a 20% fall in forced expiratory volume in 1 second ($PC_{20}FEV_1$) and a 25% fall in maximal mid-inspiratory flow ($PC_{25}MIF_{50}$) were used as respective thresholds of bronchial and EA responsiveness. Values 8 mg/mL or less indicated bronchial (B-HR) or EA hyper-responsiveness (EA-HR). The influence of concurrent upper respiratory tract diseases, such as post-nasal drip (PND), pharyngitis, laryngitis and sinusitis, was also assessed. We found 4 response patterns to the histamine challenge: EA-HR in 26.5% of the patients, B-HR in 11.1%, combined EA-HR and B-HR in 40.6%, and no-HR in 21.8%. Cough was reported by 79% of the patients, wheeze by 53%, and dyspnoea by 40%. Patients with cough as the sole presenting symptom (34.2%), as compared with those with wheeze and/or dyspnoea (20%), had significantly greater probability of having EA-HR (OR 5.35, 95% CI 3.25-8.82) and lower probability of having B-HR (OR 0.45, CI 0.28-0.70); patients with cough plus wheeze and/or dyspnoea (45.8%) had significantly greater probability of having both EA-HR and B-HR than either those with cough alone (OR 2.48, CI 1.49-4.13), or those with wheeze and/or dyspnoea but not cough (OR 1.74, CI 1.36-2.22). EA-HR alone or combined with B-HR was strongly associated with EA diseases, particularly pharyngitis and PND. Cough was significantly associated with PND, either when it was the sole symptom (OR 2.16, CI 1.14-4.09) or when it was combined with wheeze and/or dyspnoea (OR 3.53, CI 1.97-6.33). Our results suggest that extrathoracic airway dysfunction may account for asthma-like symptoms, particularly chronic cough. This abnormality seems to be sustained by chronic diseases of the upper respiratory tract.

**Genetic Susceptibility to Asthma—Bronchial Hyperresponsiveness Coinherited with a Major Gene for Atopy**—DS Postma, ER Bleecker, PJ Amelung, KJ Holroyd, J Xu, CIM Panhuysen, DA Meyers, RC Levitt. N Engl J Med 1995;333(14):894.

BACKGROUND: Bronchial hyperresponsiveness, a risk factor for asthma, consists of a heightened bronchoconstrictor response to a variety of stimuli. The condition has a heritable component and is closely related to serum IgE levels and airway inflammation. The basis for these relations is unknown, as is the mechanism of genetic susceptibility to bronchial hyperresponsiveness. We attempted to define the interrelation between atopy and bronchial hyperresponsiveness and to investigate the chromosomal location of this component of asthma. METHODS: We studied 303 children and grandchildren of 84 probands with asthma selected from a homogeneous population in the Netherlands. Ventilatory function, bronchial responsiveness to histamine, and serum total IgE were measured. The association between the last 2 variables was evaluated. Using analyses involving pairs of siblings, we tested for linkage between bronchial hyperresponsiveness and genetic markers on chromosome 5q31-q33, previously shown to be linked to a genetic locus regulating serum total IgE levels. RESULTS: Serum total IgE levels were strongly correlated ($r = 0.65$, $p < 0.01$) in pairs of siblings concordant for bronchial hyperresponsiveness (defined as a ≥ 20% decrease in the forced expiratory volume in 1 second produced by histamine [threshold dose, ≤ 16 mg/mL]), suggesting that these traits are coinherited. However, bronchial hyperresponsiveness was not correlated with serum IgE levels ($r = 0.04$, $p > 0.10$). Analyses of pairs of siblings showed linkage of bronchial hyperresponsiveness with several genetic markers on chromosome 5q, including D5S436 ($p < 0.001$ for a histamine threshold value of ≤ 16 mg/mL). CONCLUSIONS: This study demonstrates that a trait for an elevated level of serum total IgE is coinherited with a trait for bronchial hyperresponsiveness and that a gene governing bronchial hyperresponsiveness is located near a major locus that

# WHICH

IS MADE EVEN LESS LIKELY BY
THE USE OF A CLOSED, DRY CIRCUIT

# WHICH

MEANS THE HUMIDIFIER REQUIRES
LESS SUPERVISION & MAINTENANCE

# WHICH

HELPS MAKE IT THE MOST COST-
EFFECTIVE SYSTEM AVAILABLE?

## THE FISHER & PAYKEL HUMIDIFICATION SYSTEM

CALL 1-800-321-3832 TO ASK YOUR BAXTER REPRESENTATIVE ABOUT THE
HUMIDIFICATION SYSTEM WHICH DELIVERS OPTIMUM CARE WITH SUPERIOR EFFICIENCY.

Circle 126 on reader service card
Visit AARC Booths 818 and 820 in Orlando

Fisher&Paykel
HEALTHCARE

HEAD OFFICE 25 Carbine Road, Panmure PO. Box 14348 Panmure, Auckland, NEW ZEALAND. Tel +64-9-574 0100 Fax +64-9-574 0158
AUSTRALIAN OFFICE 36-40 New Street, Ringwood, Victoria 3134, AUSTRALIA Tel. +61-3-9879 5022 Fax. +61-3-9879 5232
UK OFFICE The Valley Centre, Gordon Road, High Wycombe, Bucks, HP 13 6EQ. UNITED KINGDOM Tel: +44-1494-464 333 Fax: +44-1494-464 888

F&P/HH 178/B

# *Asthma doesn't have to control Rose's life*

# Serevent® (salmeterol xinafoate)

## Serevent®
***(salmeterol xinafoate)***
***Inhalation Aerosol***

**BRIEF SUMMARY**

**Bronchodilator Aerosol**
**For Oral Inhalation Only**

The following is a brief summary only. Before prescribing, see complete prescribing information in Serevent® Inhalation Aerosol product labeling.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS:** Serevent® Inhalation Aerosol is contraindicated in patients with a history of hypersensitivity to any of the components.

**WARNINGS:**
**IMPORTANT INFORMATION: SEREVENT® INHALATION AEROSOL SHOULD NOT BE INITIATED IN PATIENTS WITH SIGNIFICANTLY WORSENING OR ACUTELY DETERIORATING ASTHMA, WHICH MAY BE A LIFE-THREATENING CONDITION. Serious acute respiratory events, including fatalities, have been reported, both in the US and worldwide, when Serevent Inhalation Aerosol has been initiated in this situation.**

**Although it is not possible from these reports to determine whether Serevent Inhalation Aerosol contributed to these adverse events or simply failed to relieve the deteriorating asthma, the use of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol in this setting is inappropriate.**

**SEREVENT INHALATION AEROSOL SHOULD NOT BE USED TO TREAT ACUTE SYMPTOMS. It is crucial to inform patients of this and prescribe a short-acting, inhaled $beta_2$-agonist for this purpose as well as warn them that increasing inhaled $beta_2$-agonist use is a signal of deteriorating asthma.**

**SEREVENT INHALATION AEROSOL IS NOT A SUBSTITUTE FOR INHALED OR ORAL CORTICOSTEROIDS. Corticosteroids should not be stopped or reduced when Serevent Inhalation Aerosol is initiated.**

**(See PRECAUTIONS: Information for Patients section of the full prescribing information and the separate PATIENT'S INSTRUCTIONS FOR USE leaflet.)**

1. Do Not Introduce Serevent Inhalation Aerosol as a Treatment for Acutely Deteriorating Asthma: Serevent Inhalation Aerosol is intended for the maintenance treatment of asthma (see INDICATIONS and USAGE section of the full prescribing information) and should not be introduced in acutely deteriorating asthma, which is a potentially life-threatening condition. There are no data demonstrating that Serevent Inhalation Aerosol provides greater efficacy than or additional efficacy to short-acting, inhaled $beta_2$-agonists in patients with worsening asthma. Serious acute respiratory events, including fatalities, have been reported, both in the US and worldwide, in patients receiving Serevent Inhalation Aerosol. In most cases, these have occurred in patients with severe asthma (e.g., patients with a history of corticosteroid dependence, low pulmonary function, intubation, mechanical ventilation, frequent hospitalizations, or previous life-threatening acute asthma exacerbations) and/or in some patients in whom asthma has been acutely deteriorating (e.g., unresponsive to usual medications, increasing need for inhaled short-acting $beta_2$-agonists, increasing need for systemic corticosteroids, significant increase in symptoms, recent emergency room visits, sudden or progressive deterioration in pulmonary function). However, they have occurred in a few patients with less severe asthma as well. It was not possible from these reports to determine whether Serevent Inhalation Aerosol contributed to these events or simply failed to relieve the deteriorating asthma.

2. Do Not Use Serevent Inhalation Aerosol to Treat Acute Symptoms: A short-acting, inhaled $beta_2$-agonist, not Serevent Inhalation Aerosol, should be used to relieve acute asthma symptoms. When prescribing Serevent Inhalation Aerosol, the physician must also provide the patient with a short-acting, inhaled $beta_2$-agonist (e.g., albuterol) for treatment of symptoms that occur acutely, despite regular twice daily (morning and evening) use of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol.

When beginning treatment with Serevent Inhalation Aerosol, patients who have been taking short-acting, inhaled $beta_2$-agonists on a regular basis (e.g., q.i.d.) should be instructed to discontinue the regular use of these drugs and use them only for symptomatic relief if they develop acute asthma symptoms while taking Serevent Inhalation Aerosol (see PRECAUTIONS: Information for Patients).

3. Watch for Increasing Use of Short-Acting, Inhaled $Beta_2$-Agonists, Which Is a Marker of Deteriorating Asthma: Asthma may deteriorate acutely over a period of hours or chronically over several days or longer. If the patient's short-acting, inhaled $beta_2$-agonist becomes less effective or the patient needs more inhalations than usual, this may be a marker of destabilization of asthma. In this setting, the patient requires immediate re-evaluation with reassessment of the treatment regimen, giving special consideration to the possible need for corticosteroids. If the patient uses four or more inhalations per day of a short-acting, inhaled $beta_2$-agonist for 2 or more consecutive days, or if more than one canister (200 inhalations per canister) of short-acting, inhaled $beta_2$-agonist is used in an 8-week period in conjunction with Serevent Inhalation Aerosol, then the patient should consult the physician for re-evaluation. **Increasing the daily dosage of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol in this situation is not appropriate. Serevent Inhalation Aerosol should not be used more frequently than twice daily (morning and evening) at the recommended dose of two inhalations.**



4. Do Not Use Serevent Inhalation Aerosol as a Substitute for Oral or Inhaled Corticosteroids: There are no data demonstrating that Serevent Inhalation Aerosol has a clinical anti-inflammatory effect and could be expected to take the place of, or reduce the dose of corticosteroids. Patients who already require oral or inhaled corticosteroids for treatment of asthma should be continued on this type of treatment even if they feel better as a result of initiating Serevent Inhalation Aerosol. Any change in corticosteroid dosage should be made ONLY after clinical evaluation (see PRECAUTIONS: Information for Patients).

5. Do Not Exceed Recommended Dosage: As with other inhaled $beta_2$-adrenergic drugs, Serevent Inhalation Aerosol should not be used more often or at higher doses than recommended. Fatalities have been reported in association with excessive use of inhaled sympathomimetic drugs. Large doses of inhaled or oral salmeterol (12 to 20 times the recommended dose) have been associated with clinically significant prolongation of the QT interval, which has the potential for producing ventricular arrhythmias.

6. Paradoxical Bronchospasm: As with other inhaled asthma medication, paradoxical bronchospasm (which can be life threatening) has been reported following the use of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol. If it occurs, treatment with Serevent Inhalation Aerosol should be discontinued immediately and alternative therapy instituted.

7. Immediate Hypersensitivity Reactions: Immediate hypersensitivity reactions may occur after administration of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol, as demonstrated by rare cases of urticaria, angioedema, rash, and bronchospasm.

8. Upper Airway Symptoms: Symptoms of laryngeal spasm, irritation, or swelling, such as stridor and choking, have been reported rarely in patients receiving Serevent Inhalation Aerosol.

**PRECAUTIONS:**

**General:** 1. Use With Spacer or Other Devices: The safety and effectiveness of Serevent® Inhalation Aerosol when used with a spacer or other devices have not been adequately studied.

2. Cardiovascular and Other Effects: No effect on the cardiovascular system is usually seen after the administration of inhaled salmeterol in recommended doses, but the cardiovascular and central nervous system effects seen with all sympathomimetic drugs (e.g., increased blood pressure, heart rate, excitement) can occur after use of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol and may require discontinuation of the drug. Salmeterol, like all sympathomimetic amines, should be used with caution in patients with cardiovascular disorders, especially coronary insufficiency, cardiac arrhythmias, and hypertension; in patients with convulsive disorders or thyrotoxicosis; and in patients who are unusually responsive to sympathomimetic amines.

As has been described with other beta-adrenergic agonist bronchodilators, clinically significant changes in systolic and/or diastolic blood pressure, pulse rate, and electrocardiograms have been seen infrequently in individual patients in controlled clinical studies with salmeterol.

3. Metabolic Effects: Doses of the related $beta_2$-adrenoceptor agonist albuterol, when administered intravenously, have been reported to aggravate pre-existing diabetes mellitus and ketoacidosis. No effects on glucose have been seen with Serevent Inhalation Aerosol at recommended doses. Administration of $beta_2$-adrenoceptor agonists may cause a decrease in serum potassium, possibly through intracellular shunting, which has the potential to increase the likelihood of arrhythmias. The decrease is usually transient, not requiring supplementation.

Clinically significant changes in blood glucose and/or serum potassium were seen rarely during clinical studies with long-term administration of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol at recommended doses.

**Information for Patients:** See illustrated Patient's Instructions for Use leaflet. **SHAKE WELL BEFORE USING**

It is important that patients understand how to use Serevent Inhalation Aerosol appropriately and how it should be used in relation to other asthma medications they are taking. Patients should be given the following information:

1. Shake well before using.

2. The recommended dosage (two inhalations twice daily, morning and evening) should not be exceeded.

3. Serevent Inhalation Aerosol is not meant to relieve acute asthma symptoms and extra doses should not be used for that purpose. Acute symptoms should be treated with a short-acting, inhaled $beta_2$-agonist such as albuterol (the physician should provide the patient with such medication and instruct the patient in how it should be used).

4. The physician should be notified immediately if any of the following situations occur, which may be a sign of seriously worsening asthma.

- Decreasing effectiveness of short-acting, inhaled $beta_2$-agonists
- Need for more inhalations than usual of short-acting, inhaled $beta_2$-agonists
- Use of four or more inhalations per day of a short-acting $beta_2$-agonist for 2 or more days consecutively
- Use of more than one canister of a short-acting, inhaled $beta_2$-agonist in an 8-week period (i.e., canister with 200 inhalations)

5. Serevent Inhalabon Aerosol should not be used as a substitute for oral or inhaled corticosteroids. The dosage of these medications should not be changed and they should not be stopped without consulting the physician, even if the patient feels better after initiating treatment with Serevent Inhalation Aerosol.

6. Patients should be cautioned regarding potential adverse cardiovascular effects, such as palpitations or chest pain, related to the use of additional $beta_2$-agonist.

7. In patients receiving Serevent Inhalation Aerosol, other inhaled medications should be used only as directed by the physician.

8. When using Serevent Inhalation Aerosol to prevent exercise-induced bronchospasm, patients should take the dose at least 30 to 60 minutes before exercise.

**Drug Interactions:** ***Short-Acting Beta-Agonists:*** In the two 3-month, repetitive-dose clinical trials (n=184), the mean daily need for additional $beta_2$-agonist use was 1 to 1½ inhalations per day, but some patients used more. Eight percent of patients used at least eight inhalations per day at least on one occasion. Six percent used 9 to 12 inhalations at least once. There were 15 patients (8%) who averaged over four inhalations per day. Four of these used an average of 8 to 11 inhalations per day. In these 15 patients there was no observed increase in frequency of cardiovascular adverse

events. The safety of concomitant use of more than eight inhalations per day of short-acting $beta_2$-agonists with Serevent Inhalation Aerosol has not been established. In 15 patients who experienced worsening of asthma while receiving Serevent Inhalation Aerosol, nebulized albuterol (one dose in most) led to improvement in forced expiratory volume in 1 second ($FEV_1$) and no increase in occurrence of cardiovascular adverse events.

***Monoamine Oxidase Inhibitors and Tricyclic Antidepressants:*** Salmeterol should be administered with extreme caution to patients being treated with monoamine oxidase inhibitors or tricyclic antidepressants because the action of salmeterol on the vascular system may be potentiated by these agents.

***Corticosteroids and Cromoglycate:*** In clinical trials, inhaled corticosteroids and/or inhaled cromolyn sodium did not alter the safety profile of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol when administered concurrently.

***Methylxanthines:*** The concurrent use of intravenously or orally administered methylxanthines (e.g., aminophylline, theophylline) by patients receiving Serevent Inhalation Aerosol has not been completely evaluated. In one clinical trial, 87 patients receiving Serevent Inhalation Aerosol 42 mcg twice daily concurrently with a theophylline product had adverse event rates similar to those in 71 patients receiving Serevent Inhalation Aerosol without theophylline. Resting heart rates were slightly higher in the patients on theophylline but were little affected by Serevent Inhalation Aerosol therapy.

**Carcinogenesis, Mutagenesis, Impairment of Fertility:** In an 18-month oral carcinogenicity study in CD-mice, salmeterol xinafoate caused a dose-related increase in the incidence of smooth muscle hyperplasia, cystic glandular hyperplasia, and leiomyomas of the uterus and a dose-related increase in the incidence of cysts in the ovaries. A higher incidence of leiomyosarcomas was not statistically significant; tumor findings were observed at oral doses of 1.4 and 10 mg/kg, which gave 9 and 63 times, respectively, the human exposure based on rodent:human AUC comparisons.

Salmeterol caused a dose-related increase in the incidence of mesovarian leiomyomas and ovarian cysts in Sprague Dawley rats in a 24-month inhalation/oral carcinogenicity study. Tumors were observed in rats receiving doses of 0.68 and 2.58 mg/kg per day (about 55 and 215 times the recommended clinical dose [mg/m$^2$]). These findings in rodents are similar to those reported previously for other beta-adrenergic agonist drugs. The relevance of these findings to human use is unknown.

No significant effects occurred in mice at 0.2 mg/kg (1.3 times the recommended clinical dose based on comparisons of the AUCs) and in rats at 0.21 mg/kg (15 times the recommended clinical dose on a mg/m$^2$ basis).

Salmeterol xinafoate produced no detectable or reproducible increases in microbial and mammalian gene mutation *in vitro*. No blastogenic activity occurred *in vitro* in human lymphocytes or *in vivo* in a rat micronucleus test. No effects on fertility were identified in male and female rats treated orally with salmeterol xinafoate at doses up to 2 mg/kg orally (about 160 times the recommended clinical dose on a mg/m$^2$ basis).

**Pregnancy:** ***Teratogenic Effects: Pregnancy Category C:*** No significant effects of maternal exposure to oral salmeterol xinafoate occurred in the rat at doses up to the equivalent of about 160 times the recommended clinical dose on a mg/m$^2$ basis. Dutch rabbit fetuses exposed to salmeterol xinafoate *in utero* exhibited effects characteristically resulting from beta-adrenoceptor stimulation; these included precocious eyelid openings, cleft palate, sternebral fusion, limb and paw flexures, and delayed ossification of the frontal cranial bones. No significant effects occurred at 0.6 mg/kg given orally (12 times the recommended clinical dose based on comparison of the AUCs).

New Zealand White rabbits were less sensitive since only delayed ossification of the frontal bones was seen at 10 mg/kg given orally (approximately 1,600 times the recommended clinical dose on a mg/m$^2$ basis). Extensive use of other beta-agonists has provided no evidence that these class effects in animals are relevant to use in humans. There are no adequate and well-controlled studies with Serevent Inhalation Aerosol in pregnant women. Serevent Inhalation Aerosol should be used during pregnancy only if the potential benefit justifies the potential risk to the fetus.

**Use in Labor and Delivery:** There are no well-controlled human studies that have investigated effects of salmeterol on preterm labor or labor at term. Because of the potential for beta-agonist interference with uterine contractility, use of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol during labor should be restricted to those patients in whom the benefits clearly outweigh the risks.

**Nursing Mothers:** Plasma levels of salmeterol after inhaled therapeutic doses are very low (85 to 200 pg/mL) in humans. In lactating rats dosed with radiolabeled salmeterol, levels of radioactivity were similar in plasma and milk. In rats, concentrations of salmeterol in plasma and milk were similar. The xinafoate moiety is also transferred to milk in rats at concentrations of about half the corresponding level in plasma. However, since there is no experience with use of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol by nursing mothers, a decision should be made whether to discontinue nursing or to discontinue the drug, taking into account the importance of the drug to the mother. Caution should be exercised when salmeterol xinafoate is administered to a nursing woman.

**Pediatric Use:** The safety and effectiveness of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol in children younger than 12 years of age have not been established.

**Geriatric Use:** Of the total number of patients who received Serevent Inhalation Aerosol in all clinical studies, 241 were 65 years and older. Geriatric patients (65 years and older) with reversible obstructive airway disease were evaluated in four well-controlled studies of 3 weeks' to 3 months' duration. Two placebo-controlled, crossover studies evaluated twice-daily dosing with salmeterol for 21 to 28 days in 45 patients. An additional 75 geriatric patients were treated with salmeterol for 3 months in two large parallel-group, multicenter studies. These 120 patients experienced increases in AM and PM peak expiratory flow rate and decreases in diurnal variation in peak expiratory flow rate similar to responses seen in the total populations of the two latter studies. The adverse event type and frequency in geriatric patients were not different from those of the total populations studied.

No apparent differences in the efficacy and safety of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol were observed when geriatric patients were compared with younger patients in clinical trials. As with other $beta_2$-agonists, however, special caution should be observed when using Serevent Inhalation Aerosol in elderly patients who have concomitant cardiovascular disease that could be adversely affected by this class of drug. Based on available data, no adjustment of salmeterol dosage in geriatric patients is warranted.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS:** Adverse reactions to salmeterol are similar in nature to reactions to other selective $beta_2$-adrenoceptor agonists, i.e., tachycardia; palpitations; immediate hypersensitivity reactions, including urticaria, angioedema, rash, bronchospasm (see WARNINGS); headache; tremor; nervousness; and paradoxical bronchospasm (see WARNINGS).

Two multicenter, 12-week, controlled studies have evaluated twice-daily doses of Serevent® Inhalation Aerosol in patients 12 years of age and older with asthma. The following table reports the incidence of adverse events in these two studies.

**Serevent® (salmeterol xinafoate) Inhalation Aerosol**

**Adverse Experience Incidence in Two Large 12-Week Clinical Trials***

| Adverse Event Type | Percent of Patients | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Placebo n=187 | Serevent 42 mcg b.i.d. n=184 | Albuterol 180 mcg q.i.d. n=185 |
| Ear, nose, and throat | | | |
| Upper respiratory tract infection | 13 | 14 | 16* |
| Nasopharyngitis | 12 | 14 | 11 |
| Disease of nasal cavity/sinus | 4 | 6 | 1 |
| Sinus headache | 2 | 4 | <1 |
| Gastrointestinal | | | |
| Stomachache | 0 | 4 | 0 |
| Neurological | | | |
| Headache | 23 | 28 | 27 |
| Tremor | 2 | 4 | 3 |
| Respiratory | | | |
| Cough | 6 | 7 | 3 |
| Lower respiratory infection | 2 | 4 | 2 |

* The only adverse experience classified as serious was one case of upper respiratory tract infection in a patient treated with albuterol.

The table above includes all events (whether considered drug related or nondrug related by the investigator) that occurred at a rate of over 3% in the Serevent Inhalation Aerosol treatment group and were more common in the Serevent Inhalation Aerosol group than in the placebo group.

Pharyngitis, allergic rhinitis, dizziness/giddiness, and influenza occurred at 3% or more but were equally common on placebo. Other events occurring in the Serevent Inhalation Aerosol treatment group at a frequency of 1% to 3% were as follows:

***Cardiovascular:*** Tachycardia, palpitations.
***Ear, Nose, and Throat:*** Rhinitis, laryngitis.
***Gastrointestinal:*** Nausea, viral gastroenteritis, nausea and vomiting, diarrhea, abdominal pain.
***Hypersensitivity:*** Urticaria.
***Mouth and Teeth:*** Dental pain.
***Musculoskeletal:*** Pain in joint, back pain, muscle cramp/contraction, myalgia/myositis, muscular soreness.
***Neurological:*** Nervousness, malaise/fatigue.
***Respiratory:*** Tracheitis/bronchitis.
***Skin:*** Rash/skin eruption.
***Urogenital:*** Dysmenorrhea.
In small dose-response studies, tremor, nervousness, and palpitations appeared to be dose related.

**Postmarketing Experience:** In extensive US and worldwide postmarketing experience, serious exacerbations of asthma, including some that have been fatal, have been reported. In most cases, these have occurred in patients with severe asthma and/or in some patients in whom asthma has been acutely deteriorating (see WARNINGS no. 1), but they have occurred in a few patients with less severe asthma as well. It was not possible from these reports to determine whether Serevent Inhalation Aerosol contributed to these events or simply failed to relieve the deteriorating asthma.

Postmarketing experience includes rare reports of upper airway symptoms of laryngeal spasm, irritation, or swelling, such as stridor and choking.

**OVERDOSAGE:** Overdosage with salmeterol may be expected to result in exaggeration of the pharmacologic adverse effects associated with beta-adrenoceptor agonists, including tachycardia and/or arrhythmia, tremor, headache, and muscle cramps. Overdosage with salmeterol can lead to clinically significant prolongation of the $QT_c$ interval, which can produce ventricular arrhythmias. Other signs of overdosage may include hypokalemia and hyperglycemia.

In these cases, therapy with Serevent® Inhalation Aerosol and all beta-adrenergic–stimulant drugs should be stopped, supportive therapy provided, and judicious use of a beta-adrenergic blocking agent should be considered, bearing in mind the possibility that such agents can produce bronchospasm. Cardiac monitoring is recommended in cases of overdosage.

As with all sympathomimetic pressurized aerosol medications, cardiac arrest and even death may be associated with abuse of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol.

Rats and dogs survived the maximum practicable inhalation doses of salmeterol of 2.9 and 0.7 mg/kg, respectively. The maximum nonlethal oral doses in mice and rats were approximately 150 mg/kg and >1,000 mg/kg, respectively.

Dialysis is not appropriate treatment for overdosage of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol.

Allen & Hanburys
Division of Glaxo Wellcome Inc
Research Triangle Park, NC 27709

December 1994
RL-164
OM.BS.S1

Allen & Hanburys
Division of Glaxo Wellcome Inc
*A world leader in respiratory care*
Research Triangle Park, NC 27709

Glaxo Wellcome
Glaxo Wellcome Inc.

SER345R0 Printed in USA March 1995

# Open her airways and help open up her life, with SEREVENT

## In patients with asthma, SEREVENT is designed to prevent bronchospasm

*SEREVENT is indicated for maintenance treatment of asthma and prevention of bronchospasm in patients 12 years of age and older with reversible obstructive airway disease, including patients with symptoms of nocturnal asthma, who require regular treatment with inhaled, short-acting $\beta_2$-agonists.*

*Dosing should be two puffs (42 µg) of SEREVENT twice daily, morning and evening, approximately 12 hours apart.*

***IMPORTANT INFORMATION:***

***SEREVENT SHOULD NOT BE INITIATED IN PATIENTS WITH SIGNIFICANTLY WORSENING OR ACUTELY DETERIORATING ASTHMA, WHICH MAY BE A LIFE-THREATENING CONDITION.***

***SEREVENT SHOULD NOT BE USED TO TREAT ACUTE SYMPTOMS. Patients must be provided with a short-acting, inhaled $\beta_2$-agonist for treatment of acute symptoms.***

***SEREVENT IS NOT A SUBSTITUTE FOR INHALED OR ORAL CORTICOSTEROIDS.***

**Circle 141 on reader service card**

*Twice-Daily*

**Serevent®**

*(salmeterol xinafoate)*

*Inhalation Aerosol*

***Morning and Evening Inhalation for Active Days and Restful Nights***

***Please consult Brief Summary of Prescribing Information on the preceding pages.***

# WIN!

## A Picture-Perfect Vacation to San Diego, California and the AARC Annual Meeting

San Diego, California...a picture-perfect vacation destination where you can explore the ocean depths of Sea World,® go wild at the world famous San Diego Zoo, head south of the border to Tijuana, kick back and enjoy the sun-bleached beaches of Mission Bay, and partake of the exciting AARC Annual Meeting.

To picture yourself in this exciting vacation package, circle number 100 on the reader service card in this issue, request any other material you might like to receive, complete the requested information, and mail the card.

Your picture-perfect vacation includes:

- Round-trip air transportation to San Diego for two, November 2–6, 1996
- 4 nights hotel accommodations, including room tax, at a selected San Diego hotel, November 2–5, 1996
- Admission to the AARC Annual Meeting, November 3–6, 1996 (Sunday–Wednesday)

Official Rules: No purchase necessary. To enter, circle number 100 on the reader service card in this issue, request any other material you might like to receive, then complete your name, address, telephone number, and other information requested. Mail the postage paid card to AARC Publications, P.O. Box 11605, Riverton, NJ 08076-7205. Entries must be received no later than midnight September 1, 1996. Prize is valid for travel only November 2–6, 1996. Entrants must be at least 18 years of age. Illegible entries will be disqualified. *AARC Times* and RESPIRATORY CARE® are not responsible for late, lost, damaged, or misdirected mail. The winner will be selected in a random drawing at Daedalus Enterprises, 11030 Ables Lane, Dallas, TX 75229-4593 on or about September 5, 1996. Federal, state, and local taxes are not included in prize package. Meals, gratuities, and all other expenses not specified herein are the responsibilities of the winner. Void where prohibited by law, and all federal, state, and local laws apply. NO substitution for prizes. Prizes are not transferable and are not redeemable in cash. The winner will be notified by mail or telephone.

regulates serum IgE levels on chromosome 5q. These findings are consistent with the existence of 1 or more genes on chromosome 5q31-q33 causing susceptibility to asthma.

**The Relationship between Infection and Inflammation in the Early Stages of Lung Disease from Cystic Fibrosis**—K Balough, M McCubbin, M Weinberger, W Smits, R Ahrens, R Fick. Pediatr Pulmonol 1995;20(2):63.

We examined the relationship of pulmonary infection and inflammation in cystic fibrosis (CF) by performing 31 bronchoalveolar lavages (BAL) in 14 young children with minimal lung disease from CF. While 10 of the 14 patients had elevated polymorphonuclear leukocyte (PMN) counts initially, only 4 had bacteria generally regarded as pathogenic in the recovered BAL fluid. Three of these 4 and 6 of the others had follow-up bronchoscopies at 6 months intervals. PMN counts remained normal for only 1 patient. However, pathogenic bacteria were recovered during the repeat BALs only in those patients who were colonized initially. Proinflammatory cytokines and proteinases were generally elevated, and interleukin-8 (IL-8) concentration correlated inversely with oxygen saturation ($S_{pO_2}$). No complications of the procedure occurred. We conclude that BAL identifies inflammation and the presence of bacteria in the lower airway at an early stage of the disease. This information may be used to guide therapy in patients too young or otherwise unable to produce sputum. These data also suggest that inflammation is present early in the course of CF lung disease before colonization and infection of the lungs with potentially pathogenic bacteria occurs. Since inflammation appears to be the earliest detectable evidence of lung disease in CF, monitoring of inflammation with BAL may serve as a useful marker of clinical benefits from new treatments in patients with minimal lung disease.

**The Use of High-Efficiency Particulate Air-Filter Respirators To Protect Hospital Workers from Tuberculosis: A Cost-Effectiveness Analysis**—KA Adal, AM Anglim, CL Palumbo, MG Titus, BJ Coyner, BM Farr. N Engl J Med 1994;331(3):169.

BACKGROUND: After outbreaks of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention proposed the use of respirators with high-efficiency particulate air filters (HEPA respirators) as part of isolation precautions against tuberculosis, along with a respiratory-protection program for health care workers that includes medical evaluation, training, and tests of the fit of the respirators. Each HEPA respirator costs between $7.51 and $9.08, about 10 times the cost of respirators currently used. METHODS: We conducted a cost-effectiveness analysis using data from the University of Virginia Hospital on exposure to patients with tuberculosis and rates at which the purified-protein-derivative (PPD) skin test became positive in hospital workers. The costs of a respiratory-protection program were based on those of an existing program for workers dealing with hazardous substances. RESULTS: During 1992, 11 patients with documented tuberculosis were admitted to our hospital. Eight of 3,852 workers (0.2%) had PPD tests that became positive. Five of these conversions were believed to be due to the booster phenomenon; 1 followed unprotected exposure to a patient not yet in isolation; the other 2 occurred in workers who had never entered a tuberculosis isolation room. These data suggest that it will take more than 1 year for the use of HEPA respirators to prevent a single conversion of the PPD test. Assuming that 1 conversion is prevented per year, however, it would take 41 years at our hospital to prevent 1 case of occupationally acquired tuberculosis, at a cost of $1.3 million to $18.5 million. CONCLUSIONS: Given the effectiveness of currently recommended measures to prevent nosocomial transmission of tuberculosis, the addition of HEPA respirators would offer negligible protective efficacy at great cost.

**Clinical Trial of a New Lightwand Device (Trachlight) To Intubate the Trachea**—OR Hung, S Pytka, J Morris, M Murphy, G Launcelott, S Stevens, W MacKay, RD Stewart. Anesthesiology 1995;83(3):509.

BACKGROUND: Transillumination of the soft tissue of the neck using a lighted stylet (lightwand) is an effective and safe intubating technique. A newly designed lightwand (Trachlight) incorporates modifications to improve the brightness of the light source as well as flexibility. The goal of this study was to determine the effectiveness and safety of this device in intubating the trachea of elective surgical patients. METHODS: Healthy surgical patients were studied. Patients with known or potential problems with intubation were excluded. During general anesthesia, the tracheas were intubated randomly using either the Trachlight or the laryngoscope. Failure to intubate was defined as lack of successful intubation after 3 attempts. The duration of each attempt was recorded as the time from insertion of the device into the oropharynx to the time of its removal. The total time to intubation (TTI), an overall measure of the ease of intubation, was defined as the sum of the durations of all (as many as 3) intubation attempts. Complications, such as mucosal bleeding, lacerations, dental injury, and sore throat, were recorded. RESULTS: Nine hundred fifty patients (479 in the Trachlight group and 471 in the laryngoscope group) were studied. There was a 1% failure rate with the Trachlight, and 92% of intubations were successful on the first attempt, compared with a 3% failure rate and an 89% success rate on the first attempt with the laryngoscope (p not significant). All failures were followed by successful intubation using the alternate device. The TTI was significantly less with the Trachlight compared with the laryngoscope (15.7 ± 10.8 vs 19.6 ± 23.7 s). For laryngoscopic intubation, the TTI was longer for patients with limited mandibular protrusion and mentohyoid distance, with a larger circumference of the neck, and with a high classification according to Mallampatti et al. However, there was no relation between the TTI and any of the airway parameters for Trachlight. There were significantly fewer traumatic events in the Trachlight group than in the laryngoscope group (10 vs 37). More patients complained of sore throat in the laryngoscope group than in the Trachlight group (25.3% vs 17.1%). CONCLUSIONS: In contrast to laryngoscopy, the ease of intubation using the Trachlight does not appear to be influenced by anatomic variations of the upper airway. Intubation occasionally failed with the Trachlight but in all cases was resolved with direct laryngoscopy. The failures of direct laryngoscopy were resolved with Trachlight. Thus the combined technique was 100% successful in intubating the tracheas of all patients.

**Cardiorespiratory Effects of Positive End-Expiratory Pressure during Progressive Tidal Volume Reduction (Permissive Hypercapnia) in Patients with Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome**—VM Ranieri, L Mascia, T Fiore, F Bruno, A Brienza, R Giuliani. Anesthesiology 1995;83(4):710.

BACKGROUND: In patients with acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) the ventilatory approach is based on tidal volume ($V_T$) of 10-15 mL/kg and positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP). To avoid further pulmonary injury decreasing $V_T$ and allowing $P_{aCO_2}$ to increase (permissive hypercapnia) has been suggested. Effects of 10 cm $H_2O$ of PEEP on respiratory mechanics, hemodynamics, and gas exchange were compared during mechanical ventilation with conventional (10-15 mL/ kg) and low (5-8 mL/kg) $V_T$. METHODS: Nine sedated and paralyzed patients were studied. $V_T$ was decreased gradually (50 mL every 20-30 min). Static volume pressure (V-P) curves, hemodynamics, and gas exchange were measured. RESULTS: During mechanical ventilation with conventional $V_T$, V-P curves on PEEP 0 (ZEEP) exhibited an upward convexity in 6 patients reflecting a progressive reduction in compliance with inflating volume; whereas, PEEP resulted in a volume displacement along the flat part of this curve. After $V_T$ reduction, V-P curves in the same patients showed an upward concavity, reflecting progressive alveolar recruitment with inflating volume, and application of PEEP resulted in alveolar recruitment. The other 3 patients showed a V-P curve with an upward concavity; $V_T$ reduction increased this concavity and application of PEEP induced greater alveolar recruitment than during conventional $V_T$. With PEEP, cardiac index decreased by, respectively, 31% during conventional $V_T$ and 11% during low $V_T$ (p <

0.01); $P_{aO_2}$, increased by 32% and 71% ($p < 0.01$) respectively; whereas, right-to-left venous admixture ($\dot{Q}_s/\dot{Q}_t$) decreased by 11% and 40% respectively ($p < 0.01$). The greatest values of $P_{aO_2}$ static compliance and oxygen delivery and the lowest values of $\dot{Q}_s/\dot{Q}_t$ (best PEEP) were obtained during application of PEEP with low $V_T$ ($p < 0.01$). CONCLUSIONS: Although PEEP induced alveolar hyperinflation in most patients during mechanical ventilation with conventional $V_T$, at low $V_T$, there appeared to be a significant alveolar collapse and PEEP was able to expand these units improving gas exchange and hemodynamics.

**Bronchoalveolar Lavage Studies in Children without Parenchymal Lung Disease: Cellular Constituents and Protein Levels**—F Midulla, A Villani, R Merolla, L Bjermer, T Sandstrom, R Ronchetti. Pediatr Pulmonol 1995;20(2):112.

We evaluated bronchoalveolar lavage fluid (BAL) for cellular constituents, concentration of total protein (TP), albumin (AL), fibronectin (FN), and hyaluronic acid (HA) in 16 children aged 2-32 months without pulmonary inflammatory or parenchymal disease to establish reference values. We compared our data to those reported in older children and in normal adult volunteers. BAL results were obtained simultaneously from the right middle lobe and the lingula. Results indicated that children younger than 3 years of age had a higher number of cells/mL than older children and adults ($59.9 \times 10^4$ vs $17.6 \times 10^4$ and $12 \times 10^4$). Differential cell count revealed that the percentages of alveolar macrophages (AM), lymphocytes (LYM), and eosinophils (EOS) were similar to those obtained in older children and in adults; whereas, the percentage of neutrophils (NEU) was higher in younger children (NEU 5.5 vs 1.6 and 1.2%, respectively) than in older children and adults. The latter difference was even greater in infants under 12 months of age (NEU 7.6%). The concentrations of TP, AL, FN, and HA in children's BAL samples were compared to values reported for adults. There were no differences between infants and children 13-32 months of age or normal adults. BAL fluid obtained simultaneously from the middle lobe and lingula were not significantly different. In conclusion, this is the first report on BAL values (cellular and noncellular constituents) in children younger than 3 years. The results may be used as reference values for further studies in children with parenchymal lung disease in this age group.

**School-Based Screening for Tuberculous Infection: A Cost-Benefit Analysis**—JC Mohle-Boetani, B Miller, M Halpern, A Trivedi, J Lessler, SL Solomon, M Fenstersheib. JAMA 1995;274 (8):613.

OBJECTIVE: To compare tuberculin screening of all kindergartners and high school entrants (screen-all strategy) vs screening limited to high-risk children (targeted screening). DESIGN: Decision, cost-effectiveness, and cost-benefit analyses. SETTING & SUBJECTS: Students in a large urban and rural county. DEFINITIONS: High risk of tuberculous infection was defined as birth in a country with a high prevalence of tuberculosis. Low risk was defined as birth in the United States. OUTCOME MEASURES: Tuberculosis cases prevented per 10,000 children screened, Net costs, net cost per case prevented, benefit-cost ratio, and incremental cost-effectiveness. RESULTS: The screen-all strategy would prevent 14.9 cases per 10,000 children screened; targeted screening would prevent 84.9 cases per 10,000 children screened. The screen-all strategy is more costly than no screening; the benefit-cost ratio is 0.58. Targeted screening would result in a net savings; the benefit-cost ratio is 1.2. Screening all children is cost-saving only if the reactor rate is 20% or greater. The cost per additional case prevented for screening all children compared with targeted screening ($34,666) is more than twice as high as treatment and contact tracing for a case of tuberculosis ($16,392). CONCLUSIONS: Targeted screening of schoolchildren is much less costly than mass screening and is more efficient in prevention of tuberculosis.

**A Critical Assessment of Uncalibrated Respiratory Inductance Plethysmography (Respitrace®) for the Measurement of Tidal Breathing Parameters in Newborns and Infants**—E Jackson, J Stocks, L Pilgrim, I Dundas, C Dezateux. Pediatr Pulmonol 1995;20(2):119.

We have compared results obtained with an uncalibrated respiratory inductance plethysmograph (RIP) with those of a face mask and pneumotachograph (PNT) for the computerized measurement of the time to reach peak tidal expiratory flow as a ratio of total expiratory time ($t_{PTEF}:t_E$). Simultaneous measurements were made in 32 healthy neonates aged 0-3 weeks, 35 healthy infants aged 5-82 weeks, and 28 infants aged 15-94 weeks with physician-diagnosed recurrent wheeze. The group mean (±SD) values of $t_{PTEF}:t_E$ determined using a PNT were 0.455 (±0.129), 0.263 (±0.077), and 0.232 (±0.089) for the neonates, healthy infants and infants with recurrent wheeze respectively. RIP gave mean (±SD) values that were 0.055 (±0.044) and 0.025 (±0.104) lower than the PNT in healthy neonates and infants with recurrent wheeze respectively; RIP values were 0.002 (±0.073) higher in the healthy infants over 4 weeks of age than measurements by PNT. Although the difference between the 2 measurements was not related to the thoracoabdominal phase angle, as measured from Lissajous figures, examination of the RIP ribcage and abdominal signals revealed that many healthy subjects, while appearing clinically in phase, had ribcage and abdominal signals that differed markedly from each other in terms of convexity/concavity during early expiration. This may explain the lack of agreement between the 2 methods. We conclude that uncalibrated RIP should be used with caution for the determination of $t_{PTEF}:t_E$, even in subjects whose ribcage and abdomen appear to move synchronously. The measurement of $t_{PTEF}:t_E$ did not differentiate between the healthy infants and infants with recurrent wheezing.

**Effect of Aminophylline on High-Energy Phosphate Metabolism and Fatigue in the Diaphragm**—T Ide, DG Nichols, JR Buck, SM Eleff, DC Shungu, JL Robotham, RS Fitzgerald, RJ Traystman. Anesthesiology 1995;83 (3):557.

BACKGROUND: Diaphragmatic fatigue causes respiratory failure, for which aminophylline has been used as therapy. Because the mechanism of action of aminophylline in reversing diaphragmatic fatigue is unclear, we used in vivo $^{31}P$ magnetic resonance spectroscopy (MRS) to determine the relation between diaphragmatic activation, force output, and aerobic metabolism. METHODS: Bilateral phrenic stimulation was used to pace the diaphragm in pentobarbital-anesthetized piglets (6-10 weeks old; n = 44). Esophageal and abdominal pressures were measured to calculate transdiaphragmatic pressure (Pdi) (Pdi = abdominal pressure − esophageal pressure) as an index of force output. Activation was determined by the amplitude of the compound action potential of the diaphragmatic electromyogram. Aerobic metabolism was assessed with a $^{31}P$ MRS surface coil on the right hemidiaphragm with the animal in a 4.7-T magnet. The animals were divided into 4 groups based on aminophylline loading dose: saline, aminophylline 10 mg/kg (A10), aminophylline 20 mg/kg (A20), and aminophylline 40 mg/kg (A40). After aminophylline loading the diaphragm was paced for 25 minutes followed by a 10-minute recovery. RESULTS: Aminophylline concentrations were 12.2 ± 0.7, 21.9 ± 2.4, and 44.9 ± 3.6 mg/L in the A10, A20, and A40 groups, respectively. Compound action potential amplitude decreased in all groups by 30% after 25 minutes of pacing. Conversely, Pdi remained at 100 ± 3% of the initial value after 5 minutes of pacing in the A40 group but decreased to 75 ± 3% in the saline group. Pdi recovered completely (103 ± 17%) in the A40 group but remained depressed (72 ± 6%) in the saline group. Pdi values were intermediate in the A10 and A20 groups. MRS data revealed inadequate energy supply/demand ratio in the saline group such that the ratio of inorganic phosphate to phosphocreatine (Pi/PCr) increased to 1.01 ± 0.09 after 5 minutes of pacing. Pi/PCr remained unchanged in the A40 group and was intermediate in the A10 and A20 groups. β-Adenosine triphosphate and intracellular pH did not differ among groups or as a function of pacing. Diaphragmatic blood flow increased from a resting value of 35-60 to 300-410 mL · min $^{-1}$ · 100 g $^{-1}$ during pacing in all groups and was not

# ARMY RESPIRATORY THERAPY SPECIALIST: EXPERIENCE PLUS BENEFITS

Bring your skills as a certified Respiratory Therapist to an organization that respects and values your training: Today's Army. Work with expert medical staffs using the latest equipment.

Plus your skills earn you great benefits you won't find in many other places. Enlist for 4 years and receive an $8,000 bonus plus qualify for college loan repayment of up to $55,000. Enlist for 3 years or 4 years and be eligible for the Army College Fund of up to $30,000.

Call or visit your local Army Nurse Recruiter for more information on how to become an Army Respiratory Therapy Specialist.

**1-800-USA-ARMY**
**Extension 487**

**ARMY.**
**BE ALL YOU CAN BE.®**

Circle 94 on reader service card
Visit AARC Booths 242 and 244 in Orlando

- **Save Time** ➡ fewer repairs
- **Save Money** ➡ less labor
- **Save Your Equipment** ➡ no contamination
- **Save Expense** ➡ less stand-by equipment needed

## High Pressure Line Filters

*Stop Particulates*
*Stop Moisture*

*Protect* your ventilators, blenders, and anesthesia machines from compressor water, dirt, calcium, and other contamination. Our HPL filters will retain 0.1µm particles and stop water. They can replace water traps and particulate barriers. The built-in drain allows easy draining, and we will guarantee them for a year. *This product is inexpensive insurance for you!*

**Arbor Medical**
*Arbor Technologies, Inc.*

401 West Morgan Road
Ann Arbor, MI 48108-9109
Phone (313) 663-6662
Fax (313) 665-3516

Circle 141 on reader service card

## Join us as we help people everywhere breathe easier.

### Gwinnett Medical Center
**Atlanta, GA**

Servicing one of Georgia's fastest growing counties, the 400+ bed Gwinnett Hospital System continues to meet the health care needs of our community — and our employees. Due to exceptional growth, we currently have excellent opportunities available for talented Neonatal Therapists at the Gwinnett Women's Pavilion, part of the Gwinnett Medical Center.

At GMC, we offer an environment where patient-driven protocols allow our Therapists to fully utilize their assessment skills. Here you'll quickly discover that the emphasis is on leading-edge quality care, not crushing workloads.

### Neonatal Therapists
**(F/T Nights)**

Must be RRT with NICU and high-risk delivery experience and be proficient in endotracheal incubation.

We offer a competitive salary and benefits package including tuition reimbursement, retirement plans, medical/dental coverage, paid days off, and much more. To find out how you can join our team, please call **(770)995-4562 or (800)533-7138.** Or write **Human Resources, GHS, 100 Medical Center Bvld., Suite 206, Lawrenceville, GA 30245.** EOE.

GWINNETT HOSPITAL SYSTEM
A Partner Of PROMINA Health System

Circle 102 on reader service card

# ABSTRACTS & POSTER PRESENTATIONS

The AARC Education Section is looking for educational research and experience with models and instructional methods that may be useful in implementing the recommendations of the Education Consensus Conferences or other issues in respiratory care education. **Special consideration will be given to abstracts and poster presentations that deal with multiskill curriculum and/or core curriculum.**

The 1996 Summer Forum, scheduled for July 12–14 in Naples, FL, will offer two opportunities for participants to share their scholarly activities with colleagues:

1. Research abstract presentations dealing with respiratory care education. (Paper presentations will be limited to 15 minutes, including five minutes for discussion.)
2. Poster presentations dealing with education models, methods, or materials that can be shared for noncommercial use. (Individual topics and presenters will be briefly introduced; additional time will be allowed for individual review of posters or display materials and interaction with the presenters.)

**Research abstracts and poster presentation proposals must be submitted by April 15, 1996, for review by the Education Section Review Committee. All abstracts and proposals will be peer-reviewed, and authors will be notified of decisions by May 15. Questions may be directed to the review committee chair, Pat Munzer.**

### Proposals must include three components:

1. Cover sheet that includes the following information:
   a. Type of presentation (research abstract or poster presentation)
   b. Title of presentation
   c. Names, primary titles, work addresses, and day telephone numbers of the authors; the name of the author who will present the paper and receive correspondence should be listed first
   d. A statement of previous presentations or publications of the same or similar work
   **e. Two true/false questions with answers**
   f. Other information required by funding sources
2. Camera-ready copy (without author identification) for review by the committee
3. Camera-ready original (with author identification) for possible publication

# ABSTRACTS & POSTER PRESENTATIONS

## Research Abstracts

Type abstract double-spaced on plain white paper with one-inch margins. The abstract should be written as a single paragraph and limited to 300 words. The research abstract should include the following:

a. Title of paper
b. Brief description of work
c. Brief statement of methodology and findings
d. Conclusions
**e. Two true/false questions with answers**

A maximum of two pages of camera-ready charts and tables may be attached to aid in the selection of the abstract.

## Poster Presentations

Type abstract double-spaced on plain white paper with one-inch margins. The abstract should be written as a single paragraph and limited to 150 words. The poster presentation abstract should include the following:

a. Title of paper
b. Brief description of the model, method, or material
c. Brief statement of how it was developed and implemented
d. Brief statement of how it was evaluated or judged to be of unique value
e. Recommendations for future application
**f. Two true/false questions with answers**

On a separate sheet, describe how the information will be visually presented at the conference.

Each manuscript should be double-checked for completeness and accuracy before it is submitted.

Spell out terms used for the first time, followed by abbreviations in parentheses, e.g., norm-referenced testing (NRT). Thereafter, the term may be abbreviated throughout.

**Please send the abstract and cover sheet to:**

**Pat Munzer, MS, RRT, Program Director**
**Respiratory Therapy**
**Washburn University**
**1700 College**
**Topeka, KS 66621**
**(913) 231-1010, ext. 1284**

affected by aminophylline dose. CONCLUSIONS: Aminophylline, in a dose-dependent fashion, delays the onset of fatigue and improves recovery from fatigue. Delayed fatigue is associated with improved aerobic metabolism as reflected in a low Pi/PCr ratio.

**Blunted Peripheral Chemoreceptor Response to Hyperoxia in a Group of Infants with Bronchopulmonary Dysplasia**—M Katz-Salamon, B Jonsson, H Lagercrantz. Pediatr Pulmonol 1995;20(2):101.

Infants with BPD often suffer from chronic hypoxia and require supplemental oxygen ($O_2$). This might affect the sensitivity of peripheral chemoreceptors. Therefore, we assessed peripheral chemoreceptor function in 25 infants with bronchopulmonary dysplasia (BPD) of varying severity, using the hyperoxic test. These infants were compared with 35 preterm infants who did not develop BPD. All infants were tested during the 40th week of postconceptional age and their mean postnatal age was 81.5 ± 16.3 days. Sixty percent (15/25) of the BPD infants lacked a hyperoxic response, while the proportion of nonresponders to $O_2$ among the other groups was 20% (7/35). The intensity of this response was negatively correlated to time spent on a ventilator and positively to time without supplemental oxygen. The intensity of chemoreceptor function was closely related to the severity of BPD; none of the infants with the most severe form of BPD (grade 3) showed a ventilatory response to hyperoxia. Furthermore, infants with BPD needed significantly longer time to increase their saturation than did non-BPD infants (4.7 and 9.3 s respectively). We conclude that many infants with BPD, particularly those with the most severe form of the disease, have abnormally functioning peripheral chemoreceptors.

**Impaired Action of Thyroid Hormone Associated with Smoking in Women with Hypothyroidism**—B Muller, H Zulewski, P Huber, JG Ratcliffe, JJ Staub. N Engl J Med 1995; 333:964.

BACKGROUND: The effect of smoking on thyroid function is controversial, and its effect on thyroid hormone action is unknown. We investigated the effects of cigarette smoking in women with various grades of hypothyroidism and in normal women. METHODS: We studied 138 normal women and 135 women with primary hypothyroidism, of whom 84 had subclinical hypothyroidism and 51 overt hypothyroidism. Sixty of the women with hypothyroidism were reevaluated during thyroxine therapy. The women were categorized as smokers or nonsmokers according to their responses to a questionnaire. Thyroid function was evaluated by measurements of serum thyrotropin, free thyroxine, and tri-iodothyronine. Peripheral thyroid hormone action was assessed by a clinical score and measurements of ankle-reflex time and serum lipids and creatine kinase. RESULTS: Among the women with subclinical hypothyroidism, the smokers had a higher mean (±SD) serum thyrotropin concentration (21.3 ± 16.6 vs 12.7 ± 7.2 mU/L, $p = 0.004$) and a higher ratio of serum tri-iodothyronine to serum free thyroxine (by 30%, $p = 0.003$) than the nonsmokers. Their serum concentrations of total cholesterol and low-density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol were higher (by 16%, $p = 0.013$; and 28%, $p = 0.003$, respectively). Among the women with overt hypothyroidism, the serum concentrations of thyrotropin, free thyroxine, and tri-iodothyronine were similar in the smokers and nonsmokers. As compared with the nonsmokers, the smokers had a clinical score indicating a greater degree of hypothyroidism ($p < 0.001$), higher serum concentrations of total and LDL cholesterol (by 25%, $p < 0.001$; and 24%, $p = 0.002$, respectively), longer ankle-reflex time (by 25%, $p < 0.001$), and higher serum concentrations of creatine kinase (by 236%, $p < 0.001$). There were dose-response relations between smoking and serum concentrations of total and LDL cholesterol, serum creatine kinase concentrations, and ankle-reflex time in the women with overt hypothyroidism, and between smoking and serum concentrations of total and LDL cholesterol in the women with subclinical hypothyroidism. CONCLUSIONS: Smoking increases the metabolic effects of hypothyroidism in a dose-dependent way. This may be explained by alteration of both thyroid function and hormone action.

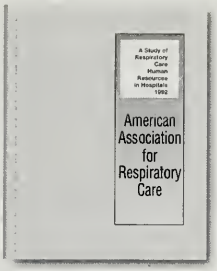
**Efficacy of Combined Coronary Revascularization and Valve Procedures in Octogenarians**—MS Adkins, D Amalfitano, NA Harnum, GW Laub, LB McGrath. Chest 1995;108(4):927.

From January 1982 to October 1991, 42 consecutive patients 80 years of age and older underwent a combined cardiac procedure with coronary revascularization and valve repair or replacement. There were 20 women and 22 men. Mean age at operation was 82.8 years (range, 80 to 89.7 years). Twenty-seven patients (64%) were in New York Heart Association (NYHA) functional class III or IV preoperatively. Six patients (14.3%) had undergone previous cardiac procedures. There were 6 hospital deaths (14.3%). The only significant preoperative risk factor identified for the event hospital death was aortic insufficiency ($p = 0.005$). The 36 hospital survivors were followed up at a mean of 21.1 months after hospital discharge. There were 9 (21%) late deaths occurring at a mean of 21.3 months postoperatively: 2 from acute myocardial infarctions and 7 from chronic heart failure. Survival analysis indicated that higher preoperative NYHA class ($p = 0.0003$), hypertension ($p = 0.015$), hypercholesterolemia ($p = 0.03$), and elevated left atrial/left ventricular gradient ($p = 0.04$) were incremental risk factors for overall mortality. The actuarial survival at 40 months was 51.9%, with no significant difference as compared with an age-, sex-, and race-matched population. Of the 27 late survivors, 26 were in NYHA class I or II. We conclude that octogenarians may undergo complex cardiac surgical procedures with an expectation of an acceptable mortality rate and significant improvement in their functional status. These results must be taken into consideration in light of reported strategies to ameliorate health-care costs by limiting availability of complex medical care to the elderly.

**A Trial of Goal-Oriented Hemodynamic Therapy in Critically Ill Patients**—L Gattinoni, L Brazzi, P Pelosi, R Latini, G Tognoni, A Pesenti, R Fumagalli for the $SvO_2$ Collaborative Group. N Engl J Med 1995;333(16):1025.

BACKGROUND: Hemodynamic therapy to raise the cardiac index and oxygen delivery to supranormal levels may improve outcomes in critically ill patients. We studied whether increasing the cardiac index to a supranormal level (cardiac-index group) or increasing mixed venous oxygen saturation to a normal level (oxygen-saturation group) would decrease morbidity and mortality among critically ill patients, as compared with a control group in which the target was a normal cardiac index. METHODS: A total of 10,726 patients in 56 intensive care units were screened, among whom 762 patients belonging to predefined diagnostic categories with acute physiology scores of 11 or higher were randomly assigned to the 3 groups (252 to the control group, 253 to the cardiac-index group, and 257 to the oxygen-saturation group). RESULTS: The hemodynamic targets were reached by 94.3% of the control group, 44.9% of the cardiac-index group, and 66.7% of the oxygen-saturation group ($p < 0.001$). Mortality was 48.4, 48.6, and 52.1%, respectively ($p = 0.638$), up to the time of discharge from the intensive care unit and 62.3, 61.7, and 63.8% ($p = 0.875$) at 6 months. Among patients who survived, the number of dysfunctional organs and the length of the stay in the intensive care unit were similar in the 3 groups. No differences in mortality among the 3 groups were found for any diagnostic category. A subgroup analysis of the patients in whom hemodynamic targets were reached revealed similar mortality rates: 44.8, 40.4, and 39.0%, respectively ($p = 0.478$). CONCLUSIONS: Hemodynamic therapy aimed at achieving supranormal values for the cardiac index or normal values for mixed venous oxygen saturation does not reduce morbidity or mortality among critically ill patients. *See the related editorial:* ***Manipulating Hemodynamics and Oxygen Transport in Critically Ill Patients****—C Hinds, D Watson. N Engl J Med 1995;333(16):1074-1075.*

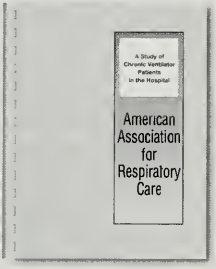
## The AARC Human Resources Survey: A Study of Respiratory Care Human Resources in Hospitals




Covers a wide range of human resource issues, including compensation, numbers of full-time equivalents, job vacancy rates, education, credentialing, and licensure. Even includes information on age, sex, and years of experience. Includes comprehensive summary, position profiles, salaries, education, experience, credentials, and regional demographics. Vacancies are inventoried. 68 pages, 66 tables.

**Item BK12 $35 ($50 nonmembers)**

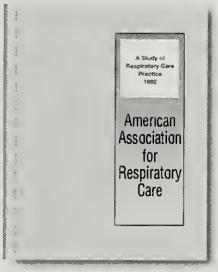
## A Study of Chronic Ventilator Patients in the Hospital




Chronic ventilator-dependent patients are costing American hospitals more than $9 million per day according to this Gallup study conducted for the AARC. This important study provides information on patients who depend on life-support systems; why, how, and where they are being treated; and the cost of treatment. 47 pages, 9 tables, 12 figures.

**Item BK20 $25 ($50 nonmembers)**

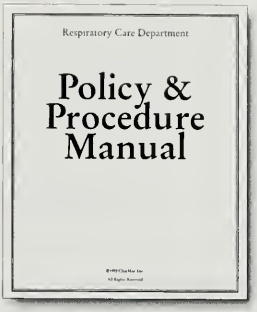
## A Study of Respiratory Care Practice




This study examines the practice of respiratory care in today's health care environment and how hospital reorganization is affecting the profession. Includes chapters on medical direction, current respiratory care services, nontraditional services, respiratory care protocols, and hospital service reorganization. 38 pages, 34 tables, 15 charts.

**Item BK17 $20 ($40 nonmembers)**

## Policy and Procedure Manual




Save time and money by making your department more efficient with the *Policy and Procedure Manual.* Its 130 pages of policies and procedures cover the aspects of administrative and clinical respiratory care for both adult and pediatric practice. Sections on administrative policies, therapeutics, clinical monitoring, and mechanical ventilation. Standardized formats include objectives, indications, equipment, policies, contraindications, troubleshooting, procedures, hazards, and assessment of effectiveness.

**Item BK6 $60 ($70 nonmembers)**

## Respiratory Home Care Equipment

*Respiratory Home Care Equipment* exclusively covers home care equipment with practical applications and charts on oxygen concentrators, liquid units, air compressors, and home care ventilators. An invaluable book for the home care practitioner and equipment technician. Details home care devices, cleaning, disinfecting, and monitoring procedures to minimize infection. Includes guides for educating staff on equipment, therapy, patient assessment, and safety. Features procedures for gas administration and monitoring devices, humidifiers and nebulizers, artificial airways and resuscitators, respirators, and ventilators. By Steven P. McPherson. Hardcover, 192 pages, 141 illustrations, 6 tables.

**Item BK7 $9 ($12 nonmembers)**

Orders with credit cards or P.O. numbers may call (214) 243-2272, or Fax to (214) 484-2720.
If ordering by mail, send coupon to:
**AARC Order Department, 11030 Ables Lane, Dallas, Texas 75229-4593.**

*Allow two days for order processing for regular and express shipping. Addresses outside the continental U.S. require an additional $5 for orders up to $100, add $10 for orders over $100*

| Order Total | UPS Reg. | UPS 2nd Day | UPS Next Day |
|---|---|---|---|
| $15 or less | 3.25 | 6.00 | 14.00 |
| $16 to $30 | 3.75 | 8.00 | 18.00 |
| $31 to $50 | 4.50 | 11.00 | 24.00 |
| $51 to $75 | 5.50 | 13.00 | 31.00 |
| $76 to $100 | 7.00 | 16.00 | 38.00 |
| $101 to $125 | 8.00 | 19.00 | 50.00 |
| $126 to $150 | 10.00 | 22.00 | 60.00 |
| $151 or more | 12.00 | 27.00 | 75.00 |

☐ **Please send me the items I have indicated below.**

| Item | Description | Quantity | Price Each | Total Price |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | |

Ship via UPS ☐ Regular ☐ 2nd Day ☐ Next Day
*Please use the chart to the left to calculate shipping.*

Shipping _____
Merchandise $_____
TOTAL _____

☐ Check or Money Order enclosed payable to the AARC
☐ Bill me, my P.O. No. is _____
☐ Charge to my ☐ Visa ☐ MasterCard
Card # _____ Exp. Date _____ Signature X _____
AARC Member # _____ Name _____
Institution _____
Address _____ City/State/Zip _____

Texas customers only, please add 8.4% sales tax (including shipping charges) Texas customers that are exempt from sales tax must attach an exemption certificate

# Clinical Practice Guidelines: Why, Whence, and Whither?

Perhaps the largest, most discussed, and most costly project initiated by the American Association for Respiratory Care (AARC) in the past 10 years has been the development of AARC Clinical Practice Guidelines (CPGs).[1] CPGs are systematically developed statements to assist clinicians with appropriate respiratory care for specific clinical circumstances. The intended audience for the CPGs developed by the AARC includes everyone involved with the delivery of respiratory care. In addition to respiratory therapists, they should be of interest to physicians—in particular physicians such as pulmonologists and anesthesiologists who are intimately involved with the practice of respiratory care. Clinical practice guidelines are currently fashionable and are being developed by the government and a number of other organizations for a variety of objectives.[2-10] The AARC CPGs are developed for the noblest of reasons—to improve the quality of respiratory care administered to patients. The titles and citations for the 36 previously published CPGs are listed on Page 1299, and the 6 recently approved appear on Pages 1300-1343 of this issue.

### An Overview of Clinical Practice Guidelines

Variability of clinical practice, from one hospital to another and from one geographic region to another, is well known.[10-17] There are differences in patient outcomes, hospital lengths of stay, and costs of care. It is well known that respiratory care practice varies from one hospital to another, and sometimes from one clinical unit to another within a particular hospital. Variations in practice have received increasing public scrutiny. As stated by McGuire,[3] "Our problem is not that the emperor has no clothes, but that because the emperor is increasingly supported at public expense, we must give him guidelines that make his clothes fit our needs as well as his." Where there are differences in practice, the question of which practice is most appropriate is raised by patients, clinicians, third-party payers, and regulating agencies.

The AARC has taken a leadership position in the development of clinical practice guidelines to improve the appropriateness of respiratory care practice throughout the country. Overuse and misallocation of respiratory care has been reported.[18-21] In a retrospective review from the Cleveland Clinic, 25% of respiratory care orders were inappropriate, and another 11% of patients who might have benefited from respiratory care had no orders for such. One solution for this problem may be delegation of more patient care decision making to respiratory therapists in the form of evaluate-and-treat programs, respiratory therapy consultation services, or therapist-driven (ie, patient-driven) protocol programs.[22-24] Even in the absence of such programs, therapist-physician interactions can improve the appropriateness of respiratory care orders.[25] CPGs should provide a basis for determination of appropriate care and the allocation of that care.

In December 1989, the United States Congress established the Agency for Health Care Policy and Research (AHCPR) in an effort to enhance the quality, appropriateness, and effectiveness of health-care services.[7] AHCPR supports clinical practice guidelines that focus on health problems and interventions for which the risks and costs are particularly high, and treatments for which the outcomes of care are particularly variable or uncertain. Although it is important to appreciate that there is a federal initiative to develop guidelines, the development of CPGs by the AARC is *not* affiliated with the AHCPR. AARC CPGs differ in style and form from those of the AHCPR. AHCPR clinical practice guidelines are lengthy and detailed documents; whereas, the AARC CPGs are brief but practical documents that address specific respiratory care modalities. As of December 1994, AHCPR had developed 16 guidelines—none of which related to respiratory care, critical care, pulmonary medicine, or anesthesia.

Through its Agenda for Change, the Joint Commission for Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations (JCAHO) is promulgating the development of clinical indicators as quantitative measures to monitor and evaluate the quality of patient care.[26] Clinical practice guidelines, such as those developed by the AARC, are not clinical indicators *per se*, but Guidelines developed by the AARC should be consistent with the JCAHO concept of clinical indicators. By establishing a peer-reviewed basis for the appropriate use of respiratory care, the AARC CPGs can be used as a component of a continuous quality improvement program. With increasing emphasis on outcomes, the CPGs can be used to determine whether the outcomes associated with respiratory care procedures are appropriate.

---

A version of this editorial will be published in *International Anesthesiology Clinics* in 1996.

All clinical practice guidelines should improve the consistency and appropriateness of care, and serve as a guide for education and research. They should define and justify clinical practice.[5] This is important and necessary for the following reasons.

**Technology explosion:** Many respiratory care technologies exist that were not available 20 years ago; these include pulse oximetry, pressure support ventilation, and microprocessor ventilators, to name a few. The appropriate integration of such technologies into clinical practice is often unclear and should be aided by AARC CPGs—an example is the CPG on Pulse Oximetry. There are also changes in the application of existing therapies. Examples include oxygen therapy, aerosol therapy, IPPB, and incentive spirometry—for each of which there is now a related AARC CPG.

**Information explosion:** It is axiomatic that an information explosion exists in health care. For example, there were 8,663 articles related to 12 respiratory care topics from 1991 until mid-1995 (Table 1). It is impossible for anyone to read all of this literature, assess its scientific validity, and integrate its findings into everyday patient care.[27] Clinical practice guidelines should help to bridge the gap that often exists between academicians and clinicians. Each of the AARC CPGs is supported by an extensive bibliography. However, the CPGs are not intended to be a meta-analysis and are based upon consensus as well as science. This is particularly the case when the scientific basis may not be clear, but the practice is established and considered appropriate by respected clinicians.

Table 1. Number of Citations Identified from a MEDLINE Search of Twelve Respiratory-Care-Related Topics Published between 1991 and Mid-1995.

| Topic | Number of Citations |
|---|---|
| Pulse oximetry | 709 |
| Oxygen therapy | 591 |
| Arterial blood gases | 582 |
| Nebulizers, inhalers, & aerosol therapy | 332 |
| Mechanical ventilation | 2,069 |
| Suctioning | 158 |
| Cardiopulmonary resuscitation | 1,494 |
| Chest physiotherapy | 59 |
| Spirometry | 1,334 |
| IPPB & incentive spirometry | 57 |
| Indirect calorimetry | 630 |
| Humidifiers | 48 |
| **Total** | 8,663 |

**Physician, administrator, & patient expectations:** Physicians, hospital administrators, patients, and third-party payers sometimes have differing expectations of respiratory care practitioners. The clinical practice guidelines should improve the congruence of those expectations. There is increased interest in providing only those therapies for which there is a scientific basis, and the CPGs should provide this scientific basis or indicate when it is absent. CPGs should provide a basis for effective physician-therapist interactions.

**Regulation, litigation, & risk management:** CPGs should provide the basis for appropriate care. At the same time, they should be flexible enough to be tailored to the individual needs of specific patients. Although they are intended to be *guidelines*, they are likely to become accepted as *standards* of care. As such they may play an important role in malpractice claims and establishment of a standard of care.[28] The adoption of anesthesia guidelines has resulted in lower malpractice insurance premiums.[29,30] The role of respiratory care guidelines in risk management remains to be determined.

**Restructuring of respiratory care services:** Restructuring, re-engineering, and 'downsizing' are common 'buzz' words of the 1990s. Respiratory therapists, like all other health-care providers, are being asked to work smarter and more efficiently. There are increasing pressures to provide appropriate care with fewer respiratory therapists. This forces respiratory care departments to decrease the numbers of respiratory care procedures that are provided. The challenge is to eliminate unnecessary care while providing high-quality respiratory care when it is indicated. Managed care providers will demand appropriate allocation, and the responsibility for this will fall increasingly on the shoulders of respiratory therapists. The CPGs should provide assistance to respiratory care departments for developing triage mechanisms so that care is appropriately allocated.

**Respiratory care protocols:** To address the issue of misallocation, increasing numbers of respiratory care departments have worked with their medical staff to develop respiratory care protocols or respiratory care consult services. With such programs, physicians delegate patient-care decisions to respiratory therapists. The respiratory therapist is then responsible for patient assessment, delivery of the appropriate therapy, assessing the response to the therapy, and discontinuing the therapy when it is no longer indicated. Respiratory care protocols are likely to receive increasing clinical application, with fewer specialist physicians and fewer house staff in teaching hospitals. Many respiratory care departments have already used the CPGs to develop institution-specific respiratory care protocols.

**Outcomes and patient satisfaction:** There is increasing pressure to show that clinical interventions improve outcome. This focus on outcomes has been referred to as "the third revolution in medical care."[31] Although they are different, the terms guidelines and outcomes are often used in the same context. The origins of the outcomes movement are similar to those for guidelines development—cost containment and geographic

differences in practice.[32-34] In theory (yet unproven), implementation of well-constructed guidelines should improve the outcomes of health care. There is also increased interest in patient (and family) satisfaction with the quality of care provided. Implementation of CPGs should be consistent with the concept of patient-focused care. In the future, there will be increasing pressure on the health-care delivery system to provide only those therapies that improve quality, outcome, and patient satisfaction and simultaneously reduce cost. CPGs should provide measurable outcomes that can be used to assess respiratory therapy procedures.

### The AARC Clinical Practice Guidelines

The AARC's initiative to develop clinical practice guidelines formally began in 1990. The responsibility to develop Guidelines rests with the CPG Steering Committee. The Steering Committee oversees the activities of Working Groups who are directly responsible for drafting Guidelines. There have been Working Groups for oxygen therapy, aerosol therapy, mechanical ventilation, bronchial hygiene, cardiopulmonary diagnostics, cardiopulmonary resuscitation, and home respiratory care. These Working Groups consist of 4-8 individuals with expertise in the specific topic and include both respiratory therapists and physicians.

The process being used to develop the AARC CPGs is shown in Figure 1. The initial draft of each Guideline is developed from a thorough review of the literature, surveys of current practice, and the expertise of the members of the Working Groups. The initial draft of the Guideline then undergoes multiple revisions and editing by the Working Group, sometimes with the help of consultants to the Working Group. The Working Groups commonly spend hundreds of person-hours developing a single CPG. When the Working Group is satisfied with the Guideline, it is reviewed by the Steering Committee and distributed for peer review. The peer-review process typically involves over 500 individuals—respiratory therapists, physicians, and others. Every reviewer comment is considered by the Working Group that drafted the CPG and by the Chairman of the CPG Steering Committee. Following peer review and appropriate revision, the CPGs are published in Respiratory Care and widely distributed as reprints. From the beginning of the effort, it was anticipated that the Guidelines would be periodically revised and updated, and, in fact, that process has begun.

For the sake of consistency, each Guideline follows a similar structure:

- Procedure: Commonly used names for the procedure.
- Description: A short description of the procedure, written in the context of the Guideline.
- Setting: Specification of where it is appropriate to perform the procedure.
- Objectives/Indications: A list of the recognized objectives or indications for the procedure.
- Contraindications: Conditions that constitute absolute and relative contraindications to the procedure.
- Assessment of Need: A description of how the clinician determines that a procedure is indicated.
- Assessment of Outcome: A description of how the clinician should evaluate the benefit (or lack thereof) of a procedure.
- Resources: A description of the equipment and personnel required to perform the procedure.
- Monitoring: A description of what should be monitored during the procedure.
- Frequency: A statement regarding how frequently a procedure should be performed, or how one determines frequency.
- Infection-Control: Specific infection-control issues related to the procedure.
- References: The papers supporting the statements made in the Guideline.

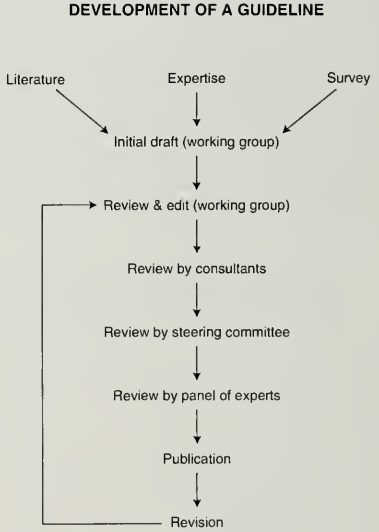



Fig. 1. Steps in the development of the AARC Clinical Practice Guidelines. (Reproduced from Reference 1, with permission.)

It is important that members of the respiratory care community hold appropriate expectations for CPGs (Table 2). Guidelines are not treatment protocols or critical pathways; they do not dictate staffing or salary levels; they do not set equipment budgets; and they do not seek to regulate institution-specific procedures. CPGs should, however, provide a broad,

but limited, context within which specific department procedures, policies, protocols, and critical pathways can be developed. In fact, institution-specific policies, procedures, and protocols could be constructed using the same format as the AARC CPGs.

Table 2. Appropriate Expectations of Clinical Practice Guidelines

| CPGs are: | CPGs are not: |
|---|---|
| Guidelines | Procedures |
| Clinical | Hypothetical |
| Practical | Theoretical |
| Brief statements | Lengthy reviews |
| Profession-oriented | Institution-oriented |
| Voluntary | Regulatory |
| Evolving | Static |

From Reference 1

The literature clearly indicates that clinical practice guidelines do not necessarily change practice.[35-38] If guidelines are to be adopted, they must be widely disseminated; they must be reasonable and readable; they must be consistent with acceptable practice; they must have wide review before publication; and they must be reviewed and updated periodically.

## The Future

Clinical practice guidelines will probably receive increasing attention throughout the 1990s. Guidelines are often considered in the context of health-care restructuring, cost containment, and appropriate allocation of care. The AARC is taking a leadership position in this movement. The development of AARC CPGs should be instrumental in improving the respiratory care administered to patients throughout the country. However, objective evaluation of the AARC CPGs, their use, and their impact on patient care has yet to be established. The Institute of Medicine has described desirable attributes of clinical practice guidelines (Table 3).[39] Conformance of the AARC CPGs to this description has not yet been independently evaluated. The AARC CPGs have been widely praised and translated into several languages. The CPGs have been credited as useful for the development of a respiratory care consultation program.[19,20,22,23] Their educational value has also been recognized, and they have been published in part or in whole in textbooks.[40-42] Although most observers have applauded the development of the AARC CPGs, their long-term impact on the delivery of respiratory care is yet to be determined.

Table 3. Desirable Attributes of Clinical Practice Guidelines

- validity
- reliability
- clinical applicability
- clinical flexibility
- clarity
- multi-disciplinary process
- scheduled review
- documentation

From Reference 39, with permission.

"Sometimes learning requires courage. It can be difficult for experts, especially, to admit that they could be better at what they do if only they knew more. To become a learner is to become vulnerable."

DM Berwick, 1991[43]

**Dean Hess PhD RRT**
Chairman
AARC Clinical Practice Guidelines
Steering Committee

Assistant Director
Department of Respiratory Care
Massachusetts General Hospital

Instructor in Anesthesia
Harvard Medical School

Boston, Massachusetts

### REFERENCES

1. Hess D. The AARC clinical practice guidelines. Respir Care 1991; 36(12):1398-1401.
2. Fletcher RH, Fletcher SW. Clinical practice guidelines (editorial). Ann Intern Med 1990;113(9):645-646.
3. McGuire LB. A long run for a short jump: understanding clinical guidelines. Ann Intern Med 1990;113(9):705-708.
4. Audet AM, Greenfield S, Field M. Medical practice guidelines: current activities and future directions. Ann Intern Med 1990;113(9): 709-714.
5. Brook RH. Practice guidelines and practicing medicine. Are they compatible? JAMA 1989;263(22):3027-3030.
6. Eddy DM. Clinical decision making: from theory to practice: guidelines for policy statements: the explicit approach. JAMA 1990;263 (16):2239-2240,2243.
7. Report to Congressional Requesters. Practice guidelines: the experience of medical specialty societies. February 1991;GAO/PEMD-91-11.
8. Lohr KN. Reasonable expectations: from the Institute of Medicine (interview by Paul M Schyve). QRB 1992;18(12):393-396.
9. Kelly JT, Toepp MC. Practice parameters: development, evaluation, dissemination, and implementation. QRB 1992;18(12):405-409.
10. Phillips YY. The development of practice guidelines in pulmonary medicine. Clin Pulm Med 1995;2:224-230.
11. Wennberg JE, Freeman JL, Culp WJ. Are hospital services rationed in New Haven or over-utilised in Boston? Lancet 1987;1(8543): 1185-1189.
12. Wennberg JE, Freeman JL, Shelton RM, Bubolz TA. Hospital use and mortality among Medicare beneficiaries in Boston and New Haven. N Engl J Med 1989;321(1):1168-1173.
13. Chassin MR, Kosecoff J, Park RE, Winslow CM, Kahn KL, Merrick NJ, et al. Does inappropriate use explain geographic variations in the use of health care services? A study of three procedures. JAMA 1987;258(18):2533-2537.

14. Leape LL, Park RE, Solomon DH, Chassin MR, Kosecoff J, Brook RH. Does inappropriate use explain small-area variations in the use of health care services? JAMA 1990;263(5):669-672.
15. Williams SV, Nash DB, Goldfarb N. Differences in mortality from coronary artery bypass graft surgery at five teaching hospitals. JAMA 1991;266(6):810-815.
16. O'Connor GT, Plume SK, Olmstead EM, Coffin LH, Morton JR, Maloney CT, et al and the Northern New England Cardiovascular Disease Study Group. A regional prospective study of in-hospital mortality associated with coronary artery bypass grafting. JAMA 1991; 266(6):803-809.
17. Blumberg MS. Biased estimates of expected acute myocardial infarction mortality using MedisGroups admission severity groups. JAMA 1991;265(22):2965-2970.
18. Zibrak JD, Rossetti P, Wood E. Effect of reductions in respiratory therapy on patient outcome. N Engl J Med 1986,315(5):292-295.
19. Stoller JK. Misallocation of respiratory care services: time for a change. Respir Care 1993;38(3):263-266.
20. Stoller JK, Haney D, Burkhart J, Fergus L, Giles D, Hoisington E, et al. Physician-ordered respiratory care vs physician-ordered use of a respiratory therapy consult service: early experience at the Cleveland Clinic Foundation. Respir Care 1993;38(11):1143-1154.
21. Brougher LI, Blackwelder AK, Grossman GD, Staton GW. Effectiveness of medical necessity guidelines in reducing cost of oxygen therapy. Chest 1986;90:646-648.
22. Orens DK. A manager's perspective on respiratory therapy consult services. Respir Care 1993;38(8):884-886.
23. Shrake KL, Scaggs JE, England KR, Henkle JQ, Eagleton LE. Benefits associated with a respiratory care assessment-treatment program: results of a pilot study. Respir Care 1994;39(7):715-724.
24. Weber K, Milligan S. Therapist-driven protocols: the state of the art. Respir Care 1994;39(7):746-756.
25. Hart SK, Dubbs W, Gil A, Myers-Judy M. The effects of therapist evaluation of orders and interaction with physicians on the appropriateness of respiratory care. Respir Care 1989;34(3):185-190.
26. Characteristics of clinical indicators. QRB 1989;15(11):330-339.
27. Haynes RB. Loose connections between peer-reviewed clinical journals and clinical practice. Ann Intern Med 1990;113(9):724-728.
28. Hirshfeld EB. From the Office of the General Counsel. Practice parameters and medical liability of physicians. JAMA 1990;263(11): 1556,1559-1562.
29. Eichhorn JH, Cooper JB, Cullen DJ, Maier WR, Philip JH, Seeman RG. Standards for patient monitoring during anesthesia at the Harvard Medical School. JAMA 1986;256(8):1017-1020.
30. McGinn P. Practice standards leading to premium reductions. AMA News, December 2, 1988:1, 28.
31. Relman AS. Assessment and accountability: the third revolution in medical care (editorial). N Engl J Med 1988;319(18):1220-1222.
32. Schwartz JS, Ball JR, Moser RH. Safety, efficacy, and effectiveness of clinical practices: a new initiative. Ann Intern Med 1982;96(2): 246-247.
33. Greenfield S. The state of outcome research: are we on target? (editorial) N Engl J Med 1989;320(17):1142-1143.
34. Epstein AM. The outcomes movement—will it get us where we want to go? N Engl J Med 1990:323(4):266-270.
35. Fowkes FGR, Roberts CJ. Introducing guidelines into clinical practice. Effective Health Care 1984;1:313-321.
36. Lomas J, Anderson GM, Domnick-Pierre K, Vayda E, Enkin MW, Hannah WJ. Do practice guidelines guide practice? The effect of a consensus statement on the practice of physicians. N Engl J Med 1989;321(19):1306-1311.
37. Vang J. The consensus development conference and the European experience. Int J Tech Assess Health Care 1986;2:65-76.
38. Gleicher N. Cesarean section rates in the United States. The short-term failure of the National Consensus Development Conference in 1980. JAMA 1984;252(23):3273-3276.
39. Field MJ, Lohr KN. Guidelines for clinical practice: from development to use. Washington DC: National Academy Press, 1992.
40. Cohen N, Fink J. Humidity and aerosols. In: Eubanks DH, Bone RC. Principles and applications of cardiopulmonary respiratory care equipment. St Louis: Mosby Yearbook, 1994.
41. Burton GG, Tietsort JA. Therapist driven protocols (TDPs)—a practitioner's guide. Torrance CA: Academy Medical Systems, 1993.
42. Branson RD, Hess DR, Chatburn RL. Respiratory care equipment. Philadelphia: JB Lippincott, 1995.
43. Berwick DM. The double edge of knowledge (editorial). JAMA 1991;266(6):841-842.

---

Reprints: Dean Hess PhD RRT, Respiratory Care, Ellison 401, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston MA 02114.

# Guidelines: A Call for Local Implementation and Assessment of Impact

The Clinical Practice Guideline: Polysomnography, published in this issue of RESPIRATORY CARE,[1] is a major step forward in recognizing the diversity of talent and skill needed to effectively diagnose and, thus, manage patients with sleep disorders. The two professional organizations—the American Association for Respiratory Care and the Association of Polysomnography Technologists—have outlined the necessary knowledge base and skills for "technicians" charged with constant attendance at sleep studies.[2] The career position that such technicians hold makes demands, requires specialized knowledge, and imposes responsibilities beyond those expected of many who perform 'routine' electrophysiology studies and respiratory care procedures. This document establishes a benchmark for that position.

The current 'guidelines approach' to medical and paramedical practice manifested as publications from professional societies and government agencies is a two-edged sword with inherent strengths and under-recognized weaknesses.[3,4] The need for guidelines is based upon the realization that considerable variation exists among cases and their management that are independent of patient outcome or satisfaction. The hope is that guidelines will capture the practices that lead to the best outcome and thereby reduce variations in care. All those involved would examine the literature and propose solutions. Often the solution might be to improve the system of care rather than to change physician behavior or training. Moreover, guidelines would incorporate recommendations designed to assess their impact—positive or negative—on the problem and to direct alterations over time (ie, provisions for continuous quality improvement).

General weaknesses should also be recognized. First, guidelines are easier to write than to implement or assess. Second, professionally derived guidelines can be too long, too detailed, and too specialized for general use. As a consequence, expressions of expert opinion or commercial 'pitches' may still have a greater impact.[5] Third, guidelines often do not identify, a priori, the end-users or would-be implementors—those in a position to directly improve care. Also, we have learned that local resources and resource allocation cannot be anticipated or dictated by national standards. In other words, there may be no one 'best' practice. Best practice may take a variety of forms.

So, how will this guideline fare? The problem: the need to define the equipment requirements and personnel skills involved in the diagnostic and therapeutic aspects of polysomnography. As a consequence of the publication of the guideline, I believe that the technical practice of polysomnography as a test or as part of a therapeutic trial is now better defined. And, in that regard I believe that the definition of the knowledge base is more important than the spelling out of procedural details. This document could easily be made a part of the procedure manual of those departments that manage patients with sleep disorders. However, I do hope that we avoid the "Wizard of Oz" mentality—a diploma rather than a brain—and focus on skills acquisition and assessment in functional terms, rather than by degree and credential acquisition.

Where can this guideline make the most impact? I encourage greater effort toward its local implementation and toward assessment of its local impact, rather than debate on the document per se. Sleep medicine is new; we have the opportunity to construct quality improvement procedures that acknowledge the validity of outcome measures addressing patient satisfaction, adherence to therapy, and improvement in the quality of life.[6,7] Do these guidelines affect care, satisfaction, or cost effectiveness? Are patients recovering faster? I encourage you to use this document to involve sleep-study personnel, physicians, and administrators in quality improvement over time. Five years from now, we should ask the question, Has this document improved care and access to care for patients? If it has, then it was worth the considerable "blood, sweat, and tears" that your organizations expended in putting it together.

**Kingman P Strohl MD**
Professor of Medicine
Director, Center for Sleep Disorders Research
Case Western Reserve University
Cleveland, Ohio

## REFERENCES

1. American Association for Respiratory Care-Association of Polysomnography Technicians. Clinical Practice Guideline: polysomnography. Respir Care 1995;40(12):1336-1343.
2. Agency for Health Care Policy and Research. Polysomnography and Sleep Disorders Centers. Publication No. 92-0027. Rockville MD: Public Health Service 1991.
3. Eddy DM. Clinical policies and the quality of clinical practice. N Engl J Med 1982;307:343-347.
4. Field M, Lohr K, editors. Guidelines for clinical practice from development to use. Washington DC: National Academy Press.
5. Packard V. The hidden persuaders. New York: Pocket Books 1981.
6. American Thoracic Society-American Sleep Disorders Association. Conference on Health Outcomes Research in Sleep Apnea. Am J Respir Crit Care Med (in press).
7. National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute Working Group on Sleep Apnea. Sleep Apnea: Is Your Patient at Risk? Washington DC: NIH-NHLBI, 1995. Reprinted in Respir Care 1995;40(12):1287-1298.

# Work of Breathing Imposed by Five Ventilators Used for Long-Term Support: The Effects of PEEP and Simulated Patient Demand

Richard D Branson RRT and Kenneth Davis Jr MD

**BACKGROUND: The imposed work of breathing ($WOB_I$) has been shown to be excessive during spontaneous breathing through home-care ventilators that have not been fitted with an H-valve and external continuous flow. Our goal was to determine whether the performance of a prototype ventilator similar in size to home-care ventilators and purported to be easy to use is comparable to the performance of a widely used intensive care ventilator. METHODS: We measured the $WOB_I$, maximum inspiratory pressure ($P_{Imax}$), delay time, and pressure-time product (PTP) during simulated spontaneous breathing via a lung model. We compared the Aequitron LP-6 and LP-10, PLV-102, Puritan-Bennett 7200ae, and Bird TBird VS ventilators. We also measured pressure-rise time and pressure overshoot during pressure support ventilation with the 7200ae and TBird VS. Data were collected from 6 simulated spontaneous breaths for each system at 3 levels of tidal volume and inspiratory flow (200 mL at 30 L/min, 400 mL at 60 L/min, and 600 mL at 90 L/min). RESULTS: The $WOB_I$, $P_{max}$, time delay, and PTP were greater with the 3 home-care ventilators than with the 7200ae or TBird VS. Additionally, as patient demand increased, all inferences of the $WOB_I$ increased. Performance of the TBird VS and of the 7200ae was similar although the TBird VS provided for a significantly lower $P_{Imax}$ and PTP while having a faster pressure-rise time during pressure support ventilation. CONCLUSION: Our results suggest that the $WOB_I$ during spontaneous breathing via home-care ventilators is excessive, and as a consequence the intermittent mandatory ventilation (IMV) modes should not be used without modification. The TBird VS and 7200ae ventilators are superior to the home-care ventilators and have a low $WOB_I$.** [Respir Care 1995;40(12):1270-1278]

Mr Branson and Dr Davis are associated with the Division of Trauma & Critical Care, Department of Surgery, University of Cincinnati Medical Center, Cincinnati, Ohio.

The authors have no financial interest in the products mentioned in this paper.

Abstracts based on the study reported here were presented by Mr Branson during the RESPIRATORY CARE OPEN FORUM at the 1995 Annual Meeting of the American Association for Respiratory Care held in Orlando, Florida, December 2-5, 1995.

Reprints: Richard D Branson RRT, Assistant Professor of Surgery, University of Cincinnati Medical Center, PO Box 670558, Cincinnati OH 45267-0558.

## Introduction

Mechanical ventilation of the patient in the intensive care unit (ICU) is costly.[1] Alternatives to ICU care include the care provided in step-down units, noninvasive-monitoring units, subacute-care facilities, and the home. Recent evidence suggests that subacute care may provide the most comprehensive care at the least expense.[2]

However, weaning patients in the subacute-care environment is a concern. In 1990, Kacmarek et al demonstrated the excessive work of breathing imposed ($WOB_I$) by home-care ventilators.[3] They suggested that these ventilators be used only in the assist/control mode or be modified with an H-valve system and

pass-over humidifier to allow intermittent mandatory ventilation (IMV) without excessive $WOB_I$. Because of the shortcomings of these ventilators, some subacute-care facilities use ICU ventilators. However, ICU ventilators tend to be more complex and less user-friendly and to limit patient mobility.

We evaluated 5 ventilators in the IMV mode (spontaneous breathing) and 2 ventilators in the pressure support (PSV) mode to compare the $WOB_I$, pressure-time product (PTP), maximum inspiratory pressure ($P_{Imax}$), and delay time.

The purpose of the study was to compare the $WOB_I$, PTP, and $P_{Imax}$ of 3 home-care ventilators, an ICU ventilator, and a prototype ventilator designed for subacute care similar in size to the home-care ventilators and purported to be simple to use. Our goal was to determine whether the prototype ventilator could demonstrate ICU performance.

## Materials & Methods

Five ventilators (1 of each model) were studied. Four of the ventilators were chosen because our research found that they were often used in subacute-care facilities. The fifth ventilator is a new device designed for subacute care. Included were 3 home-care ventilators (LP-6, LP-10, PLV-102),* an ICU ventilator (Puritan-Bennett 7200ae), and the prototype ventilator (TBird VS†). Table 1 provides a comparison of the modes, operational characteristics, physical characteristics, and manufacturers' suggested retail price.

### Ventilator Descriptions

**LP-6 and LP-10:** The LP-6 and LP-10 are electrically powered, electronically controlled volume-controllers that use a piston as the driving mechanism. Both operate in the control, assist/control, and IMV modes. Breaths are pressure-triggered and time- or volume-cycled. Spontaneous breathing occurs through the exhalation valve in the circuit, from within the ventilator via an antisuffocation valve, or through the air-intake valve of the piston chamber.

**TBird VS:** The TBird VS is an electrically powered, microprocessor-controlled, pressure- or volume-controller that uses a turbine as the driving mechanism. It operates in the control, assist/control, synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation (SIMV), pressure support ventilation (PSV), and continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) modes and can deliver pressure- or volume-limited breaths. Breaths are flow-triggered and can be time-, pressure-, flow-, or volume-cycled. Gas flow during spontaneous breathing is delivered via a drag turbine. During flow-triggering, the base flow is constant at 10 L/min and trigger sensitivity is adjustable from 2 to 9 L/min. After initiation of a breath, the TBird VS attempts to reach a pressure of 1.5 cm $H_2O$ above the set positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) or CPAP level. Inspiration is terminated when flow through the expiratory transducer becomes higher than 10 L/min.

* Suppliers of commercial products are listed in the Product Sources section at the end of the text.

† At the time of the study, the TBird VS had not received Food and Drug Administration approval.

Table 1. Operational Characteristics of the 5 Ventilators Studied

| Characteristic* | Aequitron LP-6 | Aequitron LP-10 | Bird TBird VS† | PLV-102 | Puritan-Bennett 7200ae |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Modes | | | | | |
| CMV | √ | √ | √ | √ | √ |
| A/C | √ | √ | √ | √ | √ |
| SIMV | √ | √ | √ | √ | √ |
| PSV | — | — | √ | — | √ |
| CPAP | — | — | √ | — | √ |
| Output (range) | | | | | |
| Volume (mL) | 100-2,200 | 100-2,200 | 50-2,000 | 50-1,800 | 100-2,500 |
| Frequency (b/min) | 1-38 | 1-38 | 2-80 | 2-40 | 0.5-70 |
| PEEP (cm $H_2O$) | — | — | 0-30 | — | 0-45 |
| $F_{DO_2}$ | 0.21 | 0.21 | 0.21-1.0 | 0.21-1.0 | 0.21-1.0 |
| Pressure Limit (cm $H_2O$) | 25-100 | 25-100 | 20-130 | 5-95 | 10-120 |
| Air Source | Piston | Piston | Turbine | Piston | Compressor |
| Battery | √ | √ | √ | √ | — |
| Manufacturer's Suggested Price | $8,500 | $9,985 | $10,500† | $11,860 | $22,125 |
| Size | 9 × 14 × 13 | 9 × 13 × 12 | 12 × 12 × 11 | 9 × 12 × 12 | 40 × 22 × 26 |
| Weight (lb) | 34 | 32 | 28 | 28 | 328 |

*CMV = controlled mechanical ventilation; A/C = assist/control; SIMV = synchronized intermittent mechanical ventilation; PSV = pressure support ventilation; CPAP = continuous positive airway pressure; PEEP = positive end-expiratory pressure; $F_{DO_2}$ = fractional concentration of oxygen delivered.
† At the time of the study, the TBird VS was not yet approved by the Food & Drug Administration (510K application).

**PLV-102:** The PLV-102 is an electrically powered, electronically controlled volume-controller that uses a piston as the driving mechanism. It operates in the control, assist/control, and IMV modes. Breaths are pressure-triggered and time- or volume-cycled. Spontaneous breathing occurs through the exhalation valve in the circuit or through the air intake in the piston chamber.

**7200ae:** The 7200ae is an electrically powered, microprocessor-controlled, pressure- or volume-controller that uses gas from an air compressor and compressed oxygen as the driving mechanism and proportional solenoids for waveform output. It operates in the control, assist/control, SIMV, PSV, and CPAP modes. Breaths can be pressure- or flow-triggered and pressure-, flow-, or time-cycled. Gas flow during spontaneous breathing is provided via the proportional solenoids from the air and oxygen sources. During flow-triggering, the base flow is adjustable from 5 to 20 L/min and trigger sensitivity is adjustable from 1 to 10 L/min. After initiation of a breath, the TBird attempts to reach a pressure of 0.5 cm $H_2O$ above the set PEEP or CPAP level. Inspiration is terminated when flow through the expiratory flow transducer increases to 2 L/min above base flow.

### Experimental Set-Up

A patient model of simulated spontaneous breathing, similar to that originally described by Opt' Holt,[4] was used to evaluate the ventilators. A 2-chamber test lung was modified to allow the chambers to be connected by a lift bar. One chamber (driving chamber) was connected to a Bird VIP ventilator and the other (experimental chamber) was connected to the ventilators to be tested. When the driving chamber is ventilated by the ventilator, the experimental chamber is lifted by the lift bar, creating subatmospheric pressure in the experimental chamber. Our system used a metal T-piece attached to the experimental chamber, which was lifted by the driving chamber. A long metal screw was placed through the T-piece to allow communication between the 2 lungs even when PEEP was present in the experimental lung (Fig. 1). This obviated the need to add PEEP to the driving lung to balance chamber movement.

Compliance settings of the test lung were set at 0.04 L/cm $H_2O$ and resistance of the experimental chamber was created by a 8 3/16 in. length of endotracheal tube with a 7-mm internal diameter (ID) that provided a resistance of 5.9 cm $H_2O \cdot s \cdot L^{-1}$ at a flow of 1.0 L/s. The driving ventilator simulated spontaneous breathing, generating a sine-wave flow pattern and frequency of 10 breaths/min at 3 combinations of tidal volume ($V_T$) and peak inspiratory flow, or $\dot{V}_I$ (200 mL at 30 L/min, 400 mL at 60 L/min, and 600 mL at 90 L/min). All measurements were accomplished at 0 and 5 cm $H_2O$ PEEP. PEEP was created in the PLV-102, LP-6, and LP-10 using a disposable PEEP valve. The sine-wave flow pattern and volume-flow combinations were chosen to simulate breathing patterns from quiet to active that might be encountered in subacute care.

Only the 7200ae and TBird were studied during PSV. Measurements were made at 0 and 15 cm $H_2O$ PSV.

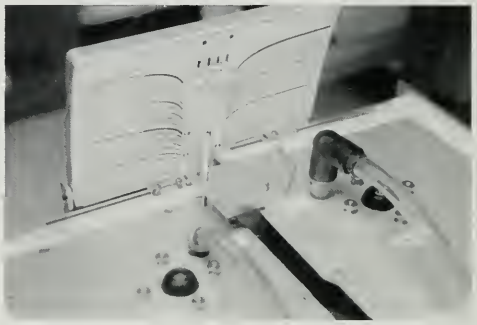


Fig. 1. Photograph showing screw that allows communication between the 2 lungs even when positive end-expiratory pressure is present in the experimental lung.

### Measurements

Pressure was measured at the proximal airway of the experimental chamber with a differential pressure transducer. Flow was derived from the pressure drop across the pneumotachograph measured at the proximal airway of the experimental chamber. Signals from the pressure transducers were amplified and integrated using a personal computer. Data acquisition was accomplished at a sampling period of 8 ms (frequency 125 Hz). All raw data were saved on the computer for subsequent retrieval and analysis. Pressure, flow, and volume were displayed using a recording oscilloscope.

Pressure and flow measurement systems were calibrated, across the range of measurement, between each series of tests with a U-tube water manometer and rotameter. WOB was calculated as the area subtended by the pressure-volume curve and expressed in J/L (Fig. 2). PTP was measured as the average airway pressure multiplied by the inspiratory time and expressed in cm $H_2O \cdot s$. Time delay was calculated as the time from the initial deflection of the airway pressure signal until the return of airway pressure to the baseline (Fig. 3). The $P_{Imax}$ was defined as the most negative pressure reading during a simulated inspiration.

During PSV, 2 additional measurements were made: the pressure-rise time and the pressure overshoot. Pressure-rise time was defined as the time from triggering until airway pressure reached 90% of the set PSV level of 15 cm $H_2O$. Overshoot was defined as the difference between actual peak airway pressure and the set level of pressure support (Fig. 3).

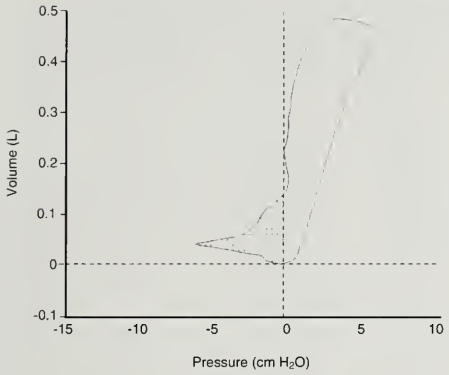



Fig. 2. Area of the pressure-volume curve used to calculate work of breathing in this study.

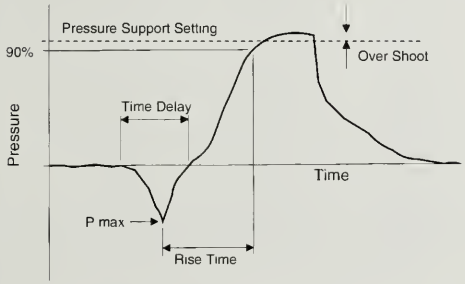



Fig. 3. A representative pressure support breath and the points of data collection.

All ventilators were set up according to manufacturers' specifications, and operational verification procedures were performed. The inspiratory limbs of the ventilator circuits were identical in length and included a dry, adult-size humidification chamber. The 3 home-care ventilators used an exhalation valve in the expiratory limb of the circuit, and the other 2 ventilators used an expiratory circuit connected to an internal exhalation valve. Trigger sensitivity was set at the maximum level (−1 cm $H_2O$) for all home-care ventilators. Because of system differences, only the 7200ae and TBird VS were tested during PSV. Both were tested using flow-triggering.

We collected data for 6 breaths at each experimental condition and calculated means and standard deviations. Statistical analysis was accomplished using commercially available software. Differences in variables among ventilators at a given condition were tested by 1-way analysis of variance (ANOVA), and differences for a given ventilator at different conditions was tested using 1-way ANOVA for repeated measures. The level of significance was set at $p < 0.05$.

## Results

Data comparing the 5 ventilators are shown in Table 2. Data for comparison of PSV between the 7200ae and TBird VS are shown in Table 3. Delay times based on our data but calculated according to the definition of Sassoon[7,21,22] are provided in Table 4. In the spontaneous breathing mode, the 7200ae and TBird VS provided a statistically significant lower WOB, delay time, $P_{Imax}$, and PTP at each simulated patient demand and PEEP level. The presence of PEEP resulted in significant increases in WOB, $P_{Imax}$, and PTP for the 3 home-care ventilators, but differences in variables for the TBird VS and 7200ae were not statistically significant.

As simulated patient demand (ie, $\dot{V}_I$) increased, all measured variables were statistically significantly greater than at the previous simulated demand for all ventilators (90 L/min > 60 L/min > 30 L/min).

At a simulated patient demand of 400 mL ($\dot{V}_I = 60$ L/min) and 600 mL ($\dot{V}_I = 90$ L/min), the $P_{Imax}$ and PTP were lower with the TBird VS than with the 7200ae ($p < 0.05$). However, WOB was not statistically different. Time delay was less with the TBird VS at a 600-mL volume, $\dot{V}_I$ of 90 L/min, and PEEP of 5 cm $H_2O$ than with the 7200ae [0.26 (0.01) vs 0.36 (0.3), $p < 0.05$].

During PSV, the TBird VS had a statistically significant lower $P_{Imax}$, WOB, PTP, and delay time than the 7200ae ($p < 0.01$). Pressure-rise time was faster with the TBird VS at the 2 lower patient demands ($V_T = 200$ mL, $\dot{V}_I = 300$ L/min, and $V_T = 400$ mL, $\dot{V}_I = 60$ L/min) than the 7200ae, but there was no statistically significant difference at the highest patient demand. Overshoot was approximately 40% less with the TBird VS than with the 7200ae at all simulated patient-demand settings. Pressure-volume curves for the 5 ventilators at a PEEP of 5 cm $H_2O$ and at $V_T$ of 600 mL with an $\dot{V}_I$ of 90 L/min are shown in Figure 4 for comparison.

Figure 5 shows pressure support of 15 cm $H_2O$ delivered by the 7200ae and TBird VS with a simulated patient demand of 400 mL and $\dot{V}_I$ of 60 L/min.

## Discussion

Our results confirm the findings of Kacmarek et al,[3] demonstrating high $WOB_I$ and excessive $P_{Imax}$ during simulated spontaneous breathing through home-care ventilators. Our study suggests that the LP-10 is superior to both the LP-6 and PLV-102 with regard to WOB, PTP, and $P_{Imax}$. We also present data confirming the adverse effect of PEEP on WOB with these ventilators.

Our results also demonstrate that the prototype ventilator tested, the TBird VS, performs comparably to the Puritan-Bennett 7200ae in both the CPAP and PSV modes. This

Table 2. Comparison of Measured Variables at Various Tidal Volumes ($V_T$s) and Inspiratory Flows ($\dot{V}_I$s), at Frequency of 10 Breaths/Min*

| Ventilator | PEEP (cm $H_2O$) | Delay Time (s) | $P_{Imax}$ (cm $H_2O$) | WOB (J/L) | PTP (cm $H_2O \cdot s$) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $V_T$ = 200 mL & $\dot{V}_I$ = 30 L/min | | | | | |
| Aequitron LP-6 | 0 | 0.60 (0.01) | −2.7 (0.05) | 0.13 (0.001) | 0.98 (0.007) |
| | 5 | 0.63 (0.01) | −7.5 (0.06) | 0.30 (0.003) | 3.50 (0.06) |
| Aequitron LP-10 | 0 | 0.52 (0.01) | −1.8 (0.08) | 0.09 (0.003) | 0.63 (0.04) |
| | 5 | 0.62 (0.01) | −6.7 (0.04) | 0.26 (0.001) | 3.10 (0.03) |
| TBird VS† | 0 | 0.10 (0.005) | −1.0 (0.3) | 0.005 (0.001)‡ | 0.06 (0.009)‡ |
| | 5 | 0.15 (0.01) | −1.4 (0.16) | 0.007 (0.001) | 0.09 (0.007) |
| PLV-102 | 0 | 0.61 (0.03) | −2.9 (0.05) | 0.14 (0.001) | 1.0 (0.006) |
| | 5 | 0.63 (0.006) | −8.2 (0.1) | 0.32 (0.004) | 3.7 (0.07) |
| Puritan-Bennett 7200ae† | 0 | 0.15 (0.07) | −1.5 (0.08) | 0.012 (0.01) | 0.11 (0.08) |
| | 5 | 0.15 (0.02) | −1.7 (0.08) | 0.008 (0.001) | 0.11 (0.01) |
| $V_T$ = 400 mL & $\dot{V}_I$ = 60 L/min | | | | | |
| Aequitron LP-6 | 0 | 0.63 (0.01) | −5.9 (0.01) | 0.30 (0.001) | 2.3 (0.01) |
| | 5 | 0.65 (0.01) | −10.4 (0.07) | 0.54 (0.004) | 4.9 (0.05) |
| Aequitron LP-10 | 0 | 0.57 (0.01) | −3.8 (0.06) | 0.19 (0.002) | 1.5 (0.02) |
| | 5 | 0.64 (0.01) | −8.6 (0.04) | 0.45 (0.002) | 4.2 (0.03) |
| TBird VS† | 0 | 0.23 (0.02)‡ | −1.6 (0.4)‡ | 0.012 (0.002)‡ | 0.13 (0.02)‡ |
| | 5 | 0.18 (0.01) | −1.9 (0.1) | 0.007 (0.001)‡ | 0.12 (0.01)‡ |
| PLV-102 | 0 | 0.63 (0.01) | −6.7 (0.04) | 0.35 (0.003) | 2.6 (0.02) |
| | 5 | 0.65 (0.004) | −11.6 (0.07) | 0.58 (0.005) | 5.5 (0.06) |
| Puritan-Bennett 7200ae† | 0 | 0.46 (0.06) | −3.6 (1.3) | 0.07 (0.02) | 0.60 (0.06) |
| | 5 | 0.19 (0.01) | −2.6 (0.3) | 0.02 (0.002) | 0.21 (0.05) |
| $V_T$ = 600 mL & $\dot{V}_I$ = 90 L/min | | | | | |
| Aequitron LP-6 | 0 | 0.63 (0.007) | −9.3 (0.05) | 0.48 (0.002) | 3.7 (0.01) |
| | 5 | 0.64 (0.007) | −13.6 (0.06) | 0.72 (0.001) | 6.3 (0.02) |
| Aequitron LP-10 | 0 | 0.59 (0.001) | −6.5 (0.04) | 0.33 (0.001) | 2.5 (0.001) |
| | 5 | 0.64 (0.001) | −11.1 (0.07) | 0.58 (0.002) | 5.2 (0.04) |
| TBird VS† | 0 | 0.29 (0.01) | −1.9 (0.4)‡ | 0.03 (0.001) | 0.26 (0.02)‡ |
| | 5 | 0.26 (0.01)‡ | −2.4 (0.13) | 0.02 (0.001) | 0.22 (0.01)‡ |
| PLV-102 | 0 | 0.63 (0.009) | −11.2 (0.04) | 0.57 (0.001) | 4.4 (0.01) |
| | 5 | 0.64 (0.004) | −15.6 (0.1) | 0.79 (0.006) | 7.1 (0.1) |
| Puritan-Bennett 7200ae† | 0 | 0.26 (0.05) | −4.5 (2.2) | 0.04 (0.01) | 0.44 (0.15) |
| | 5 | 0.36 (0.3) | −2.8 (0.5) | 0.03 (0.005) | 0.35 (0.05) |

* Measured values are reported as mean (SD); PEEP = extrinsic positive end-expiratory pressure; $P_{Imax}$ = maximum negative inspiratory pressure; WOB = work of breathing; and PTP = pressure-time product.

† All values are statistically significant compared to LP-6, LP-10, PLV-102 ($p < 0.001$).

‡ Statistically significant compared to 7200ae ($p < 0.01$).

Table 3. Comparison of Variables during PSV (15 cm $H_2O$) as Provided by the 7200ae and TBird VS Ventilators

| Ventilator | $V_T$* (mL) | $\dot{V}_I$ (L/min) | Delay Time (s) | $P_{Imax}$ (cm $H_2O$) | WOB (J/L) | PTP (cm $H_2O \cdot s$) | Rise Time (s) | Overshoot (cm $H_2O$) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| TBird VS | 200 | 30 | 0.08 (0.02)† | 0.6 (0.1)† | 0.002 (0.001)† | 0.02 (0.008)† | 0.23 (0.01)† | 0.46 (0.04)† |
| 7200ae | 200 | 30 | 0.14 (0.01) | 2.8 (0.3) | 0.010 (0.001) | 0.12 (0.02) | 0.36 (0.03) | 0.93 (0.03) |
| TBird VS | 400 | 60 | 0.09 (0.02)† | 1.0 (0.2)† | 0.004 (0.001)† | 0.03 (0.014)† | 0.21 (0.006)† | 0.57 (0.06)† |
| 7200ae | 400 | 60 | 0.12 (0.02) | 3.6 (0.5) | 0.020 (0.006) | 0.15 (0.03) | 0.34 (0.01) | 0.92 (0.04) |
| TBird VS | 600 | 90 | 0.07 (0.006)† | 1.5 (0.44)† | 0.007 (0.002)† | 0.05 (0.01)† | 0.43 (0.01) | 0.44 (0.06)† |
| 7200ae | 600 | 90 | 0.13 (0.02) | 4.0 (0.4) | 0.02 (0.007) | 0.17 (0.04) | 0.42 (0.01) | 1.80 (0.22) |

* Measured values are reported as mean (SD); $V_T$ = tidal volume; $\dot{V}_I$ = peak inspiratory flow; $P_{max}$ = maximum inspiratory pressure; WOB = work of breathing; and PTP = pressure time product.

† $p < 0.05$ vs 7200ae.

Table 4. Comparison of Delay Times in Puritan-Bennett 7200ae and TBird VS as Calculated by Method of Sassoon et al[7,21,22]

| Ventilator Settings (cm $H_2O$) CPAP/PEEP | PSV | Delay Time (ms) 7200ae | TBird VS |
|---|---|---|---|
| 5 | 0 | 89 ± 15 | 81 ± 10 |
| 0 | 15 | 72 ± 5 | 51 ± 10 |
| 0 | 0 | 96 ± 15 | 64 ± 7 |

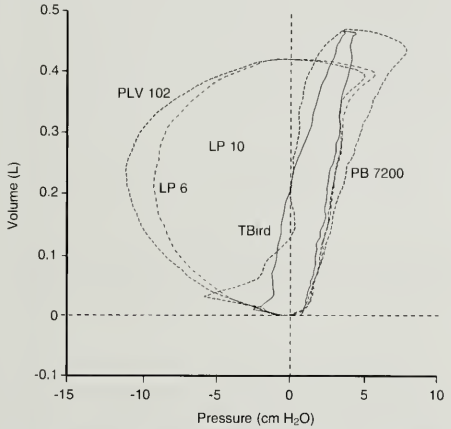



Fig. 4. Comparison of pressure-volume loops from the 5 ventilators used in the study at a simulated breathing effort of tidal volume = 400 mL and peak inspiratory flow = $\dot{V}_I$ of 60 L/min at 0 PEEP.

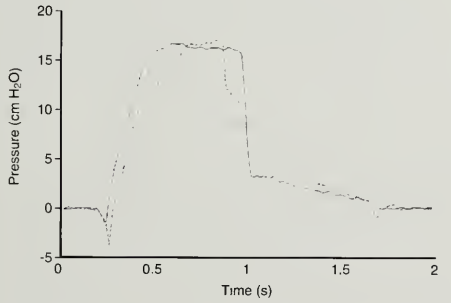



Fig. 5. Comparison of pressure-time curves for the TBird VS (—) and 7200ae (--) at 15 cm $H_2O$ PSV. Simulated patient effort is a tidal volume = 400 mL and peak inspiratory flow = 60 L/min.

new ventilator is intended for subacute and home care. A ventilator that combines compact size with ICU ventilator performance at a price similar to that of other home-care ventilators may represent an important advantage in the current health-care environment. Hirsch et al[5] found that the 7200ae compared favorably to other ICU ventilators during CPAP and PSV in a bench study of the $WOB_I$. We chose the 7200ae for our study because of its popularity and level of performance in other studies.[6-10]

The study findings are not unanticipated. All home-care ventilators studied allow spontaneous breathing via the exhalation valve, via the air intake of the piston, or via an anti-suffocation valve downstream from the piston. These systems, unless modified, by definition do not provide IMV but do allow spontaneous breathing of ambient air between mandatory breaths.[10] None of the home-care ventilators provides gas flow for spontaneous breathing unless modified with an H-valve system and external continuous flow. However, our experience suggests that these ventilators are used in the IMV mode without modification in both subacute and home care.

Adding PEEP to the expiratory valve of a home-care ventilator further increases the inspiratory workload. This also complicates spontaneous breathing because the PEEP valve typically allows only unidirectional flow, eliminating the exhalation valve as a source of ambient air. With these 3 ventilators, the use of extrinsic PEEP creates a spontaneous (auto-PEEP) or expiratory positive airway pressure (EPAP) system,[11] which requires the patient to overcome circuit pressure prior to receiving gas flow. In our experiment, a pressure reduction of 5 cm $H_2O$ was required to allow entrainment of air into the circuit. This type of system is associated with a further increase in the WOB.[12,13]

Numerous studies have evaluated the WOB imposed by current ICU ventilators.[6-10,14-17] These reports show the $WOB_I$ of ICU ventilators to be small (< 0.09 J/L). Our results using the TBird VS and 7200ae also demonstrate a low WOB (< 0.04 J/L), as little as one tenth of that seen with the 3 home-care ventilators (Table 2). The clinical importance of these differences is unclear. In many instances, one ventilator may have a WOB equivalent to half of that of another ventilator (0.08 to 0.04 J/L), yet the total effect on patient WOB may be negligible. If we assume normal WOB to be 0.5 J/L, a decrease in the imposed work of 0.04 J/L represents only an 8% decrease in total patient work. This does not suggest that the work to trigger is unimportant. Gurevitch and Gelmont[18] have shown that excessive $WOB_I$ can cause dyssynchrony and air hunger. However, clinicians should analyze the claims of manufacturers who cite the scientific literature and should understand the true meaning of a 50% reduction in the $WOB_I$.

Comparing our results to other studies is difficult. The type of ventilator circuit used, humidifier, test lung, and simulated patient effort (volume, flow, and flow pattern) are frequently different.[5,7,8,14-17] Kacmarek et al[3] found that the least $WOB_I$ in home-care ventilators was associated with a pass-over humidifier, followed by a heat and moisture exchanger and bubble humidifier. We used the same pass-over wick humidifier and identical lengths of inspiratory tubing in all cases. The 3 home-care ventilators use a mushroom-type exhalation valve; whereas, the TBird VS and 7200ae have built-in exhalation

valves. This necessitates using a longer expiratory tube with these 2 ventilators.

Banner et al[19,20] have suggested that inspiratory WOB can be affected by the exhalation valve. We used the exhalation valve provided by the manufacturer and the same PEEP valve for each home-care ventilator. It is possible that the increase in WOB with the PLV-102 is partially attributable to the exhalation valve, but we did not measure this specifically. Internal exhalation valves used by the 7200ae and TBird VS may also contribute to the lower WOB with these ventilators, but the major difference remains the demand flow system.

Considerable work on flow-triggering has been reported recently by a number of investigators.[6-9,14-17,21-22] The consensus appears to be that flow-triggering reduces response time by approximately 25% compared to pressure-triggering.[21,22] This may be due to the presence of continuous flow, the position of the exhalation valve (open during flow-triggering, closed during pressure-triggering), and a shorter time delay.[21,22] However, as initially pointed out by Sassoon et al[7] and our group,[6,9] the differences in flow- and pressure-triggering with the 7200ae are due to changes in the limit variable. During pressure-triggering, the ventilator is designed to maintain circuit pressure at the PEEP level minus the sensitivity setting and to maintain a circuit pressure 1.0 to 2.0 cm $H_2O$ above PEEP during flow-triggering. The result is a more rapid 'attack' of flow during flow-triggering and a small amount of pressure support.

Because the TBird VS uses flow-triggering exclusively, we compared the 7200ae and TBird VS only during flow-triggering. The TBird used a base flow of 10 L/min and flow sensitivity of 2 L/min. The 7200ae was set at a base flow of 6 L/min and flow sensitivity of 2 L/min. At each simulated patient demand, the TBird VS demonstrated a smaller $P_{Imax}$, lower WOB, and lower PTP than did the 7200ae. These differences were small and probably do not represent a clinically important difference. In many instances, the two ventilators appeared to perform identically (Fig. 6). Because only one of each ventilator was studied, some of the differences seen could be specific to that individual ventilator. Beydon et al[23] found that a group of 20 Ohmeda CPU-1 ventilators showed significant differences in performance unrelated to the age of the machines. Our study design is limited by the use of a single unit of each ventilator model, and this may help to further explain the differences in published results.

Unlike results of previous studies, we did not see significant differences in WOB with the addition of PEEP to the two microprocessor ventilators. This may be due to our method of connecting the lung model chambers. When PEEP is added to the experimental chamber, PEEP is typically added to the driving chamber to prevent the shock wave seen when one chamber 'hits' the other. Our system allowed the driving chamber to remain at a baseline of 0 cm $H_2O$ by adjustment of the screw to allow the chambers constant communication (Fig. 1). We believe the addition of PEEP to the driving chamber might cause an increase in measured work due to a change in test lung compliance as the spring is stretched. We emphasize that comparison of individual studies is inherently difficult because of the number of potential confounders. We believe that each individual study should be judged as a comparison of the particular devices studied at the conditions present in the study.

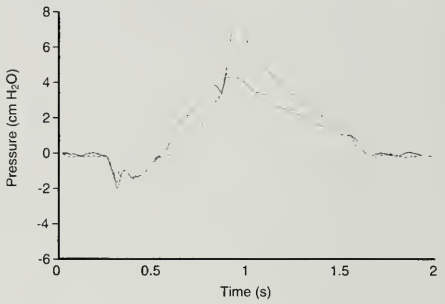



Fig. 6. Pressure-time curves during spontaneous breathing using the 7200ae (--) and TBird VS(—). Simulated patient effort is a tidal volume = 400 mL and peak inspiratory flow = 60 L/min.

Aside from the typical measures of WOB and $P_{Imax}$, we also evaluated time delay and PTP. Our definition of time delay is shown in Figure 3. This definition differs from that used by Sassoon et al[7,21,22] but we believe it to be more relevant. Our time delay includes the work to trigger the ventilator as well as the response to the patient effort (return of pressure to baseline). Sassoon et al defined time delay as the time between initial effort and response of the ventilator. (Values obtained from our data but calculated according to Sassoon et al's definition are given in Table 4.) As Sassoon has pointed out, ventilator response following triggering is as important or more important than the initial $P_{Imax}$. Our results suggest that the trigger delay of the TBird is 10 to 20 ms less than that of the 7200ae. The importance of these differences in adult patients with respiratory frequencies of 10 to 25 breaths/min is unclear. Time delay is a comparison of how rapidly a ventilator responds to patient demand. Care should be used that definitions of time delay in subsequent studies are similar. PTP accounts for the work prior to initiation of flow to be quantified. In many cases, a ventilator may have a low WOB because the limit variable is greater than the baseline pressure. In fact, it is possible for a ventilator with a $P_{Imax}$ of −6 cm $H_2O$ to have a lower WOB than a ventilator with a $P_{Imax}$ of −3 cm $H_2O$ if the attack rate is faster and 2-3 cm $H_2O$ pressure support are delivered.[24] PTP includes the amount of patient effort required to trigger the ventilator prior to initiation of flow.

Hirsch et al[5] compared ICU ventilators during PSV and found a wide range of imposed work of breathing values (0.02-0.0002 J/L). They also measured delivered $V_T$, inspiratory

time, and peak $\dot{V}_I$. Our comparison of the 7200ae and TBird VS evaluated WOB, $P_{Imax}$, PTP, delay time, rise time and overshoot. We chose the latter 2 variables as a method of determining adequacy of the control algorithms of the 2 ventilators. The 90% rise time reflects how quickly the pressure support level is reached, and this has been associated with the lowest $WOB_I$ in lung model studies.[25] The overshoot is a measure of the ability of the ventilator servo-control system to maintain the desired airway pressure.

Our results show that, for the most part, the 7200ae and TBird VS have comparable performance during PSV. However, the TBird VS that we tested had a significantly lower $P_{Imax}$ and PTP and a shorter delay time. The pressure-rise time was approximately 30% faster with the TBird VS at the first 2 simulated conditions (200 mL at 30 L/min, 400 mL at 60 L/min) but equivalent at the 600 mL and 90 L/min setting. This may be due to a change in the attack rate of the 7200ae as demand is increased. The differences in the WOB were also statistically significant although the clinical importance of these small values (0.004 vs 0.02 J/L) is unclear. Overshoot was greatest with the 7200ae when simulated patient demand was greatest (Table 3). At the other 2 conditions, both ventilators demonstrated an overshoot < 1 cm $H_2O$. The clinical importance of overshoot is uncertain, and these evaluations are simply comparisons of the 2 ventilators under similar conditions.

A current trend in mechanical ventilation is to transfer patients from the hospital to subacute or home care. Our experience suggests that a factor limiting or complicating this transition is the inability of current home-care ventilators to provide IMV and PSV and to allow spontaneous breathing at a reasonable $WOB_I$. Use of sophisticated ICU ventilators solves this problem but sacrifices cost, portability, and size (Table 1). Our current search for a product which combines ICU performance with lower cost and portability led to the performance of this study.

## Summary

We have confirmed the results of Kacmarek et al[3] concerning the high $WOB_I$ associated with current home-care ventilators. We concur with their conclusion that these systems should not be used to provide IMV without an H-valve system. Of note is the lower $WOB_I$ associated with the LP-10, a ventilator not available at the time of the Kacmarek study. This suggests some effort has been expended reducing the $WOB_I$ since the initial report.

Our evaluation shows the superiority of the TBird VS and 7200ae ventilators over the home-care units. There are measurable differences in the performance of the TBird VS and 7200ae, although the clinical impact of these differences is speculative. Our overall impression is that the function of the TBird VS with respect to the measured variables may be slightly better than the 7200ae. The TBird ventilator has the advantage of being portable and operating from a low-flow oxygen source—two desirable characteristics.

### PRODUCT SOURCES

**Ventilators & Ancillary Equipment:**

Aequitron LP-6 and LP-10, Aequitron Medical, Minneapolis MN
TBird, Bird Products Corporation, Palm Springs CA
Lifecare PLV-102, Lifecare Corp, Boulder CO
Puritan-Bennett 7200ae, Puritan-Bennett Corporation, Carlsbad CA
Humidification Chamber, Fisher & Paykel, Auckland, New Zealand

**Testing, Recording, & Calculating Equipment:**

Fleisch Pneumotachograph, Switzerland
Differential Pressure Transducer, MP45-1871, DP45-32, Validyne Engineering Corp, Northridge CA
Signal Conditioners & Carrier Demodulators, Validyne Engineering Corp, Northridge CA
METLAB Software, MathWorks Inc, Natick MA
486DX 33-mHz computer, New Edge Systems
Data-acquisition card, Keithley DAS 16, Taunton MA
Test Lung, TTL, Michigan Instruments MI

### REFERENCES


1. Bach JR, Intintola P, Alba AS, Holland IE. The ventilator assisted individual: cost analysis of institutionalization vs rehabilitation and in-home management. Chest 1992;101(1):26-30.
2. Saposnick A. Opportunities abound for RCPs in home care. AARC Times 1995;19(4):66-70.
3. Kacmarek RM, Stanek KS, McMahon KM, Wilson RS. Imposed work of breathing during synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation provided by 5 home care ventilators. Respir Care 1990;35(5): 405-414.
4. Opt' Holt TB, Hall MW, Bass JB, Allison RC. Comparison of changes in airway pressure during continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) between demand valve and continuous flow devices. Respir Care 1982;27(10):1200-1209.
5. Hirsch C, Kacmarek RM, Stanek K. Work of breathing during CPAP and PSV imposed by the new generation mechanical ventilators: a lung model study. Respir Care 1991;36(8):815-828.
6. Branson RD. Flow-triggering systems (Kittredge's Corner). Respir Care 1994;39(2):138-144.
7. Sassoon CSH, Giron AE, Ely E, Light RW. Inspiratory work of breathing on flow-by and demand-flow continuous positive airway pressure. Crit Care Med 1989;17(11):1108-1114.
8. Moran JL, Homan S, O'Fathartaigh M, Jackson M, Leppard P. Inspiratory work imposed by continuous positive airway (CPAP) machines: the effect of CPAP level and endotracheal tube size. Intensive Care Med 1992;18(13):148-154.
9. Branson RD, Campbell RS, Davis K Jr, Johnson DJ. Comparison of pressure and flow triggering systems during continuous positive airway pressure. Chest 1994;106(2):540-544.
10. Branson RD, Chatburn RL. Technical description and classification of modes and ventilator operation. Respir Care 1992;37(9):1026-1044.
11. Branson RD. Spontaneous breathing systems: IMV and CPAP. In Respiratory care equipment, Branson RD, Hess DR, Chatburn RL, editors. Philadelphia: JB Lippincott Co 1995:470-478.
12. Civetta JM, Brons R, Gabel JC. A simple and effective method of employing spontaneous positive pressure ventilation: illustrative case reports. J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg 1972;63(2):312-317.

13. Sturgeon CL, Douglas ME, Downs JB. PEEP and CPAP: cardiopulmonary effects during spontaneous ventilation. Anesth Analg 1978;56:638-641.
14. Banner MJ, Blanch PB, Kirby RR. Imposed work of breathing and methods of triggering a demand-flow, continuous positive airway pressure system. Crit Care Med 1993;21(2):183-190. *Comment in Crit Care Med 1993;21(2):171-173.*
15. Konyukov Y, Takahashi T, Kuwayama N, Hotta T, Takezawa J, Shimada Y. Estimation of triggering work of breathing: the dependency on lung mechanics and bias flow during pressure support ventilation. Chest 1994;105(6):1836-1841.
16. Samodelov LF, Falke KJ. Total inspiratory work with modern demand valve devices compared to continuous flow CPAP. Intensive Care Med 1988;14(6):632-639.
17. Beydon L, Chasse M, Harf A, Lemaire F. Inspiratory work of breathing during spontaneous ventilation using demand valves and continuous flow systems. Am Rev Respir Dis 1988(2);138:300-304.
18. Gurevitch MJ, Gelmont D. Importance of the trigger sensitivity to ventilator response delay in advanced chronic obstructive pulmonary disease with respiratory failure. Crit Care Med 1989;17(4):354-359. *Comment in Crit Care Med 1990;18(5):581-582.*
19. Banner MJ. Expiratory pressure valves. Flow resistance and work of breathing. Respir Care 1987;32(6):431-436.
20. Banner MJ, Downs JB, Kirby RR, Smith RA, Boysen PG, Lampotang S. Effects of expiratory flow resistance on inspiratory work of breathing. Chest 1988;93(4):795-799.
21. Sassoon CSH, Gruer SE. Characteristics of the ventilator pressure and flow trigger variables. Intensive Care Med 1995;21(2):159-168.
22. Sassoon CSH, Mahutte CK. What you need to know about the ventilator in weaning. Respir Care 1995;40(3):249-256.
23. Beydon L, Liu N, Hassapopoulos J, Rua F, Bonnet F, Harf A, Duvaldestin PH. Test of 20 similar intensive care ventilators in daily use conditions—evaluation of accuracy and performances. Intensive Care Med 1992;18(1):32-37.
24. Katz JA, Kraemer RW, Gjerde GE. Inspiratory work and airway pressure with continuous positive airway pressure delivery systems. Chest 1985;88(4):519-526.
25. MacIntyre NR, Gropper C, Westfall T. Combining pressure-limiting and volume-cycling features in a patient-interactive mechanical breath. Crit Care Med 1994;22(2):353-357.

# Airway Management of the Chronically Intubated Patient

George S Leisure MD, David J Stone MD, Burkhard F Spiekermann MD, and David L Bogdonoff MD

**Introduction**
**Oral vs Nasal Long-Term Endotracheal Intubation**
**Apparent Endotracheal-Tube-Cuff Leaks**
**Endotracheal Tube Size**
**Changing the Endotracheal Tube**
**Laryngotracheal Injury from Endotracheal Intubation**
**Extubation**
**In Conclusion**

## Introduction

Optimal care of adult patients requiring chronic endotracheal intubation demands a thorough knowledge of airway problems—problems that are different from those encountered in acute airway management. In this review, we address some of the more important considerations facing the clinician in the maintenance of the chronically intubated patient (ie, one intubated for longer than 72 hours). Skillful and meticulous daily care of the upper airway should decrease the risk of complications related to translaryngeal intubation.

## Oral vs Nasal Long-Term Endotracheal Intubation

The considerations for long-term oral versus nasal endotracheal intubation are outlined in Table 1. Although all of these factors must be appreciated, the concerns over stability and sinusitis deserve the most attention. Although nasal endotracheal tubes (ETTs) are often believed to be better tolerated, a study of prolonged intubation revealed that comfort was not a distinguishing factor between the two routes.[1] Adequate airway suctioning can be accomplished with the ETT in either location but may be more difficult through a nasal ETT, possibly due to the tube's size or angle of curvature. Oral hygiene is more easily maintained with a nasal ETT. In nasally intubated patients, dental trauma may be avoided by circumventing the use of a bite block or oral airway intended to prevent the patient from biting down on and occluding the ETT. Aerophagia in the nasally intubated patient can become

Table 1. Comparison of Advantages and Disadvantages of Oral and Nasal Intubation

| | Oral | Nasal |
|---|---|---|
| Stability | ± | +? |
| Sinusitis | + | – |
| Oral hygiene | – | + |
| Lack of bite block requirement | – | + |
| Pressure necrosis of adjacent tissue | – | – |
| Comfort | ± | ± |
| Suctioning | ± | ± |
| Ability to use larger tube | + | – |
| Laryngeal damage | – | +? |

\+ Clear advantage
+? Possible advantage
– Disadvantage
± Indeterminate

Adapted from Reference 2, with permission.

Drs Leisure and Spiekermann are Assistant Professors of Anesthesiology, Dr Bogdonoff is Associate Professor of Anesthesiology and Surgery, and Dr Stone is Associate Professor of Anesthesiology and Neurological Surgery, Department of Anesthesiology, University of Virginia Health Sciences Center, Charlottesville, Virginia.

The authors have no financial interest in the commercial products mentioned in the paper.

Reprints: George S Leisure MD, Department of Anesthesiology, Box 238, University of Virginia Health Sciences Center, Charlottesville VA 22908.

clinically important, leading to severe gastric distention. Tissue compression by either a nasal or oral ETT can cause pressure necrosis of the alae nasi or lips within hours. The resultant defect may be distressing to the patient and family and be difficult to repair. Appropriate ETT size is addressed in detail in a later section, but let us say here that the nasal route may require a smaller ETT than can be inserted orally. The use of smaller ETTs may contribute to the lower incidence and degree of laryngeal damage associated with nasal intubation, but other factors may also play a role. For example, because nasally placed ETTs may be somewhat more stable than orally placed ones, they may be responsible for less movement-related injury to the larynx. Furthermore, a nasally placed ETT may enter the larynx in a straighter position than one placed orally and, thereby, cause less damage to the larynx.[2]

The issue of stability of the ETT is important because reintubation can be associated with significant morbidity and the potential exists for complete loss of the airway. Premature extubation can occur from movement of the patient's head, movement of the ETT by the patient's tongue, traction on an ETT connected to a ventilator circuit, routine ETT care, repositioning of the patient, or self-extubation. It is interesting to note that at least one study has shown that many patients who extubate themselves do not require reintubation.[3] Although nasal tubes are believed to be more stable, Coppolo and May[3] found no significant difference in the incidence of unintended extubation between patients who were intubated orally or nasally. In contrast, a study by Bach et al[4] revealed a higher incidence of unintended extubation and mainstem intubation with subsequent atelectasis in orotracheally intubated patients. In either case, the ETT should be carefully secured and meticulous attention paid to care of the skin.

Finally, paranasal sinusitis is a well described complication of nasotracheal intubation.[5-8] The immunocompromised patient and the head-injured patient with blood in the sinuses may be at higher risk of developing clinically important sinusitis. After 5 days of nasal intubation, the risk of sinusitis increases dramatically.[6] In one study, the incidence of sinusitis in nasotracheally intubated patients was 43% versus 1.8% in the orotracheally intubated group.[7] Furthermore, nasotracheal intubation has been associated not only with a higher incidence of maxillary sinusitis but also with more extensive disease, with infection spreading to frontal, ethmoidal, and sphenoidal sinuses.[4] Michelson et al[8] have reported that, in nasally intubated patients, the incidence of bilateral sinusitis is significantly higher and its onset earlier. The mechanism of sinusitis development may relate to injury to the sinus ostia induced by nasal tube insertion, resulting in edema and subsequent mechanical obstruction of the ostia. However, the findings of one study stand in contrast to these findings. Holzapfel et al[9] found no statistically significant difference in the occurrence rate of nosocomial sinusitis in nasally versus orally intubated patients. He and his collegues did find a trend that suggested less sinusitis in those with oral tubes. Diagnosis of severe sinusitis is probably best made by computerized tomography (CT), especially in cases of sphenoid or pansinusitis. However, fever and purulent discharge in combination with bedside radiography (Water's view) or ultrasound may be sufficient to establish the diagnosis.

Treatment of severe sinusitis must be instituted promptly because of the potential for sepsis and serious intracranial infection. When severe sinusitis is suspected, one should remove all tubes from the nasal passages including nasogastric (NG) tubes, institute broad spectrum antibiotics, and initiate a course of oxymetazoline HCl. If these measures fail or in cases of pansinusitis or life-threatening sepsis, drainage is recommended. As a result of the serious nature of sinusitis and the possibly higher risk of sinusitis in the nasotracheally intubated patient, orotracheal intubation may be more desirable for long-term care.

### Apparent Endotracheal-Tube-Cuff Leaks

Air leak around an endotracheal tube is a common problem in patients requiring mechanical ventilation. Stauffer et al[1] noted an 11% incidence in their study of 226 intubations in 150 patients. Rashkin and Davis[10] noted an air leak in 15 of 61 patients during a study of acute complications of endotracheal intubation, and 12 of these 15 patients required reintubation. Small leaks may be simply an annoyance and may not constitute an emergency. However, leaks can impair adequate ventilation and place the patient at risk for aspiration of gastric contents. The causes of apparent cuff leaks are summarized in Table 2.

Table 2. Factors Giving Rise to Inability To Provide Leak-Free Ventilation

| |
|---|
| Incorrect cuff position |
| Tube size too small |
| Leak in balloon/valve system |
| True cuff leak |
| Tracheomalacia |
| Tracheoesophageal fistula |

Adapted from Reference 2, with permission.

The most frequent cause of leaks around the cuff is incorrect positioning of the ETT. In a study by Kearl and Hooper[11] to determine the abnormalities present in ETTs removed due to "massive air leak," they found that 61% of those tubes had no mechanical fault. They concluded that tube malposition caused the leaks. In general, oral ETTs are properly positioned at 23 cm at the upper teeth in men and at 21 cm in women (Fig. 1).[2] For nasally placed tubes, approximately 3 cm of additional distance is needed for proper positioning. These depths of insertion usually place the tube cuff sufficiently below the vocal cords and yet make endobronchial intubation unlikely. However, unusually tall or short persons may require adjustments

based on bronchoscopic or radiographic location of the tube. A leak is likely to develop if the cuff protrudes above the vocal cords, and large cuff volumes may be required to seal the airway. Laryngoscopic examination or even visual inspection of the oropharynx usually identifies this condition.

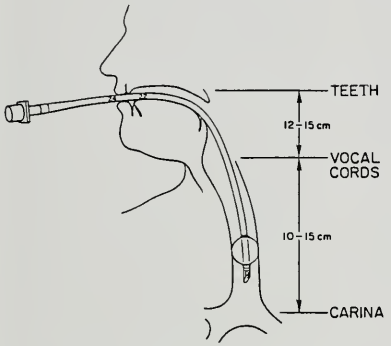



Fig. 1. Diagrammatic representation of key distances related to positioning of the endotracheal tube. (Reprinted from Reference 2, with permission.)

Once proper position is achieved, it is essential to document the distance to the upper teeth or gums as indicated by the markings on the ETT. This may be difficult because the tape used to secure the tube may hide these markings. One method suggested to overcome this problem is to use a tongue blade to measure the distance either from the upper gums, the top front teeth, or the external nares to the proximal end of the ETT adapter, once correct position has been confirmed. The distance is marked on the tongue blade, and this measurement is used periodically to ensure correct tube positioning.[12]

Leaks due to inappropriately small ETTs are uncommon in adults, but they can occur. Patients with tracheobronchomegaly or emphysematous patients with large, compliant airways may require a larger ETT. The highly compliant airways found in emphysematous patients enlarge to a greater extent than do normal airways in the presence of positive pressure.[2] Furthermore, in a model of the trachea, it has been shown that higher intracuff pressures are required to maintain an airway seal in the face of high peak-inspiratory pressures in patients with decreased lung compliance.[13] This phenomenon may account for some leaks, especially in patients with smaller ETTs.

Airway leaks due to defects in either the pilot valve-balloon apparatus or cuff are less likely than leaks due to tube malposition. In the study by Kearl and Hooper,[11] it was found that pilot-valve problems occurred in 11% of tubes, and cuff defects were present in 28%. True leaks of the ETT cuff are usually detected immediately after intubation and generally are due to tears caused by the teeth, nasal turbinates, or Magill forceps. Cuff perforations occur more frequently in nasally placed ETTs. A leak due to cuff perforation should be suspected when the normal resistance to complete cuff inflation is lost. In addition, with the loss of cuff integrity, the increased resistance felt upon complete cuff deflation is also lost. In these cases, the cuff may not be seen on chest radiograph and may not be palpable in the suprasternal notch. The use of a continuous flow device to maintain inflation of a leaking cuff has been described and could be used as a temporary measure.[14] Late occurring leaks are more common in the pilot-valve apparatus than in the cuff. In the case of a valve leak, a 3-way stopcock or T-connector can be placed to maintain a seal. If the valve housing or balloon is disrupted, the connecting tubing can be cut and an alcohol-lubricated 22-gauge angiocatheter inserted into the tubing, the stopcock reconnected, and the seal verified.

Finally, physical abnormalities of the airway or structural complications of intubation can cause leaks. Tracheomalacia, tracheal diverticula, tracheal cysts or tumors, and tracheoesophageal fistula may all result in difficulty sealing the airway. In the case of tracheomalacia, the ETT can be advanced to a different site in the trachea to achieve an adequate seal or simply be replaced with a larger tube. An ETT with a large, low-pressure foam-filled cuff introduced by Kamen and Wilkinson (Bivona Surgical, Hammond IN) may help in this situation. A cuff seal is not necessary if the patient can be successfully ventilated with some form of high-frequency jet ventilation, which provides high flows and, thus, decreases the leak. However, the airway will not be protected from aspiration of secretions or gastric contents.

### Endotracheal Tube Size

We have already addressed the contribution of ETT size to the development of airway leaks, and we now focus on 3 other common considerations with respect to ETT size: fiberoptic bronchoscopy, weaning from mechanical ventilation, and inadvertent or intrinsic positive end-expiratory pressure (auto-PEEP).

Meeting the ETT-size requirement for bronchoscopy is a common clinical problem. Bronchoscopists generally prefer an ETT with an internal diameter (ID) larger than 7.0 mm. When an adult flexible bronchoscope with a 4.9-mm outer diameter (OD) is placed into a 7.0-mm ETT, a cross-sectional area equivalent only to a 5.0-mm ID ETT remains for ventilation around the bronchoscope. This may lead both to difficulty ventilating the patient (especially those requiring maximum ventilatory support) and to the development of auto-PEEP and hyperinflation. The same bronchoscope inserted into an 8.0-mm ETT allows for an airway equivalent in cross-sectional area to that of a 6.0-mm ETT, which may allow for better ventilatory support of the patient.[2] However, as we discuss in the next section, changing the ETT can be a

high-risk procedure. There are alternatives to changing the ETT if bronchoscopy is necessary. The procedure can be performed through a 7.0-mm ETT with careful monitoring of the patient's ventilatory status and adjustments of ventilatory settings or manual ventilation, as needed. The bronchoscope can be inserted through the glottis anterior to the ETT, although this may result in a massive air leak in patients with low compliance, potentially compromising ventilation. A pediatric bronchoscope can also be used and should be long enough for most purposes. At our institution, we attempt to intubate all adult patients in the ICU with at least a 7.5-mm ETT to provide adequate ventilatory support if bronchoscopy is performed.

Tube size is also an issue in weaning from mechanical ventilation because of the concern over increased work of breathing. Under laminar flow conditions, ETTs cause airflow resistance that is directly proportional to their length and inversely proportional to the fourth power of their internal radius. As the inner diameter of the tube decreases, breathing becomes more difficult. However, the issue is whether this is clinically important and worth exposing the patient to the risk of changing the ETT. The results of a number of studies examining the work of breathing show that the increased work of breathing experienced in going from a 8.0-mm ETT to a 7.0-mm ETT is not great and can be easily overcome, if need be, by the addition of a small amount of pressure support.[2,15-17] Weissman has recently shown that 7.0- and 8.0-mm ETTs cause minimal limitations to airflow with the small volumes and low flows observed during tidal breathing.[18] If a patient cannot tolerate the minimal added work required to breathe through the smaller, 7.0-mm ETT, the patient's ability to cope with the added stresses of clearing secretions and preventing atelectasis after extubation must be questioned.

Finally, dynamic hyperinflation and, thus, auto-PEEP can occur as a result of a small ETT in the patient with obstructive lung disease who requires a high level of ventilation. Auto-PEEP, or intrinsic PEEP, is the resulting positive recoil pressure present at end expiration when the lungs fail to return to their true relaxation volume or functional residual capacity.[19] In contrast, extrinsic PEEP is a pressure intentionally applied through the external ventilator circuit. Auto-PEEP can be minimized either by decreasing ventilation (often difficult in the critically ill patient) or by increasing expiratory time. This latter goal can be achieved either by changing the inspiratory-to-expiratory-time ratio, decreasing the respiratory rate, or increasing inspiratory flows, which also reduces inspiratory time.[20]

### Changing the Endotracheal Tube

We have addressed many of the reasons why an ETT may have to be replaced, and now we focus on the methods to achieve this goal safely. Before a tube is changed, those involved in the care of the patient should be aware of the major risks of the procedure, which include aspiration of gastric contents and inability to reintubate the trachea with resultant hypoxic brain injury or death. The presence of an individual skilled in airway management is essential as is all necessary equipment (such as manual resuscitator, supplemental oxygen mask, oral airways, suction source and catheters, and all necessary airway instruments) before any airway manipulation is undertaken. If possible, the ETT should be changed under direct laryngoscopic vision with the aid of topical anesthesia, glossopharyngeal and superior laryngeal nerve blocks, and minimal or no sedation.[21] Adequate visualization of the glottis should be achieved before the old ETT is removed. Before the ETT is changed, pharyngeal suctioning should be performed and a vagolytic drug (eg, glycopyrrolate, 0.2-0.4 mg I.V.) administered to minimize secretions and the chance of bronchospasm. Muscle relaxants and intravenous anesthetics can be used in special situations; again, it is advisable to remove the old ETT under direct vision with a good view of the glottis. Direct laryngoscopy may be more difficult in an anesthetized and relaxed patient compared to an awake patient because the larynx may then become more anterior relative to other structures.[22]

If direct laryngoscopy does not provide adequate visualization, an alternative is to use a stylet, which when placed into the ETT prior to extubation serves as an intratracheal guide for reintubation. An NG tube can be used, but its flexibility may hinder the passage of the new ETT into the trachea. The pliable NG tube may enter the periphery rather than the center of the glottis, causing the ETT to be caught on the epiglottis or, more commonly, on the posterior commissure of the glottic opening. Manipulation of the neck, ETT, and NG tube, or use of a smaller ETT may permit successful passage. However, as the NG tube warms to body temperature, its flexibility may increase, further impairing its use as a guide. Cooling the NG tube in ice water prior to use may be helpful.[23] Coveler[24] has reported using an 18-French Salem Sump tube with the proximal end cut off to allow direct connection to a jet ventilator. In this fashion, the patient can be ventilated while the tube is being changed. The Eschmann introducer is a more rigid device available in several sizes and may be a more reliable ETT changer than an NG tube (Eschmann Health Care, West Sussex, England). This introducer can also be used as a stylet to aid in blind oral intubation. It can be modified as described by Artru et al[25] to permit measurement of end-tidal $CO_2$. At least two other tube changers are available: the Sheridan TTX™ tracheal tube exchanger in small, medium, and large sizes—medium being for tube sizes 6.0- to 8.5-mm ID (Sheridan Catheter Corp Argyle, NY), and the Cook Airway Exchange Catheter (Cook Critical Care, Bloomington IN) (Fig. 2). The Cook catheter is longer, stiffer, and thicker than the Sheridan and has attachable connectors for conventional (15-mm) and jet (Luer-Lok) circuits. Again, these blind stylet techniques are not fully dependable, and it may prove impossible to pass the ETT into the trachea. Fur-

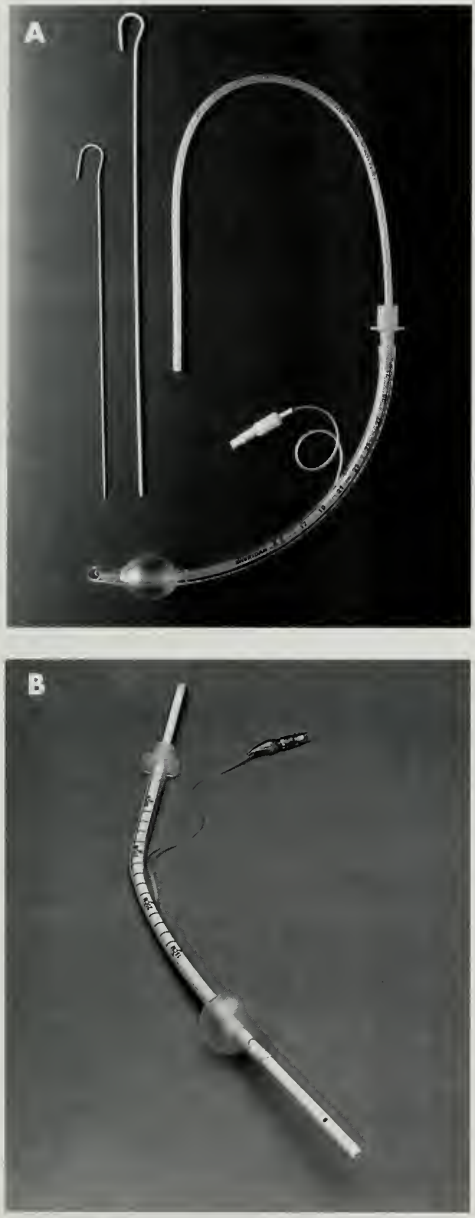



Fig. 2. Photographs of two endotracheal tube changers. A. The Sheridan TTX™ tracheal tube exchanger. B. The Cook Airway Exchange Catheter.

thermore, these stylets can cause damage to the tracheal mucosa and lung laceration.[26]

A 'jet-stylet' endotracheal catheter may provide additional safety during an ETT change. A jet stylet is a hollow, semi-rigid catheter that is inserted through an in situ ETT before extubation. After the ETT is removed over the stylet, the stylet can serve both to ventilate the patient (the jet function), and as a guide for reintubation (the stylet function). Gaughan et al[27] have shown that the jet stylet is capable of providing a minute ventilation consistent with total ventilatory support for most clinical situations. A simple and interesting method of changing a nasal tube to an oral tube has been reported. After removing the ETT adapter and deflating the cuff, the operator advances the ETT (and the pilot balloon) all the way through the nose until the proximal end of the tube can be grasped with a hemostat and withdrawn through the mouth. The adapter is then replaced, the cuff reinflated, and ventilation resumed.[28]

There are three methods by which the flexible fiberoptic bronchoscope (FOB) can be used to change the ETT. In the first method, a new ETT is placed over the FOB, and the scope is then passed well into the trachea alongside the ETT to be replaced, after slightly deflating the cuff. The old tube is removed, and the new one passed into position. If there is not sufficient room to pass the FOB into the trachea, the old tube can be removed under direct fiberoptic visualization, and subsequently the FOB can be placed into the trachea. This latter technique may not be as certain a method of securing the airway because the view may become obscured after tube removal. These two methods permit conversion of a nasally placed ETT to an oral one and vice versa. The third method allows only for changing tubes from nasal to nasal or oral to oral. In this method described by Hudes et al,[29] a new ETT is first placed over the scope, and the FOB is then placed through the existing ETT after removal of the 15-mm connector. The old tube is cut away with a No. 11 scalpel blade pointed away from the FOB as it is withdrawn. After the old tube is completely removed, the new one is inserted.[29] Benumof[30] described a combination of techniques in a patient with a difficult airway who required replacement of a nasal tube with an oral tube. In this case, the FOB was placed through a new ETT and then inserted into the patient's trachea via the oral route. A Sheridan tube exchanger was passed through the nasally placed ETT until it could be visualized just above the carina by the FOB. The nasally placed ETT was removed over the tube exchanger, and the orotracheal tube was passed over the FOB into the trachea. The FOB was withdrawn and after confirmation of correct tube placement with capnography, the tube exchanger was removed.[30] The value of this method is that, if the new ETT cannot be passed into the trachea, the patient can be jet ventilated either through the tube exchanger or through the suction port of the FOB, allowing further attempts at passage of the ETT or semi-elective performance of either cricothyrotomy or tracheostomy.

### Laryngotracheal Injury from Endotracheal Intubation

Many, perhaps most, standard ETTs used today are composed of polyvinyl chloride with high-volume, low-pressure cuffs. The advantage of this material over red rubber and silicone is its ability to soften at body temperature, which provides a stiffer tube for intubation that softens after placement, decreasing the pressure on laryngotracheal mucosa. However, despite these advantages, the possibility of pressure-point injuries at two levels exists: glottic injury due to pressure exerted by the wall of the tube, and tracheal injury due to pressure generated by the cuff or tip.

Laryngeal complications of endotracheal intubation result from pressure exerted by the tube on 3 structures: the cricoid cartilage and the 2 vocal processes of the arytenoids. Mucosal injury of the larynx may occur in the majority of intubated patients. In a dog model, Weymuller[31] has documented by fluorescein perfusion that ischemia is occurring within the first few hours of intubation due to the pressure exerted by the wall of the ETT, which may exceed the capillary perfusion pressure of the tracheal mucosa. Santos, Afriassiabi, and Weymuller[32] showed that after a mean of 10 days of intubation, nearly all (94%) patients evaluated exhibited vocal cord erythema and 67% had vocal cord ulceration. Injury at these sites is probably exacerbated by larger tube size and movement of the tube against the larynx during neck or tube displacement. Laryngeal mucosal injury can lead to serious complications of intubation: abscess in the retrocricoid region of the larynx and laryngeal stenosis. The presence of a cricoid abscess is suggested by the development of severe pain in the region of the larynx and may require antibiotic treatment and drainage.

The risk of laryngeal stenosis is high when the laryngeal injury is severe and deep ulceration has developed. Healing causes normal laryngeal structures to be replaced with scar tissue, leading to narrowing of the lumen and limitation of movement. The exact incidence of laryngeal stenosis is controversial. Whited[30] prospectively studied 200 patients who were intubated for prolonged periods and found a 14% incidence of clinically important laryngeal stenosis in those patients intubated for more than 10 days. In contrast, a review by Bishop et al[34] (including Weymuller) cite a 0-1% incidence of ETT-related laryngeal stenosis. Their review of all patients intubated for more than 10 days in 1981 from the Harborview Medical Center revealed that in 39 of 80 patients who survived hospitalization, none of the survivors had long-term laryngeal problems. The reason for the difference in these studies remains unclear.

Tracheal injuries have been markedly reduced by the use of ETTs with high-volume, low-pressure cuffs. The high-pressure cuffs in use until the 1970s created a seal by deforming the trachea around the inflated cuff. In contrast, modern cuffs achieve a seal by providing a larger surface area for contact with the mucosa, consequently lowering the incidence of ischemia and severe injury. However, despite these advances, it is essential to realize that a modern cuff can be inflated to pressures that induce injury. In order to avoid injury, it is recommended that cuff pressures be measured throughout any prolonged intubation and be kept < 25 cm $H_2O$.[35] In order for the cuff to protect against aspiration of gastric contents, a cuff pressure of 20-25 cm $H_2O$ is needed. It seems clear that it is not always a simple task to provide leak-free ventilation and protection from pulmonary aspiration, and to avoid tracheal injury due to excessive cuff pressure.

Accumulating data suggest that even cuff pressures below 25 cm $H_2O$ can lead to tracheal injury. Stauffer et al have shown that prolonged intubation with cuff pressures > 20 cm $H_2O$ is a significant correlate of tracheal injury. In an autopsy study, Donnelly[36] demonstrated a significant correlation between duration of intubation and laryngotracheal injury. Bunegin et al[37] have suggested that the application of the "maximum safe" pressure of 20-25 cm $H_2O$ may still have negative consequences because mucosal capillary perfusion pressure may not exceed 30 mm Hg (1 mm Hg = 1.36 cm $H_2O$). Their study revealed that application of a pressure of 20 mm Hg to the tracheal wall reduces tracheal blood flow by 75% at the cuff site. In a canine model, tracheal blood flow initially drops 57% within 1 hour of application of a cuff pressure at 15 mm Hg. Unlike the brain, the trachea is unable to autoregulate its blood flow during hypotension, further increasing the likelihood of injury when pressure is applied to the tracheal mucosa.[37] As a result, various cuff-inflation techniques have been advocated to minimize tracheal injury. Miller[38] described a pressure regulating device to prevent excessive cuff inflation pressure, and Jaeger et al[39] have used an automatic, intermittent cuff inflater. However, whether these methods can help reduce injury is debatable. In 1976, Powaser et al[40] showed that hourly cuff deflation was ineffective in reducing the extent of cuff-induced injury. Fortunately, although some degree of tracheal injury may be common at the cuff site, severe, function-limiting stenosis is uncommon. Diagnosis involves tracheal radiographs, fluoroscopy, and endoscopic examination, with tracheal dilatation on radiograph often being the first sign of injury.

The occurrence of a tracheoesophageal fistula is a rare complication of intubation. It usually develops slowly, and the first sign is often a cuff leak. Risk factors include high cuff and airway pressures, motion of the ETT, length of intubation, the presence of an NG tube, and the use of steroids. Treatment is difficult, and mortality is high; so, the emphasis should be on prevention.

### Extubation

Once the patient has been successfully weaned from ventilatory support, extubation can usually take place. All equipment and personnel needed for reintubation should be available. The mouth, nose, pharynx, ETT, and NG tube should

be adequately suctioned, and the patient should breathe 100% oxygen for 2 to 5 minutes. The suction catheter should not remain in the airway with suction applied as the ETT is removed because it may impair adequate oxygenation during extubation. Excessive suctioning should be avoided because it may stimulate coughing and bronchospasm, resulting in hypoxia, hypertension, and tachycardia. Furthermore, overzealous suctioning can cause uvular trauma.[41] The use of intravenous lidocaine prior to extubation is not recommended because it can cause transient respiratory depression in some patients; and, as Paulissian et al[42] have shown, it does not modify the modest hemodynamic responses of extubation. Just prior to extubation, the patient should be given a large, sustained breath, at which time the cuff is deflated and the ETT removed. This sequence dictates that the first postextubation event be a forceful cough, clearing the airway and vocal cords of secretions and reducing the incidence of postextubation laryngospasm and breath holding.[22] A "passive cough" method has been advocated as an alternate method of extubation. After adequate preoxygenation, the pressure relief valve of the ventilator is closed, and one or two breaths are administered. When the intrathoracic pressure has risen to 5-10 cm $H_2O$, the cuff is deflated and the trachea extubated.[43]

After extubation, sore throat and hoarseness are relatively common. The incidence of hoarseness in patients intubated only for the length of a surgical procedure is about 32%.[44] Vocal cord paralysis noted at the time of extubation is rare. It may result from surgery or trauma in the region of the vagus or recurrent laryngeal nerves or to injury induced by the ETT. Laryngeal dysfunction leading to inability to protect the airway from aspiration for a prolonged period after long-term intubation can be a serious problem. Consequently, patients initially should be fed with extreme caution, and some clinicians advocate withholding all oral intake for 24 hours following extubation. Laryngospasm is another potential postextubation problem. This can be treated by administering gentle positive pressure by mask but may require muscle relaxants and reintubation if severe.

A clinically important postextubation problem is glottic edema, which can cause complete airway obstruction and make reintubation necessary. The primary clinical symptom is stridor that usually occurs soon after extubation but may take several hours to become severe. Fortunately, severe stridor after extubation is uncommon, and reassurance, supplemental oxygen, and inhalation of cool, bland aerosols of water are usually all that is necessary. Inhaled racemic epinephrine is the treatment of choice if clinically important edema is present.[45] (Levo-epinephrine, the active component in racemic epinephrine, vasoconstricts the edematous tissue.) Racemic epinephrine has been shown to be effective in cases of viral croup, but its effectiveness is less well documented in cases of traumatic croup. Treatments may need to be repeated frequently to avoid reintubation and should be guided by heart rate and severity of stridor rather than by an exact dosing schedule. The potential for recrudescence of stridor 3 to 4 hours after treatment needs to be considered, and the administration of dexamethasone may prevent this rebound.[46]

Safe tracheal extubation of the patient with a difficult airway due to trauma, surgery, or burns is a challenge. The presence of a leak when the cuff is deflated is an encouraging but not entirely predictive sign of airway patency after extubation. Successful extubation following a positive cuff-leak test is likely. However, a failed cuff leak test does not preclude uneventful extubation.[47] If difficulty with the airway is anticipated, a jet-stylet catheter can be used for a trial of extubation to maintain access to the airway and to oxygenate and ventilate the patient if necessary. The FOB can also be used as an extubating stylet and has the additional advantages of providing suctioning and visualization of the airway. The laryngeal mask airway may have a place in managing ventilatory support of the extubated patient with a difficult airway.[48] Personnel capable of rapidly establishing a surgical airway should be available for any extubation of extreme risk.

## In Conclusion

Despite the wide use and apparent benefit of airway intubation for critically ill individuals, a myriad of potentially serious complications can occur. In this review, we have attempted to highlight some of these issues to help the clinician identify and manage common problems in patients requiring long-term intubation.

## REFERENCES


1. Stauffer JL, Olson DE, Petty TL. Complications and consequences of endotracheal intubation and tracheostomy. A prospective study of 150 critically ill patients. Am J Med 1981;70(1):65-76.
2. Stone DJ, Bogdonoff DL. Airway considerations in the management of patients requiring long-term endotracheal intubation. Anesth Analg 1992;74(2):276-287.
3. Coppolo DP, May JJ. Self-extubations. A 12-month experience. Chest 1990;98(1):165-169. *Comment in 1991;99(5):1319-1320.*
4. Bach A, Boehrer H, Schmidt H, Geiss HK. Nosocomial sinusitis in ventilated patients. Nasotracheal versus orotracheal intubation. Anaesthesia 1992;47(4):335-339.
5. Arens JF, LeJeune FE Jr, Webre DR. Maxillary sinusitis, a complication of nasotracheal intubation. Anesthesiology 1974;40(4):415-416.
6. Pedersen J, Schurizek BA, Melsen NC, Juhl B. The effect of nasotracheal intubation on the paranasal sinuses. A prospective study of 434 intensive care patients. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand 1991;35(1):11-13.
7. Salord F, Gaussorgues P, Marti-Flich J, Sirodot M, Allimant C, Lyonnet D, Robert D. Nosocomial maxillary sinusitis during mechanical ventilation: a prospective comparison of orotracheal versus the nasotracheal route for intubation. Intensive Care Med 1990;16(6):390-393. *Comment in 1991;17(2) 125-126.*
8. Michelson A, Schuster B, Kamp H. Paranasal sinusitis associated with nasotracheal and orotracheal long-term intubation. Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg. 1992;118(9):937-939.
9. Holzapfel L, Chevret S, Madinier G, Ohen F, Demingeon G, Copry A,

Chaudet M. Influence of long-term oro- or nasotracheal intubation on nosocomial sinusitis and pneumonia: results of a prospective randomized, clinical trial. Crit Care Med 1993;21(8):1132-1138. *Comment in 1993;21(8):1109-1110.*

10. Rashkin MC, Davis T. Acute complications of endotracheal intubation. Relationship to reintubation, rate, urgency, and duration. Chest 1986; 89(2):165-167.
11. Kearl RA, Hooper RG. Massive airway leaks: an analysis of the role of endotracheal tubes. Crit Care Med 1993;21(4):518-521.
12. Partridge GE. The tongue blade ruler: a method for ensuring proper endotracheal tube position (letter). Respir Care 1988;33(11):1073-1074.
13. Guyton D, Banner MJ, Kirby RR. High-volume, low-pressure cuffs. Are they always low pressure? Chest 1991;100(4):1076-1081. *Comment in 1992;102(4):1309-1310.*
14. Tinkoff G, Bakow ED, Smith RW. A continuous-flow apparatus for temporary inflation of damaged endotracheal tube cuffs. Respir Care 1990;35(5):423-426.
15. Shapiro M, Wilson RK, Casar G, Bloom K, Teague RB. Work of breathing through different sized endotracheal tubes. Crit Care Med 1986;14(12):1028-1031.
16. Bolder PM, Healy TE, Bolder AR, Beatty PC, Kay B. The extra work of breathing through adult endotracheal tubes. Anesth Analg 1986; 65(8):853-859.
17. Fiastro JF, Habib MP, Quan SF. Pressure support compensation for inspiratory work due to endotracheal tubes and demand continuous positive airway pressure. Chest 1988;93(3):499-505.
18. Weissman C. Flow-volume relationships during spontaneous breathing through endotracheal tubes. Crit Care Med 1992;20(5):615-620.
19. Pepe PE, Marini JJ. Occult positive end-expiratory pressure in mechanically ventilated patients with airflow obstruction, the auto-PEEP effect. Am Rev Respir Dis 1982;126(1):166-170.
20. Benson MS, Pierson DJ. Auto-PEEP during mechanical ventilation of adults. Respir Care 1988;33(7):557-568. *Corrections 33(9):785 and 33(11):1075.*
21. Stone DJ, Gal TJ. Airway management. In: Miller RD, ed. Anesthesia. 4th ed. Churchill-Livingstone: In press.
22. Sivarajan M, Fink BR. The position and state of the larynx during general anesthesia and muscle paralysis. Anesthesiology 1990;72 (3):439-442.
23. Teeple E, Bowe EA. Use of cold nasogastric tubes corrects problems due to pliability (letter). Anesthesiology 1981;55(4):477.
24. Coveler LA. More on management of the difficult airway (letter). Anesthesiology 1987;67(1):154.
25. Artru AA, Schultz AB, Bonneu JJ. Modification of an Eschmann Introducer to permit measurement of end-tidal carbon dioxide. Anesth Analg 1989;69(1):129-131.
26. deLima LG, Bishop MJ. Lung laceration after tracheal extubation over a plastic tube changer. Anesth Analg 1991;73(3):350-351.
27. Gaughan SD, Benumof JL, Ozaki GT. Quantification of the jet function of a jet stylet. Anesth Analg 1992;74(4):580-585.
28. Fernandez RO, McCarthy MF, Gold MI. Conversion of nasal to oral intubation. Anesthesiology 1978;49(3):221-223.
29. Hudes ET, Fisher JA, Guslitz B. Difficult endotracheal reintubations: a simple technique. Anesthesiology 1986;64(4):515-517.
30. Benumof JL. Additional safety measures when changing endotracheal tubes (letter). Anesthesiology 1991;75(5):921-922.
31. Weymuller EA Jr. Laryngeal injury from prolonged endotracheal intubation. Laryngoscope 1988;98(8, Part 2, Suppl 45):1-15.
32. Santos PM, Afrassiabi A, Weymuller EA Jr. Prospective studies evaluating the standard endotracheal tube and a prototype endotracheal tube. Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol 1989;98(12, Part 1):935-940.
33. Whited RE. A prospective study of laryngotracheal sequelae in long-term intubation. Laryngoscope 1984;94(3):367-377.
34. Bishop MJ, Weymuller EA Jr, Fink BR. Laryngeal effects of prolonged intubation. Anesth Analg 1984;63(3):335-342.
35. McCulloch TM, Bishop MJ. Complications of translaryngeal intubation. In: Heffner JE, editor. Clinics in Chest Medicine 1991;12: 507-521.
36. Donnelly WH. Histopathology of endotracheal intubation. An autopsy study of 99 cases. Arch Pathol 1969;88(5):511-520.
37. Bunegin L, Albin MS, Smith RB. Canine tracheal blood flow after endotracheal tube cuff inflation during normotension and hypotension. Anesth Analg 1993;76(5):1083-1090.
38. Miller DM. A pressure regulator for the cuff of a tracheal tube. Anaesthesia 1992;47(7):594-596.
39. Jaeger JM, Wells NC, Kirby RR, Blanch PB. Mechanical ventilation of a patient with decreased lung compliance and tracheal dilatation. J Clin Anesth 1992;4(2):147-152.
40. Powaser MM, Brown MMC, Chezem J, Woodburne CR, Rogenes P, Hanson B. The effectiveness of hourly cuff deflation in minimizing tracheal damage. Heart Lung 1976;5(5):734-741.
41. Bogetz MS, Tupper BJ, Vigil AC. Too much of a good thing: uvular trauma caused by overzealous suctioning. Anesth Analg 1991;72 (1):125-126. *Comment in 73(2):238.*
42. Paulissian R, Salem MR, Joseph NJ, Braverman B, Cohen HC, Crystal GJ, Heyman HJ. Hemodynamic responses to endotracheal extubation after coronary artery bypass grafting. Anesth Analg 1991; 73(1):10-15.
43. Garla PG, Skaredoff M. Tracheal extubation (letter, comment). Anesthesiology 1992;76(6):1058, 1060-1061.
44. Jones MW, Catling S, Evans E, Green DH, Green JR. Hoarseness after tracheal intubation. Anaesthesia 1992;47(3):213-216.
45. Westley CR, Cotton E, Brooks JG. Nebulized racemic epinephrine by IPPB for the treatment of croup. Am J Dis Child 1978;132(5): 484-487.
46. Couser RJ, Ferrara TB, Falde B, Johnson K, Schilling CG, Hoekstra RE. Effectiveness of dexamethasone in preventing extubation failure in preterm infants at increased risk for airway edema. J Pediatr 1992;121(4):591-596.
47. Fisher MM, Raper RF. The 'cuff-leak' test for extubation. Anaesthesia 1992;47(1):10-12.
48. Pennant JH, White PF. The laryngeal mask airway. Its uses in anesthesiology. Anesthesiology 1993;79:144-163. *Comment in 1994;80 (3):706-707.*

# Sleep Apnea: Is Your Patient at Risk?

## A special article from the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute*

by Members of the
National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute Working Group on Sleep Apnea:
Benjamin Chaska MD, Richard P Millman MD,
Barbara A Phillips MD MSPH, Kingman P Strohl MD, Patrick J Strollo MD,
Paul M Suratt MD, James K Walsh PhD, J Woodrow Weiss MD,
David White MD, and Bill Zepf MD

**Definition & Prevalence**
**Consequences & Comorbidity**
**Identification of Patients at Risk for Sleep Apnea**
**Diagnosis**
**Treatment Options**
- **Behavioral Approaches**
- **Nasal Continuous Positive Airway Pressure**
- **Oral/Dental Appliances**
- **Surgical Procedures**
- **Pharmacological Treatment**
- **Oxygen**

**Management Considerations**
**Where to Get More Information**
**References**

National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute Staff: James P Kiley PhD, Director, National Center on Sleep Disorders Research; Susan D Rogus RN MS, Coordinator, Sleep Education Activities, Office of Prevention, Education, and Control—Bethesda, Maryland. Susan T Shero RN MS, Support Staff, R.O.W. Sciences, Inc, Rockville, Maryland.

* Reprinted with permission.

# Sleep Apnea: Is Your Patient at Risk?

## Definition and Prevalence

Sleep apnea is a serious, potentially life-threatening condition. It is a breathing disorder characterized by repeated collapse of the upper airway during sleep, with consequent cessation of breathing. Virtually all sleep apnea patients have a history of loud snoring. They may also unknowingly experience frequent arousals during the night, resulting in chronic daytime sleepiness or fatigue.

There are two discrete types of sleep apnea: central and obstructive. Central sleep apnea, characterized by a lack of airflow in the absence of ventilatory effort, is rare. Obstructive sleep apnea is much more common and is referred to as sleep apnea hereafter. It is characterized by closure of the upper airway, resulting in the cessation of airflow despite persistent ventilatory effort. Apnea is defined as cessation of airflow for more than 10 seconds. A related event, hypopnea, is characterized by a reduction in airflow associated with a decrease in oxygen saturation. The average number of apnea-hypopnea events per hour of sleep is called the apnea-hypopnea index (AHI). Adults may experience up to five events per hour without symptoms. In general, as AHI increases, so does the severity of symptoms. An AHI of five or greater in combination with self-reported hypersomnolence is indicative of the sleep apnea syndrome.[1]

Sleep apnea appears to be as common as some better known diseases. It is estimated that 4 percent of middle-aged men and 2 percent of middle-aged women meet minimal criteria for sleep apnea syndrome.[1] This compares to a 4.5 percent prevalence of asthma in middle-aged adults.[2] Sleep apnea is more prevalent among the obese, in males, and in older individuals.[3] There also seems to be a higher prevalence of sleep apnea in the hypertensive population.

## Consequences and Comorbidity

From a behavioral standpoint, sleep apnea patients usually experience but may or may not report tiredness, fatigue, sleepiness, memory and judgment problems, irritability, difficulty concentrating, and personality changes.[4] Patients with sleep apnea are more likely to fall asleep at inappropriate times and have a higher rate of automobile crashes[5] and work-related accidents.[4]

The cardiovascular system is also adversely affected by sleep apnea. Systemic hypertension has been reported in up to 50 percent of patients with sleep apnea.[6] Mean morning blood pressure has been shown to increase almost linearly with increasing apneic activity in both obese and nonobese individuals.[7] Cardiac arrhythmias during sleep have also been associated with sleep apnea. Usually bradyarrythmias are observed,[8] although ventricular tachycardia is noted occasionally in cases of severe hypoxemia.[9] It is possible that sleep apnea contributes to myocar-

dial ischemia, and even myocardial infarction, in patients with coronary artery disease.[10]

A small subset of patients with severe sleep apnea could be characterized as having the Pickwickian Syndrome (also known as obesity-hypoventilation syndrome), which consists of daytime hypercapnia and hypoxemia, pulmonary hypertension, polycythemia, and cor pulmonale.[11]

## IDENTIFICATION OF PATIENTS AT RISK FOR SLEEP APNEA

Patients at high risk for sleep apnea are those who exhibit loud, chronic snoring. If it can be confirmed that the patient does not snore, sleep apnea is unlikely. On the other hand, patients who are observed to have apneic events characterized by choking or gasping during sleep are definite candidates for further evaluation. Bed partners or family members will likely need to be interviewed in order to obtain accurate information about snoring and apneic events.

Obesity, particularly upper body obesity, is a risk factor for sleep apnea and has been shown to have a significant effect on its severity.[12] Most sleep apnea patients are obese, when obesity is defined as greater than 120 percent of ideal body weight.[13] Large neck girth in both male and female snorers is highly predictive of sleep apnea.[14] In general, men with a neck circumference of 17 inches or greater and women with a neck circumference of 16 inches or greater are at a higher risk for sleep apnea.[15]

Other signs and symptoms that can help identify patients at risk for sleep apnea are hypertension, excessive daytime sleepiness (especially dozing off while driving), automobile or work-related accidents, and otherwise unexplained pulmonary hypertension or cor pulmonale. See table 1.

**Table 1**

### PATIENTS AT RISK FOR SLEEP APNEA

**Symptoms**

- Chronic, loud snoring
- Gasping or choking episodes during sleep
- Excessive daytime sleepiness (especially drowsy driving)
- Automobile or work-related accidents due to fatigue
- Personality changes or cognitive difficulties related to fatigue

**Signs**

- Obesity, especially nuchal obesity (neck size $\geq$17 inches in males, $\geq$16 inches in females)
- Systemic hypertension
- Nasopharyngeal narrowing
- Pulmonary hypertension (rarely)
- Cor pulmonale (rarely)

If a patient complains of sleepiness but does not have other signs and symptoms suggestive of sleep apnea, a review of sleep habits may be helpful (e.g., how many hours of sleep the patient averages per night, recent changes in schedule, recent lifestyle changes). The patient may simply need to consider ways in which to increase the daily amount of sleep. If the patient is getting sufficient sleep, then other conditions such as narcolepsy or depression should be considered.

Sleep apnea is also seen in children. Tonsillar hypertrophy is the most common cause. Children with sleep apnea may exhibit different signs and symptoms than adults. During sleep, children exhibit snoring and labored breathing. Features compatible with sleep apnea include weight loss or failure to gain weight, poor school performance, secondary enuresis, and behavioral problems.[16-18]

## Diagnosis

If there is a high suspicion of sleep apnea after evaluating a patient, a sleep study is indicated to establish a diagnosis. Currently, polysomnography, which requires an overnight stay in a sleep laboratory, is the optimum test for diagnosing sleep apnea. It includes evaluation of sleep staging, airflow and ventilatory effort, arterial oxygen saturation, electrocardiogram, body position, and periodic limb movements. Polysomnography, however, may not be readily available. Other options to consider are evaluation using pulse oximetry and portable (home) monitoring of cardiopulmonary channels. Although oximetry is currently being used to diagnose sleep apnea, its sensitivity and specificity are controversial.[19] A variety of home monitors are currently available or being developed that can record both cardiopulmonary parameters (for example, airflow, ventilatory effort, heart rate, and oxygen saturation) and sleep parameters and may be useful in diagnosing sleep apnea.

It is imperative that a sleep study be interpreted by someone with expertise in sleep disorders since an accurate diagnosis is crucial to avoid undertreatment or overtreatment of patients.

The severity of symptoms will determine how quickly a sleep study should be obtained and therapy initiated. Patients who report falling asleep while driving or those with heart failure or angina are *high priority* for a sleep study and rapid intervention. Symptom severity along with availability of resources will determine the type of study and referral options.

## Treatment Options

The goals of treatment for sleep apnea patients include both physiologic and symptomatic components. Physiologic goals of treatment include eliminating sleep fragmentation, apneas and hypopneas, and oxygen desaturation. Symptomatic goals include eliminating snoring and sleepiness, improving quality of life, and reducing or eliminating comorbidities. Symptomatic improvement, particularly decreased snoring, does not necessarily correlate with physiologic improvement or decreased morbidity.

Therapy decisions must be individualized and are often accomplished in consultation with sleep apnea specialists. See table 2.

### Behavioral Approaches

Behavioral measures may be the only treatment needed for patients with mild sleep apnea. Behavioral interventions include losing weight, eliminating evening alcohol and sedatives, and proper positioning (avoiding the supine position in bed). Although weight loss (accomplished through a comprehensive program or surgery) may be difficult to achieve, it can be very effective and, in some cases, even curative.[20,21]

Table 2

**TREATMENT OF SLEEP APNEA**

- Modification of behavioral factors
  - Weight loss (including exercise regime)
  - Avoidance of alcohol and sedatives before sleep
  - Avoidance of supine sleep position
- Nasal CPAP
  - Noninvasive
  - Very effective
  - Patient adherence variable
- Oral/dental devices
  - May be useful in mild-to-moderate cases
  - Not uniformly effective
- Surgical procedures (UPPP, nasal surgery, tonsillectomy, LAUP, maxillofacial surgery, tracheostomy)
  - Invasive
  - Not uniformly effective
  - May carry risk
  - Repeat sleep study is necessary after each procedure

Patients with mild symptoms may experience improvement using behavioral techniques alone. Appropriate behavioral treatment should be implemented for all patients, even those requiring additional interventions.

Patients treated with behavioral techniques should be reevaluated periodically after initiation of treatment. For patients who have improved, continued support and positive reinforcement can sustain their adherence and success. In those patients who continue to experience symptoms, other therapies are warranted.

#### Nasal Continuous Positive Airway Pressure

Continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) is the most effective noninvasive therapy for sleep apnea. To use CPAP, the patient must wear a sealed mask over the nose or, in some cases, over the nose and mouth during sleep.[22] The mask is connected to a blower forcing air through the nasal passages. CPAP acts as a pneumatic splint by increasing the pressure in the oropharyngeal airway, thereby maintaining airway patency throughout the ventilatory cycle.[23] This treatment is usually prescribed after polysomnography has first determined the therapeutic level of

CPAP pressure required to reduce or eliminate sleep apnea.[24] CPAP is effective in reversing daytime somnolence and eliminating cardiopulmonary sequelae.[25] CPAP, used properly, produces rhythmic breathing, resulting in the patient feeling dramatically better and being able to function more efficiently. Compared with no treatment or other treatment modalities, patients treated with CPAP have a lower mortality rate.[26]

Although very effective, CPAP may be difficult for some patients to use.[27] Adherence to CPAP treatment varies greatly but tends to be higher in patients with severe symptoms.[28] The most common reasons for discontinuing CPAP are intolerance of the mask, nasal-related complaints, and the inconvenience of being connected to a machine. Common side effects include nasal stuffiness, rhinitis, facial skin discomfort, and discomfort with the pressure. Humidifiers, nasal steroids or decongestants, intranasal anticholinergics, or different masks may relieve side effects. Variations in pressure application have been developed to offer patients options for improving comfort. Assisting patients to focus on symptom reversal and working with home care companies to ensure proper-fitting and effective equipment will enhance adherence.

Followup after the first month of CPAP treatment should include checking the status of equipment, assessing patient symptoms and adherence, and assessing the status of coexisting conditions such as hypertension. In patients who have achieved significant weight loss, the CPAP pressure may need to be adjusted. If the patient reports continued snoring, the pressure may need to be increased.

#### Oral/Dental Appliances

Oral or dental appliances may be an option for patients with mild-to-moderate sleep apnea. However, they are not effective in all patients. Appliances have also been used for patients who snore but do not have sleep apnea. There are various devices that displace the tongue forward or move the mandible to an anterior and forward position to improve patency of the airway.[29] Reported side effects of the devices include excessive salivation and temporomandibular joint discomfort. A dentist or orthodontist experienced in the use of these devices should fit the patient, and a sleep study should be done after the device is fitted to evaluate its effectiveness.

#### Surgical Procedures

Patients need to understand that no surgical procedure has universal success, and all are invasive and carry risk. Several procedures or a combination of procedures may need to be performed to help sleep apnea patients. It is important that sleep studies be repeated after each surgical procedure to confirm its effectiveness, once there is evidence of adequate healing. When weighing treatment options, it may be useful to let the patient know that CPAP is highly effective when used properly and is safe and reversible.[26,30]

***Uvulopalatopharyngoplasty (UPPP).*** During UPPP, an inpatient procedure, the uvula and portions of the soft palate are resected to widen the oropharyngeal airway. Although snoring is temporarily relieved in most cases, apnea may persist. The overall success rate of UPPP is reported to be about 40 percent (when success is defined as achieving an AHI of less than 20).[31] It is difficult to predict which patients will benefit from this procedure, and long-term side effects and benefits are unknown.

***Nasal Surgery.*** Nasal surgery may be used alone or in conjunction with other procedures. However, it is rarely curative alone.

*Tonsillectomy.* In children and adolescents adenotonsillectomy may be useful, even curative.[32] Tonsillectomy alone in adults is not usually helpful[33] but is often done in conjunction with UPPP.

*Laser-Assisted Uvulopalatoplasty (LAUP).* LAUP has received much attention recently as a treatment for snoring. However, its effectiveness in treating sleep apnea is unknown. LAUP differs from traditional UPPP in both surgical technique and setting (office-based). LAUP excises only part of the uvula and associated soft-palate tissues. The resultant shortening of the palate and reduction of the uvula may reduce, alter, or eliminate snoring. As with UPPP, relief of snoring may occur without improvement in apneic events. Therefore, patients who elect LAUP for snoring may risk delaying the diagnosis of sleep apnea because snoring, a primary symptom, is eliminated.[34]

*Maxillofacial Surgery (Genioglossal Advancement, Maxillary and Mandibular Advancement).* These are specialized procedures that are currently not widely available, although they appear to be effective in treating sleep apnea.[25] Genioglossal advancement enlarges the airway at the base of the tongue. This procedure may be combined with a UPPP. Maxillary and mandibular advancement enlarges the airway at the level of the soft palate as well as the tongue.

*Tracheostomy.* Tracheostomy is highly successful in eliminating sleep apnea but is very invasive, both physically and psychologically. This procedure is reserved for severe cases where other treatments have failed.

### Pharmacological Treatment

Currently, there are no safe and effective medications indicated in the routine treatment of sleep apnea.

### Oxygen

Administration of supplemental oxygen may improve nocturnal desaturation but is not a satisfactory treatment option by itself[35] because it does not reduce sleep disruption and subsequent daytime sleepiness.[36]

## Management Considerations

The efficacy of a chosen treatment modality should be periodically and objectively verified. Sleep apnea patients who undergo surgical interventions need to have sleep studies repeated postoperatively, after healing has occurred. Once effective treatment has been initiated, all patients should be periodically reevaluated for recurrence of symptoms such as snoring and excessive daytime sleepiness as well as cardiopulmonary complications. The primary care physician can play a key role in determining if patients are adhering to treatment and in monitoring comorbidities such as hypertension and coronary artery disease. For example, hypertension treatment may need to be adjusted once sleep apnea has improved. Patients who are adherent to treatment for sleep apnea need positive reinforcement, and those who are not adherent may require different treatment options. Patients who are on CPAP need to have their equipment evaluated periodically to ensure that the machine and mask are functioning properly.[23] If, however, symptoms of sleepiness persist despite apparently adequate treatment, the patient should be evaluated for other conditions.

## WHERE TO GET MORE INFORMATION

- **National Center on Sleep Disorders Research (NCSDR).** The NCSDR, located in the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute, supports research, scientist training, dissemination of health information, and other activities on sleep disorders and related concerns. The NCSDR also coordinates sleep research activities with other Federal agencies and with public and nonprofit organizations.

  National Center on Sleep Disorders Research
  Two Rockledge Centre
  Suite 7024
  6701 Rockledge Drive, MSC 7920
  Bethesda, MD 20892-7920
  (301) 435-0199
  (301) 480-3451 (fax)

- **National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute Information Center.** The Information Center acquires, analyzes, promotes, maintains, and disseminates programmatic and educational information related to sleep disorders and sleep-disordered breathing. Write for a list of available publications or to order additional copies of this brochure.

  NHLBI Information Center
  P.O. Box 30105
  Bethesda, MD 20824-0105
  (301) 251-1222
  (301) 251-1223 (fax)

## References


1. Young T, Palta M, Dempsey J, Skatrud J, Weber S, Badr S. The occurrence of sleep-disordered breathing among middle-aged adults. N Engl J Med 1993;328:1230-5.
2. National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute. Fact Book: Fiscal Year 1993. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, U.S. Public Health Service, National Institutes of Health, February 1994.
3. Fletcher EC, DeBehnke RD, Lovoi MS, Gorin AB. Undiagnosed sleep apnea in patients with essential hypertension. Ann Intern Med 1985;103:190-5.
4. Roth T, Roehrs TA, Conway WA. Behavioral morbidity of apnea. Sem Respir Med 1988;9:554-9.
5. Findley LJ, Unverzagt ME, Suratt PM. Automobile accidents involving patients with obstructive sleep apnea. Am Rev Respir Dis 1988;138:337-40.
6. Fletcher EC. The relationship between systemic hypertension and obstructive sleep apnea: facts and theory. Am J Med 1995;98:118-28.
7. Strohl KP, Novak RD, Singer W, et al. Insulin levels, blood pressure and sleep apnea. Sleep 1994;17:614-8.
8. Guilleminault C, Connolly SJ, Winkle RA. Cardiac arrhythmia and conduction disturbances during sleep in 400 patients with sleep apnea syndrome. Am J Cardiol 1983;52:490-4.
9. Shepard JW Jr., Garrison MW, Grither DA, Dolan GF. Relationship of ventricular ectopy to oxyhemoglobin desaturation in patients with obstructive sleep apnea. Chest 1985;88:335-40.
10. Hung J, Whitford EG, Parsons RW, Hillman DR. Association of sleep apnoea with myocardial infarction in men. Lancet 1990;336:261-4.
11. Rapoport DM, Garay SM, Epstein H, Goldring RM. Hypercapnia in the obstructive sleep apnea syndrome. A reevaluation of the "Pickwickian syndrome." Chest 1986;89:627-34.
12. Millman RP, Carlisle CC, McGarvey ST, Eveloff SE, Levinson PD. Body fat distribution and sleep apnea severity in women. Chest 1995;107:362-6.
13. Chua W, Chediak AD. Obstructive sleep apnea. Treatment improves quality of life—and may prevent death. Postgrad Med 1994;95:123-38.

14. Loube DI, Loube AA, Mitler MM. Weight loss for obstructive sleep apnea: the optimal therapy for obese patients. J Am Diet Assoc 1994;94:1291-5.

15. Davies RJO, Stradling JR. The relationship between neck circumference, radiographic pharyngeal anatomy, and the obstructive sleep apnoea syndrome. Eur Respir J 1990;3:509-14.

16. Brouillette RT, Fernbach SK, Hunt CE. Obstructive sleep apnea in infants and children. J Pediatr 1982;100:31-40.

17. Brouillette R, Hanson D, David R, et al. A diagnostic approach to suspected obstructive sleep apnea in children. J Pediatr 1984; 105:10-4.

18. Rosen CL, D'Andrea L, Haddad GG. Adult criteria for obstructive sleep apnea do not identify children with serious obstruction. Am Rev Respir Dis 1992;146:1231-4.

19. Gyulay S, Olson LG, Hensley MJ, King MT, Allen KM, Saunders NA. A comparison of clinical assessment and home oximetry in the diagnosis of obstructive sleep apnea. Am Rev Respir Dis 1993;147:50-3.

20. Smith PL, Gold AR, Meyers DA, Haponik EF, Bleecker ER. Weight loss in mildly to moderately obese patients with obstructive sleep apnea. Ann Intern Med 1985; 103:850-5.

21. Sugerman HJ, Fairman RP, Baron PL, Kwentus JA. Gastric surgery for respiratory insufficiency of obesity. Chest 1986;90:81-6.

22. Sanders MH, Kern NB, Stiller RA, Strollo PJ, Martin TJ, Atwood CW. CPAP therapy via oronasal mask for obstructive sleep apnea. Chest 1994;106:774-9.

23. American Thoracic Society. Indications and standards for use of nasal continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) in sleep apnea syndromes. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1994;150:1738-45.

24. Waldhorn RE, Wood K. Attended home titration of nasal continuous positive airway pressure therapy for obstructive sleep apnea. Chest 1993;104:1707-10.

25. Riley RW, Powell NB, Guilleminault C. Maxillofacial surgery and nasal CPAP. A comparison of treatment for obstructive sleep apnea syndrome. Chest 1990;98: 1421-5.

26. Keenan SP, Burt H, Ryan CF, Fleetham JA. Long-term survival of patients with obstructive sleep apnea treated by uvulopalatopharyngoplasty or nasal CPAP. Chest 1994;105:155-9.

27. Polo O, Berthon-Jones M, Douglas NJ, Sullivan CE. Management of obstructive sleep apnoea/hypopnoea syndrome. Lancet 1994;344:656-60.

28. Kribbs NB, Pack AI, Kline LR, et al. Effects of one night without nasal CPAP treatment on sleep and sleepiness in patients with obstructive sleep apnea. Am Rev Respir Dis 1993;147(5):1162-8.

29. Schmidt-Nowara W, Lowe A, Wiegand L, Cartwright R, Perez-Guerra F, Menn S. Oral appliances for the treatment of snoring and obstructive sleep apnea: a review. Sleep 1995;18(7):501-10.

30. Tousignant P, Cosio MG, Levy RD, Groome PA. Quality adjusted life years added by treatment of obstructive sleep apnea. Sleep 1994;17:52-60.

31. Sher AE, Schechtman KB, Piccirillo JF. The role of upper-airway operations in the treatment of obstructive sleep apnea in adults. Sleep, in press.

32. Stradling JR, Thomas G, Warley ARH, Williams P, Freeland A. Effect of adenotonsillectomy on nocturnal hypoxaemia, sleep disturbance, and symptoms in snoring children. Lancet 1990;335:249-53.

33. Aubert-Tulkens G, Hamoir M, Van Den Eeckhaut J, Rodenstein DO. Failure of tonsil and nose surgery in adults with long-standing severe sleep apnea syndrome. Arch Intern Med 1989;149:2118-21.

34. American Sleep Disorders Association. Practice parameters for the use of laser-assisted uvulopalatoplasty. Sleep 1994;17:744-8.

35. Fletcher EC, Munafo DA. Role of nocturnal oxygen therapy in obstructive sleep apnea. When should it be used? Chest 1990; 98:1497-504.

36. Phillips BA, Schmitt FA, Berry DTR, Lamb DG, Amin M, Cook YR. Treatment of obstructive sleep apnea: a preliminary report comparing nasal CPAP to nasal oxygen in patients with mild OSA. Chest 1990; 98:325-30.

# Members of the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute Working Group on Sleep Apnea

Benjamin Chaska, M.D.
Chair, Department of Family Practice
St. Luke's Hospital
Assistant Professor of Family Medicine
Mayo Medical School
Vice-Chairman, Department of Family Medicine
Mayo Clinic, Jacksonville
Jacksonville, Florida

Richard P. Millman, M.D.
Associate Professor of Medicine
Brown University
Director, Sleep Disorders Center
Rhode Island Hospital
Providence, Rhode Island

Barbara A. Phillips, M.D., M.S.P.H.
Associate Professor of Medicine
Division of Pulmonary and Critical Care
University of Kentucky
Lexington, Kentucky

Kingman P. Strohl, M.D.
Professor of Medicine
Veterans Administration Medical Center
Cleveland, Ohio

Patrick J. Strollo, M.D.
Associate Director, Sleep Laboratory
Assistant Professor of Medicine
University of Pittsburgh
Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania

Paul M. Suratt, M.D.
Professor of Medicine
Division of Pulmonary and Critical Care Medicine
University of Virginia
Charlottesville, Virginia

James K. Walsh, Ph.D.
Adjunct Professor of Psychology
St. Louis University
Director, Sleep Medicine and Research Center
St. Luke's Hospital
Chesterfield, Missouri

J. Woodrow Weiss, M.D.
Associate Professor of Medicine
Harvard Medical School
Codirector, Sleep Disorders Center
Beth Israel Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts

David White, M.D.
Professor of Medicine
Respiratory Care Section
Denver VA Medical Center
Denver, Colorado

Bill Zepf, M.D.
Medical Editing Fellow
*American Family Physician*
Family Practice Residency Program
Ft. Lincoln Family Medicine Center
Georgetown University/Providence Hospital
Colmar Manor, Maryland

# The American Association for Respiratory Care Clinical Practice Guidelines

- **Assessing Response to Bronchodilator Therapy at Point of Care**
- **Discharge Planning for the Respiratory Care Patient**
- **Long-Term Invasive Mechanical Ventilation in the Home**
- **Capnography/Capnometry during Mechanical Ventilation**
- **Selection of an Aerosol Delivery Device for Neonatal and Pediatric Patients**
- **Polysomnography**

*Respir Care 1995;40(12):1300-1343*

***Previously Published Guidelines:***

- Defibrillation during Resuscitation
- Management of Airway Emergencies
- Infant/Toddler Pulmonary Function Tests

*Respir Care 1995;40(7):744-768*

- Metabolic Measurement Using Indirect Calorimetry during Mechanical Ventilation
- Transcutaneous Blood Gas Monitoring for Neonatal and Pediatric Patients
- Capillary Blood Gas Sampling for Neonatal and Pediatric Patients
- Body Plethysmography

*Respir Care 1994;39(12):1170-1190*

- Ventilator Circuit Changes
- Delivery of Aerosols to the Upper Airway
- Neonatal Time-Triggered, Pressure-Limited, Time Cycled Mechanical Ventilation
- Application of Continuous Positive Airway Pressure to Neonates via Nasal Prongs or Nasopharyngeal Tube
- Surfactant Replacement Therapy
- Static Lung Volumes

*Respir Care 1994;39(8):797-836*

- Transport of the Mechanically Ventilated Patient
- Fiberoptic Bronchoscopy Assisting
- Resuscitation in Acute Care Hospitals
- Intermittent Positive Pressure Breathing
- Bland Aerosol Administration

*Respir Care 1993;38(11):1169-1200*

- Directed Cough
- Endotracheal Suctioning of Mechanically Ventilated Adults and Children with Artificial Airways
- In-Vitro pH and Blood Gas Analysis and Hemoximetry
- Single-Breath Carbon Monoxide Diffusing Capacity
- Use of Positive Airway Pressure Adjuncts to Bronchial Hygiene Therapy

*Respir Care 1993;38(5):495-521*

- Patient-Ventilator System Checks
- Humidification during Mechanical Ventilation
- Selection of Aerosol Delivery Device
- Nasotracheal Suctioning
- Bronchial Provocation
- Exercise Testing for Evaluation of Hypoxemia and/or Desaturation
- Arterial Blood Gas Sampling
- Oxygen Therapy in the Home or Extended Care Facility

*Respir Care 1992;37(8):855,856,882-922*

- Incentive Spirometry
- Pulse Oximetry
- Oxygen Therapy in the Acute Care Hospital
- Spirometry
- Postural Drainage Therapy

*Respir Care 1991;36(12):1398-1426*

# AARC Clinical Practice Guideline

## Assessing Response to Bronchodilator Therapy at Point of Care

**ARBD 1.0 PROCEDURE:**

Assessing response in adults and older children* to aerosolized bronchodilator therapy at the point of care. Although subjective responses and changes in mucociliary activity are important bronchodilator therapy effects, this guideline emphasizes the airway smooth muscle response that is primarily quantified through measurement of pulmonary function. It does not address initial diagnostic or ongoing (longitudinal) laboratory evaluation. A future Guideline will address assessment during mechanical ventilation.

**ARBD 2.0 DESCRIPTION:**

**2.1** Assessment of airflow (ie, forced expiratory maneuvers and other clinical indicators) is important to determine the presence or absence of an immediate response (ie, at time of expected onset of effect), proper dose, frequency of administration, and overall response to long-term therapy). It is essential that the clinician have complete knowledge of the main effects, mode of action, time course, side effects, and dosage constraints of any medications administered.

**2.2** This guideline addresses

- **2.2.1** subjective and objective measures of response;
- **2.2.2** frequency of monitoring;
- **2.2.3** expected or desirable outcomes.

**ARBD 3.0 SETTINGS:**

**3.1** Critical care
**3.2** Acute care
**3.3** Extended care or skilled care facility
**3.4** Outpatient clinic
**3.5** Home
**3.6** Pulmonary rehabilitation program

**ARBD 4.0 INDICATIONS:**

Assessment of airflow and other clinical indicators are indicated when the need exists

**4.1** to confirm the appropriateness of therapy;[2-4]
**4.2** to individualize the patient's medication dose per treatment and/or frequency of administration;[2-7]
**4.3** to help determine patient status during acute and long-term pharmacologic therapy;[2,8-10]
**4.4** to determine a need for change in therapy (dose, frequency, or type of medication).[2,11]

**ARBD 5.0 CONTRAINDICATIONS:**

When patients present in acute, severe distress, some assessment maneuvers may be contraindicated or should be postponed until therapy (eg, bronchodilator treatment) and supportive measures (eg, oxygen therapy) have been instituted.

**ARBD 6.0 HAZARDS/COMPLICATIONS:**

Hazards and complications include

**6.1** those associated with deep inhalation and forced exhalation

- **6.1.1** bronchoconstriction[12,13]
- **6.1.2** airway collapse[14]
- **6.1.3** paroxysmal coughing with or without syncope;[15,16]

**6.2** inherent hazards or complications of specific assessment procedures (ie, arterial puncture, esophageal balloons, forced exhalations).[16,17]

**ARBD 7.0 LIMITATIONS OF PROCEDURE OR DEVICE:**

**7.1** Conventional spirometry:

*For assessing responses in infants and toddlers, see AARC CPG Infant/Toddler PFT.[1]

**7.1.1** cost and accessibility

**7.1.2** the patient's inability to perform forced vital capacity.

**7.2** Peak-flow measurement

**7.2.1** Patient's inability to perform peak-flow maneuver or forced expiration.

**7.2.2** The accuracy and reproducibility of peak-flow meters may vary among models and among units of the same model.[2,18-22]

**7.2.2.1** For consistency and reproducibility of results the same device (unit) should be used for a given patient.[2,21]

**7.2.2.2** If peak-flow meter is changed, the patient's range should be re-established because of variability among units and models.

**7.2.2.3** Peak flow measurement primarily reflects changes in upper airway conductance and may be of limited use in evaluation of changes in peripheral airway conductance.[23,24]

**7.2.2.4** Evaluation of peak flow performance is subjective,[25] and, therefore, acceptability criteria are lacking. Because the maneuver is effort and volume dependent, the patient must be encouraged to perform as vigorously as clinically feasible (Three trials are desirable, with the best reported). Nose clips are not necessary, and the standing position is preferred.

**7.3** The results of subjective evaluation may be difficult to interpret consistently. A validated dyspnea rating scale may be useful.[26-30]

**7.3.1** Breath sound interpretation[31-34]

**7.3.2** Symptoms (eg, dyspnea)[27-29]

**7.4** The presence of an artificial airway increases resistance and, thus, increases work of breathing in the spontaneously breathing patient and may limit inspiratory and expiratory flows.[35,36]

**7.5** Techniques for monitoring response to bronchodilator in intubated, mechanically ventilated patients are different (eg, the flow-volume curve generated through an intubated airway may be difficult to interpret).[37-40] Accuracy and reproducibility of results may be affected by the mental and physical condition of the patient.[41] The measurement technology and, therefore, the results may vary from ventilator to ventilator.[40] Bronchodilator administration and assessment of response in the MV patient will be further addressed in a separate guideline.

## ARBD 8.0 ASSESSMENT OF NEED

**8.1** Response to therapy should be evaluated in all patients receiving bronchodilator therapy. (However, patient's in severe distress may need immediate treatment that precludes establishing a quantitative baseline).

**8.2** Assessment of response must be made with due regard for the patient's history, clinical presentation, and results of physical exam.

## ARBD 9.0 ASSESSMENT OF OUTCOME:

Assessment of outcome answers the question How did assessment of the effect of bronchodilator therapy impact on patient management?

**9.1** Action based on results of assessment

**9.1.1** Increase or decrease in dose and/or frequency

**9.1.2** Change medications

**9.1.3** Add medications

**9.1.4** Continue regimen

**9.1.5** Discontinue therapy

**9.2** To guide patient management, baseline condition and changes from baseline must be determined

**9.2.1** Prior to therapy:

**9.2.1.1** establish respiratory and cardiovascular baseline values;

**9.2.1.2** establish presence of clinical indicators and need for therapy;

**9.2.1.3** identify presence of contraindications.

**9.2.2** During therapy, identify:

**9.2.2.1** adverse responses to medication;

**9.2.2.2** any clinical change from baseline.

**9.2.3** Following therapy, identify:

**9.2.3.1** adverse responses;

**9.2.3.2** therapeutic responses (time course for peak varies with different medications);

**9.2.3.3** lack of therapeutic response.

**9.2.4** For trend analysis, identify:

**9.2.4.1** change in patient baseline;

**9.2.4.2** need to modify dose;

**9.2.4.3** need to change therapy;

**9.2.4.4** need to discontinue therapy;

**9.2.4.5** direction of change in bronchial responsiveness.

**9.3** Documentation:

**9.3.1** Patient response to medication

**9.3.1.1** Medication type, dose, and time received

**9.3.1.2** Responses measured: vital signs, breath sounds, lung function (eg, PEFR, $FEV_1$, $FEV_1$/.FVC), dyspnea score[26-29]

**9.3.1.3** Relate observations to time of medication administration and expected time of onset and peak response.

**9.3.2** Patient's progress

**9.3.3** Ability to self-assess and to recognize the need for more aggressive therapy and when and how to communicate with health professional.

**9.3.4** Record of symptoms and concurrent PEFR measurements should be kept for or by the patient at home.[2,42,43]

**ARBD 10.0 RESOURCES:**

**10.1** Equipment and other aids

**10.1.1** Instruments to measure expiratory flows: the choice of devices is based on cost, availability, and portability. When a portable laboratory spirometer that meets ATS standards[16,44] is available it should be used because results yield more information than is available from peak-flow measurement alone.

**10.1.1.1** Conventional spirometry with forced expiratory maneuvers is the standard for ***diagnostic*** measurement of bronchodilator response.[2,16,44]

**10.1.1.2** Peak flow measurement can be used for pre- and post-treatment measurement and for daily and trend monitoring.[2,8,45,46]

**10.1.2** Stethoscope

**10.1.3** Pulse oximeter

**10.1.4** Structured interview form for complete history; validated dyspnea indices.[2]

**10.1.5** Materials for patient and family education and diary[2,42,43]

**10.2** Resources—Personnel:

**10.2.1** Level II personnel—licensed or credentialed respiratory care practitioners (eg, RRT,[47] RPFT,[48] CPFT,[49] CRTT[50]) or persons with equivalent knowledge, training, and ability, who have documented that knowledge and demonstrated the necessary skills:

**10.2.1.1** to perform initial assessments and care for the unstable patient;

**10.2.1.2** to assess patient condition and response to therapy;

**10.2.1.3** to identify the indications for and effects of specific medication and equipment;

**10.2.1.4** to instruct patients in proper breathing patterns and coughing techniques;

**10.2.1.5** to modify therapy and appropriately care for the patient in response to adverse reactions;

**10.2.1.6** to modify dose, frequency, or delivery method or to change medication according to the patient's response, within the constraints of the protocol or the physician's direction;

**10.2.1.7** to use proper technique for administration of aerosols;

**10.2.1.8** to perform, interpret, and document conventional spirometry, peak expiratory flowrate, and ventilatory mechanics and to perform and document auscultation, inspection and assessment of vital signs, and

**10.2.1.9** to teach proper use of symptom diary and peak-flow meter;

**10.2.1.10** to develop, teach, and assess self-care plan for patient and family care giver;

**10.2.1.11** to properly use equipment, administer treatment, and make assessment in compliance with Universal Precautions and other infection-control procedures.[51,52]

**10.2.2** Level I personnel—licensed or credentialed respiratory care practitioners (eg, RRT,[47] RPFT,[48] CPFT,[49] CRTT[50]) or persons with equivalent knowledge, training, and ability, who have documented that knowledge and demonstrated the necessary skills:

**10.2.2.1** to observe, measure, monitor, and document response variables established with the patient's care plan (eg, use of diary and peak flow meter);

**10.2.2.2** to use proper technique for administration of medication;

**10.2.2.3** to properly use and clean equipment;

**10.2.2.4** to instruct patients in proper breathing patterns and coughing techniques;

**10.2.2.5** to modify therapy and patient care (within the constraints of the protocol or physician's directions) in response to changes in monitored variables, severity of symptoms, or adverse reactions and to communicate any modifications to Level-II provider or physician;

**10.2.2.6** to properly use equipment, administer treatment, and make assessment in compliance with Universal Precautions and other infection-control procedures.[51,52]

**10.2.3** Patient or family/caregiver providing maintenance therapy must know and demonstrate ability:

**10.2.3.1** to monitor or measure response to bronchodilator in accordance with the patient's care plan (use of symptom diary and peak-flow meter);[2,42,43]

**10.2.3.2** to use proper technique for administration of medication and correct use of devices (eg, MDI, spacer, peak-flow meter, small volume nebulizer);[2,7,43]

**10.2.3.3** to properly use and clean equipment;

**10.2.3.4** to modify doses and frequency as prescribed and instructed in response to adverse reactions or increase in severity of symptoms and to appropriately communicate with physician regarding severity of symptoms.

**ARBD 11.0 MONITORING:**

Monitoring seeks to establish baseline function and reveal the presence or absence of a desirable response to bronchodilator or other airway medication and to identify changes in airway reactivity in response to allergens, exercise, infection, or other causes. Desirable responses are:

**11.1** From observation of the patient

**11.1.1** General appearance is improved.

**11.1.2** Use of accessory muscles is decreased.

**11.1.3** Sputum expectoration is increased.

**11.2** From auscultation

Breath sounds may be improved, with a decrease in wheezing[2-5] or adventitious breath sounds ***and*** the volume of air moved ***is*** increased. (Decreased wheezing, eg, the 'silent' chest coupled with decreased volume of air moved can be an indication of a worsening condition rather than improvement.)

**11.3** Vital signs are more nearly normal.[53-55]

**11.4** Patient reports improvement[18,29,30] (eg, less dyspneic[56,57])

**11.5** From pulmonary function measurement: It is important to note that although correlation is generally high between values obtained by conventional spirometry and measurement of PEF, agreement may be poor for individual patients.[24,34,58]

**11.5.1** $FEV_1$, FVC,[27,58-61] and/or $FEF_{25-75\%}$[27,58,60] are improved.

**Note:** The ATS standards for a positive bronchodilator response in adults is "12% increase, calculated from the prebronchodilator response values, ***and*** a 200-mL increase in either FVC or $FEV_1$."[62] Dynamic compression of the airways during forced maneuvers may mask bronchodilator response in some patients, and for these patients the additional measurement of airway resistance and calculation of specific conductance may provide more diagnostic evidence.

**11.5.2** PEF[2,7,58,60,63] is increased.

**Note:** National Asthma Education and Prevention (NAEPP) Guidelines[2] provide detailed directions for use of the PEF in the asthmatic population.

**11.6** $S_{aO_2}$ (or $S_{pO_2}$),[2] and/or arterial blood gas values are improved (Effects of underlying chronic respiratory, metabolic, or other condition should be considered.)

**11.7** Exercise performance is improved as reflected by a more normal PEF during exercise or immediately following[63] or an increase in distance achieved during the 6-minute walking test[59]

**11.8** Ventilator variables are improved.[38-40,64]

**11.8.1** Lower PIP (during volume ventilation)

**11.8.2** Lower plateau pressure, increased static lung compliance.

**11.8.3** Decreased inspiratory and expiratory resistance

**11.8.4** Increased expiratory flow, improved flow-volume loop
**11.8.5** Decreased auto-PEEP

## ARBD 12.0 FREQUENCY

**12.1** Acute unstable patient:
**12.1.1** Whenever possible, perform a full assessment and obtain a pretreatment baseline.
**12.1.2** Perform arterial blood gas analysis on admission if patient is in severe distress.[2]
**12.1.3** Assess and document all appropriate variables before and after each treatment, (breath sounds, vital signs, side effects during therapy, PEF or $FEV_1$.[2]
**12.1.4** The frequency with which physical exam, PEF, and/or $FEV_1$ are repeated should be based on the acuteness and severity of the patient's condition.
**12.1.5** $S_{pO_2}$ should be monitored continuously, if possible.[2]
**12.1.6** Assessment should continue at each level of medication dose to optimal response for patient[5] (eg, asthmatic patient achieves 70-90% of predicted or "personal best" or is symptom free[2])
**12.2** Stable patient:[43,65]
**12.2.1** In the hospital setting, the PEF should be measured initially before and after each bronchodilator administration—to establish baseline function and to determine relative changes in function. Thereafter, twice daily determinations may be adequate.
**12.2.2** In the home, use the PEF 3-4 times a day (on rising, noon, 4-7 PM, and at bedtime)[2,66] to establish baseline function and to determine relative changes in function.
**12.2.2.1** For the stable COPD patient at home, twice a day measurements may be adequate.
**12.2.2.2** Asthmatic patients in the home will need to adjust the frequency of peak flow measurement according to their level of severity, with the development of symptoms, or with any deviation from baseline. Twice daily measurements (about 7 AM and 7 PM) are recommended for routine monitoring—(variability between these two measurements is a measure of severity.[2])
**12.2.3** The pre- and postbronchodilator PEFRs, medication dosage, date and time, and the dyspnea score should be documented.
**12.2.4** The patient should be periodically re-evaluated for response to therapy.

## ARBD 13.0 INFECTION CONTROL:

**13.1** Universal Precautions[47] and precautions related to the spread of tuberculosis as published by the Centers for Disease Control[48] should be followed.
**13.2** All equipment and supplies should be appropriately disposed of or subjected to high-level disinfection between patients.[67]

### *Aerosol Therapy Focus Group*

*Jon O Nilsestuen PhD RRT,* Chairman, Galveston TX
*James Fink MS RRT,* Hines IL
*Theodore Witek Jr DrPH RPFT RRT,* Ridgefield CT
*James Volpe III RRT MEd,* San Diego CA

### REFERENCES


1. American Association for Respiratory Care. AARC Guideline: infant/toddler pulmonary function tests. Respir Care 1995;40(7):761-768.
2. National asthma education program—expert panel report. Guidelines for the diagnosis and management of asthma. NIH publication 91-3042A, June 1991.
3. McNamara RM, Cionni DJ. Utility of the peak expiratory flow rate in the differentiation of acute dyspnea: cardiac vs pulmonary origin. Chest 1992;101(1):129-132.
4. Charan NB, Carvalho P. Cardinal symptoms in respiratory disease. In: Pierson DJ, Kacmarek RM, eds. Foundations of respiratory care. New York: Churchill Livingstone, 1992:199-201.
5. Tashkin DP. Dosing strategies for bronchodilator aerosol delivery. Respir Care 1991;36(9):977-988.
6. Schuh S, Parkin P, Rajan A, Canny G, Healy R, Rieder M, et al. High- versus low-dose, frequently administered, nebulized albuterol in children with severe, acute asthma. Pediatrics 1989;83(4):513-518.
7. American Association for Respiratory Care. Aerosol Consensus Statement—1991. Respir Care 1991;36(9): 916-921.
8. Bellia V, Visconti A, Insalaco G, Cuttitta G, Ferrara G,

Bonsignore G. Validation of morning dip of peak expiratory flow as an indicator of the severity of nocturnal asthma. Chest 1988;94(1):108-110.
9. Mitchell DM, Gildeh P, Dimond AH, Collins JV. Value of serial peak expiratory flow measurements in assessing treatment response in chronic airflow limitation. Thorax 1986;41(8):606-610.
10. Shim CS, Williams MH Jr. Evaluation of the severity of asthma: patients versus physicians. Am J Med 1980; 68(1)11-13.
11. Shim CS, Williams MH Jr. Relationship of wheezing to the severity of obstruction in asthma. Arch Intern Med 1983;132(5):890-892.
12. Lim TK, Ang SM, Rossing TH, Ingenito EP, Ingram RH. The effects of deep inhalation on maximal expiratory flow during intensive treatment of spontaneous asthmatic episodes. Am Rev Respir Dis 1989; 140:340-343.
13. Lemarchand P, Labrune S, Herer B, Huchon GJ. Cardiorespiratory arrest following peak expiratory flow measurement during attack of asthma. Chest 1991;100(4):168-169.
14. Stanescu DC, Teculescu DB. Exercise- and cough-induced asthma. Respiration 1970;27(4):377-383.
15. Stern RC, Horwitz SJ, Doershuk CF. Neurologic symptoms during coughing paroxysms in cystic fibrosis. J Pediatr 1988;112(6):9099-912.
16. American Association for Respiratory Care. AARC Guideline: Spirometry. Respir Care 1991;36:1414-1417.
17. American Association for Respiratory Care. AARC Guideline: Sampling for arterial blood gas analysis. Respir Care 1992;37(8):913-917.
18. Lebowitz MD. The use of peak expiratory flow rate measurements in respiratory disease. Pediatr Pulmonol 1991;11:166-174.
19. van Schayck CP, Dompeling E, van Weel C, Folgering H, van den Hoogen HJ. Accuracy and reproducibility of the Assess peak flow meter. Eur Respir J 1990;3(3):338-341.
20. Jones KP, Mullee MA. Measuring peak expiratory flow in general practice: comparison of mini Wright peak flow meter and turbine spirometer. BMJ 1990;300 (6740):1629-1631.
21. Simmons M, Wynegar T, Hess D. Evaluation of the agreement between portable peak flow meters and a calibrated pneumotachometer. Respir Care 1993;38 (8):916-922.
22. Pedersen OF, Miller MR, Sigsgaard T, Tidley M, Harding RM. Portable peak flow meters: physical characteristics, influence of temperature, altitude, and humidity. Eur Respir J 1994;7(5):991-997.
23. Johns DP, Abramson M, Bowes G. Evaluation of a new ambulatory spirometer for measuring forced expiratory volume in one second and peak expiratory flow rate. Am Rev Respir Dis 1992;147:1245-1250.
24. Bérubé D, Cartier A, L'Archevêque J, Ghezzo H, Malo J-L. Comparison of peak expiratory flow rate and $FEV_1$ in assessing bronchomotor tone after challenges with occupational sensitizers. Chest 1991;99(4):831-836.
25. American Thoracic Society, Committee on Proficiency Standards for Clinical Pulmonary Function Laboratories. Crapo RO, chairman. Standardization of spirometry—1994 update. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1995; 152;1107-1136.
26. Mahler DA, Weinberg DH, Wells CK, Feinstein AR. The measurement of dyspnea: contents, interobserver agreement, and physiologic correlates of two new clinical indexes. Chest 1984;85(6):751-758.
27. Stoller JK, Ferranti R, Feinstein AR. Further specification and evaluation of a new clinical index for dyspnea. Am Rev Respir Dis 1986;134:1129-1134.
28. Mahler DA, Harver A. A factor analysis of dyspnea ratings, respiratory muscle strength, and lung function in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Am Rev Respir Dis 1992;145:467-470.
29. Turner TR, Corkery KJ, Ecleman D, Gelb AM, Lipavsky A, Sheppard D. Equivalence of continuous flow nebulizer and metered-dose inhaler with reservoir bag for treatment of acute airflow obstruction. Chest 1988;93(3):476-481.
30. Berry RB, Shinto RA, Wong FH, Despers JA, Light RW. Nebulizer vs spacer for bronchodilator delivery in patients hospitalized for acute exacerbation of COPD. Chest 1989;96(6):1241-1246.
31. Wilkins RL, Dexter JR, Smith JR. Survey of adventitious lung sound terminology in case reports. Chest 1984;85(4):523-525.
32. Burki NK, Mitchell K, Chaudhary BA, Zechman FW. The ability of asthmatics to detect added resistive loads. Am Rev Respir Dis 1978;117:71-75.
33. Sly PD, Landau LI, Weymouth R. Home recording of peak expiratory flow rates and perception of asthma. Am J Dis Child 1985;139(5):479-482.
34. Burdon JGW, Juniper EF, Killian KJ, Hargreave FE, EJM Campbell. The perception of breathlessness in asthma. Am Rev Respir Dis 1982;126:825-828.
35. Habib MP. Physiologic implications of artificial airways. Chest 1989;96(1):180-184.
36. Sharar SR. The effects of artificial airways on airflow and ventilatory mechanics: basic concepts and clinical relevance. Respir Care 1995;40(3):257-262.
37. Gottfried SB, Rossi A, Higgs BD, Calverley PMA, Zocchi L, Bozic C, Milic-Emili J. Noninvasive determination of respiratory system mechanics during mechanical ventilation for acute respiratory failure. Am Rev Respir Dis 1985;131(3):414-420.
38. Gay PC, Rodarte JR, Tayyab M, Hubmayr RD. Evaluation of bronchodilator responsiveness in mechanically ventilated patients. Am Rev Respir Dis 1987;136(4):880-885.
39. Hess D. The delivery of aerosolized bronchodilator to mechanically ventilated intubated adult patients (editorial) Respir Care 1990;35(5): 399-404.
40. Kacmarek RM, Hess D. The interface between patient and aerosol generator. Respir Care 1991;36(9):952-976.
41. Criner GJ, Isaac L. Psychological issues in the ventilator-dependent patient. Respir Care 1995;40(8):855-865.
42. Hetzel MR, Williams IP, Shakespeare RM. Can patients keep their own peak-flow records reliably? Lancet 1979; 1(8116):597-599.
43. Ignacio-Garcia JM, Gonzalez-Santos P. Asthma self-

management education program by home monitoring of peak expiratory flow. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1995; 151:353-359.
44. American Thoracic Society. Standardization of spirometry—1987 update. Am Rev Respir Dis 1987;136:1285-1298. Printed concurrently in Respir Care 1987;32: 1039-1060.
45. Enright PL, Sherrill DL, Lebowitz MD. Ambulatory monitoring of peak expiratory flow: Reproducibility and quality control. Chest 1995;107:657-661.
46. Quakenboss JJ, Lebowitz MD, Krzyzanowski M. The normal range of diurnal changes in peak expiratory flow rates: relationship to symptoms and respiratory disease. Am Rev Respir Dis 1991;143:323-330.
47. National Board for Respiratory Care. NBRC 1994 Study Guide—RRT examination. Shawnee Mission KS: National Board for Respiratory Care, 1994.
48. National Board for Respiratory Care. NBRC 1994 Study Guide—RPFT examination. Shawnee Mission KS: National Board for Respiratory Care, 1994.
49. National Board for Respiratory Care. NBRC 1994 Study Guide—CPFT examination. Shawnee Mission KS: National Board for Respiratory Care, 1994.
50. National Board for Respiratory Care. NBRC 1994 Study Guide—CRTT examination. Shawnee Mission KS: National Board for Respiratory Care, 1994.
51. Centers for Disease Control. Update: Universal Precautions for prevention of transmission of human immunodeficiency virus, hepatitis B virus, and other bloodborne pathogens in health-care settings. MMWR 1988;37:377-382,387-388.
52. Centers for Disease Control. Guidelines for preventing the transmission of tuberculosis in health-care settings, with special focus on HIV-related tissues. MMWR 1990;39(RR-17):1-29.
53. Gravelyn TR, Weg JG. Respiratory rate as an indicator of acute respiratory dysfunction. JAMA 1980;244 (10):1123-1125.
54. McFadden JP, Price RC, Eastwood HD, Briggs RS. Raised respiratory rate in elderly patients: a valuable physical sign. BMJ 1982;284(6316):626-627.
55. Browning IB, D'Alonzo GE, Tobin MJ. Importance of respiratory rate as an indicator of respiratory dysfunction in patients with cystic fibrosis. Chest 1990;97 (6):1317-1321.
56. Newhouse MT, Dolovich MB. Aerosol therapy of reversible airflow obstruction—concepts and clinical applications. Chest 1987;91(5,suppl)58-64.
57. Toogood JH. Helping your patients make better use of MDIs and spacers. J Respir Dis 1994 15:2:151-164.
58. Meltzer AA, Smolensky MH, D'Alonzo GE, Harris RB, Scott PH. An assessment of peak expiratory flow as a surrogate measurement of $FEV_1$ in stable asthmatic children. Chest 1989;96(2):329-333.
59. Mestitz H, Copland JM, McDonald CF. Comparison of outpatient nebulized vs metered dose inhaler terbutaline in chronic air flow obstruction. Chest 1989;96(6): 1237-1240.
60. Cissik JH, Bode FR, Smith JA. Double-blind crossover study of five bronchodilator medications and two delivery methods in stable asthma: is there a best combination for use in the pulmonary laboratory? Chest 1986;90:(4):489-493.
61. Shim CS, Williams MH Jr. Effect of bronchodilator therapy administered by canister versus jet nebulizer. J Allerg Clin Immunol 1984;73(3):387-390.
62. American Thoracic Society. Lung function testing: selection of reference values and interpretive strategies. Am Rev Respir Dis 1991;144(5):1202-1218.
63. Jenkins SC, Heaton RW, Fulton TJ, Moxham J. Comparison of domiciliary nebulized salbutamol and salbutamol from a metered-dose inhaler in stable chronic airflow limitation. Chest 1987;91(6):804-807.
64. Fernandez A, Lazaro A, Garcia A, Aeagon C, Cerda E. Bronchodilators in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease on mechanical ventilation: utilization of metered-dose inhalers. Am Rev Respir Dis 1990;141: 164-168.
65. Reddel HK, Salome CM, Peat JK, Woolcock AJ. Which index of peak expiratory flow is most useful in the management of stable asthma? Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1995;151:1320-1325.
66. Harm DL, Kotses H, Creer TL. Improving the ability of peak expiratory flow rates to predict asthma. J Allergy Clin Immunol 1985;76(5):688-694.
67. Ahmed J, Brutus A, D'Amato RF, Glatt AE. *Acinetobacter calcoaceticus anitratus* outbreak in the intensive care unit traced to a peakflow meter. Am J Infect Control 1994;22(5):319-321.

## ADDITIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Adelroth E, Hargreave FE, Ramsdale EH. Do physicians need objective measurements to diagnose asthma? Am Rev Respir Dis 1986;134(4):704-707.

Anderson SD, Silverman M, Konig P, Godfrey S. Exercise-induced asthma. Br J Dis Chest 1975;69(1):1-39.

Bolder PM, Healy TE, Bolder AR, Beatty PC, Kay B. The extra work of breathing through adult endotracheal tubes. Anesth Analg 1986;65(8):853-859.

Ba M, Spier S, Lapierre G, Lamarre A. Wet nebulizer versus spacer and metered dose inhaler via tidal breathing. J Asthma 1989;26(6):355-358.

Bersten AD, Rutten AJ, Vedig AE, Skrowronski GA. Additional work of breathing imposed by endotracheal tubes, breathing circuits, and intensive care ventilators. Crit Care Med 1989;17(7):671-677.

Clark NM, Evans, Melllins RB. Patient use of peak flow monitoring. Am Rev Respir Dis 1992;145:722-725.

Comstock GW, Tockman MS, Hesing KJ, Hennesy KM. Standardized respiratory questionnaires: comparison of the old with the new. Am Rev Respir Dis 1979; 119(1)45-53.

Cook NR, Evans DA, Scherr PA, Speizer FE, Vedal S, Branch LG, et al. Peak expiratory flow rate in an elderly population. Am J Epidemiol 1989;130(1):66-78.

Eichenhorn MS, Beauchamp RK, Harper PA, Ward JC. An as-

sessment of three portable peak flow meters. Chest 1982;82(3):306-309.
Fernandez R, Sole J, Blanch L, Artigas A. The effect of short-term instillation of a mucolytic agent (Mesna) on airway resistance in mechanically ventilated patients. Chest 1995;107(4):1101-1106.
Gal TJ, Suratt PM. Resistance to breathing in healthy subjects following endotracheal intubation under topical anesthesia. Anesth Analg 1980;59(4):270-274.
Gautrin D, D'Aquino LC, Gagnon G, Malo J-L, Cartier A. Comparison between peak expiratory flow rates (PEFR) and $FEV_1$ in the monitoring of asthmatic subjects at an outpatient clinic. Chest 1994;106(5):1419-1426.
Gay PC, Patel HG, Nelson SB, Gilles B, Hubmayr RD. Metered dose inhalers for bronchodilator delivery in intubated mechanically ventilated patients. Chest 1991;99(1)66-71.
Godfrey S. Exercise-induced asthma: clinical, physiological, and therapeutic implications. J Allergy Clin Immunol 1975;56(1):1-17.
Godfrey S, Konig P. Suppression of exercise-induced asthma by salbutamol, theophylline, atropine, cromolyn, and placebo in a group of asthmatic children. Pediatrics 1975;56(5, Part 2, suppl):930-934.
Godfrey S. Exercise-induced asthma—clinical physiological, and therapeutic implications. J Allergy Clin Immunol 1975;56(1):1-17.
Gupta CK, Mathur N. Statistical models relating peak expiratory flow rates to age, height, and weight in men and women. J Epidemiol Community Health 1982;36(1):64-67.
Harm DL, Marion RJ, Creer TL, Kotses H. Effects of instructions on pulmonary function values. J Asthma 1985;22 (6):289-294.
Kelly CA, Gibson GJ. Relation between FEV1 and peak expiratory flow in patients with chronic airflow obstruction. Thorax 1988;43(4):335-336.
Levinson H, Reilly PA, Worsley GH. Spacing devices and metered-dose inhalers in childhood asthma. J Pediatr 1985; 107(5):662-668.
Marini JJ, Rodriguez RM, Lamb V. Chest 1986;89(1):56-63.
Marini JJ. Dyspnea during weaning. Respir Care 1995;40 (3):271-276.
Melville C, Phelan PD, Landau LI. Nebulized fenoterol compared with metered aerosol. Arch Dis Child 1985;60 (3):257-259.
Morgan MDL, Singh BV, Frame MH, Williams SJ. Terbutaline aerosol given through pear spacer in acute severe asthma. BMJ 1985;285(6345):849-850.
O'Callaghan C, Milner AD, Swarbrick A. Spacer device with face mask attachment for giving bronchodilators to infants with asthma. BMJ 1989;298(6667):160-161.
O'Reilly JF, Gould G, Kendrick AH, Laszlo G. Domiciliary comparison of terbutaline treatment by metered dose inhaler with and without conical spacer in severe and moderately severe chronic asthma. Thorax 1986;41(10):766-770.
Pollack CV Jr. Utilization of the peak expiratory flow rate in evaluation of acute dyspnea of cardiac or pulmonary origin (letter). Chest 1993;103(4):1306-1307.
Ramsdale EH, Morris MM, Hargreave FE. Interpretation of peak flow rates in chronic bronchitis. Thorax 1986;41 (10):771-776.
Shapiro M, Wilson RK, Casar G, Bloom K, Teague RB. Work of breathing through different sized endotracheal tubes. Crit Care Med 1986;14(12):1028-1031.
Thomas P, Pugsley JA, Stewart JH. Theophylline and salbutamol improve pulmonary function in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Chest 1992;101(1):160-165.
Venables KM, Burges PS, Davison AG, Newman-Taylor AJ. Peak flow rate records in surveys: reproducibility of observers' reports. Thorax 1984;39(11):828-832.
Volpe J, Kendall H, Gilbert D, Stowe B, Dundovich K. Metered dose inhalers. RT 1990;3(3):18-23.
Weissman C, Askanazi J, Rosenbaum SH, Damask MC, Hyan AI, Kinney JM. Response to tubular airway resistance in normal subjects and postoperative patients. Anesthesiology 1986;64(3):353-358.
Wright PE, Marini JJ, Bernard GR. In vitro versus in vivo comparison of endotracheal tube airflow resistance. Am Rev Respir Dis 1989;140(1):10-16.
Wu RS, Wu KC, Tsai YH, Cheng RK, Tan PP. Inhaled fenoterol pretreatment attenuates airway resistance response to endotracheal intubation. Acta Anaesthesiol Sin 1995;33(1):7-14.
Zandstra DF, Stoutenbeek CP, Miranda Dr. Effect of mucolytic and bronchodilator aerosol therapy on airway resistance in mechanically ventilated patients. Intensive Care Med 1985;11(6):316-318.
Zureik M, Liard R, Segala C, Henry C, Korobaeff M, Neukirch F. Peak expiratory flow rate variability in population surveys: does the number of assessments matter. Chest 1995;107:418-423.

Interested persons may photocopy these Guidelines for noncommercial purposes of scientific or educational advancement. Please credit AARC and Respiratory Care Journal.

# AARC Clinical Practice Guideline

## Discharge Planning for the Respiratory Care Patient

**DPRP 1.0 PROCEDURE:**

Development and implementation of a comprehensive plan for the safe discharge of the respiratory care patient from a health care facility and for continuing safe and effective care at an alternate site.

**DPRP 2.0 DESCRIPTION:**

The discharge plan is the mechanism that guides a multidisciplinary effort to achieve the successful transfer of the respiratory care patient from the health care facility to an alternate site of care. Implementation of the discharge plan is used to assure the safety and efficacy of the continuing care of the respiratory care patient.[1-10]

The discharge plan includes: (1) evaluation of the patient for the appropriateness of the discharge; (2) determination of the optimal site of care and of patient-care resources; and (3) determination that financial resources are adequate.

**DPRP 3.0 SETTING:**

The discharge plan can be developed at any site at which the respiratory care patient resides.

**DPRP 4.0 INDICATIONS:**

Discharge planning is indicated for all respiratory care patients who are being considered for discharge or transfer to alternate sites including the home. The alternate site may provide a higher or lesser level of care (depending on the patient's condition). The discharge plan should always be developed and implemented as early as possible prior to transfer.[11-13]

**DPRP 5.0 CONTRAINDICATIONS:**

There are no contraindications to the development of a discharge plan.

**DPRP 6.0 HAZARDS/COMPLICATIONS:**

Undesirable and/or unexpected outcomes may occur if the patient is discharged prior to the full implementation of the discharge plan. An undesirable and unexpected patient outcome may be a hazard or complication of the discharge plan; however, not all undesirable outcomes can be attributed to the discharge planning process but may be a result of the natural course of the disease or other factors beyond the control of the discharge planning process.

**DPRP 7.0 METHOD:**

Discharge planning and implementation should begin as early as possible. The complexity of the plan is determined by the patient's medical condition, needs, and goals. Members of the discharge planning team and their responsibilities should be identified and a coordinator specified. The steps in the planning process are:

**7.1** Patient evaluation:[2,8,11,14-16]

**7.1.1** The patient's medical condition

**7.1.2** The respiratory and ventilatory support required.[1,11,17]

**7.1.2.1** Mechanical ventilation

**7.1.2.1.1** Type, method of application, and duration

**7.1.2.1.1.1** Positive-pressure, negative-pressure, or other (eg, pneumatic belt, rocking bed, diaphragm pacer)

**7.1.2.1.1.2** Invasive (via tracheostomy) or noninvasive (all methods that do not include tracheostomy)

**7.1.2.1.1.3** Continuous—requiring ≥ 20 hours of ventilator assistance per day[18] or noncontinuous, which may be nocturnal only (requiring assistance only during hours of sleep) or other—requiring > 8 but < 20 hours of ventilator assistance per day.

**7.1.2.2** Other respiratory care and equipment:

**7.1.2.2.1** Oxygen therapy

**7.1.2.2.2** Aerosol therapy

**7.1.2.2.3** Airway clearance therapy

**7.1.2.2.4** Monitoring and diagnostic procedures

**7.1.2.2.5** Treatment for sleep-disordered breathing

**7.1.3** The patient's physical and functional ability, including acute and chronic neuromuscular conditions, other conditions, and activities of daily living.[1,12,14]

**7.1.4** The patient and family's psychosocial condition

**7.1.5** The patient and family's desires for medical and ventilator care.[1,12,19-22]

**7.1.6** The goals of care[1,5,11,14,23] from the perspective of the patient and family, the patient's physician, the health-care professionals who have and will be involved in the patient's care, and the bedside caregivers. These may include:

**7.1.6.1** treatment of acute medical conditions;

**7.1.6.2** weaning;

**7.1.6.3** rehabilitation;

**7.1.6.4** assurance of optimal quality of life.

**7.2** Site evaluation for continuing care

The primary factors to be considered in site determination are the goals and needs of the respiratory care patient. These goals and needs should be met in an optimal and cost-effective manner using the resources available at the alternate site.[1,3,5,8,11,22,24-30]

Possible sites for the respiratory care patient include acute, intermediate, and long-term care facilities, such as long-term acute, subacute, rehabilitation, skilled nursing facilities, and home. The respiratory care patient may transition among the sites according to changing medical condition.

The site must be evaluated for available resources:

**7.2.1** Personnel

**7.2.1.1** The staff of the selected health-care facility

**7.2.1.1.1** must clearly demonstrate and have documented (by the time of discharge) the competencies required for the patient's ventilatory and respiratory needs;

**7.2.1.1.2** must be able to provide other health-care services as may be indicated (eg, occupational and physical therapy).

**7.2.1.1.3** must be adequate for 24-hour coverage;

**7.2.1.2** For discharge to the home:

**7.2.1.2.1** The ability of the caregivers to learn and perform the required care must be evaluated.

**7.2.1.2.2** The caregivers must clearly demonstrate and have documented (by the time of discharge) the competencies required for caring for the specific patient.

**7.2.1.2.3** Availability of caregivers (lay and professional) for each 24-hour period must be assured.

**7.2.2** The chosen site must be capable of operating, maintaining, and supporting the equipment required by the patient's medical condition. This should include both respiratory and ancillary equipment and supplies as needed, such as the ventilator, suction, oxygen, intravenous therapy, nutritional therapy, and adaptive equipment.[1,14]

**7.2.3** Physical environment—The physical environment must be evaluated for safety and suitability. It should be[1,2,8,14,20,31,32] free of fire, health, and safety hazards; provide adequate heating, cooling, and ventilation; provide adequate electrical service; provide for patient access and mobility with adequate patient space (room to house medical and adaptive equipment) and storage facilities.

**7.3** Financial resources—Financial resources must be identified at the beginning of the discharge process. Lack of funding or inadequate funding impacts the entire discharge plan and can determine the care site.[1,2,5,6,8,11,16,19,20-22,25,27,28,33] It is essential to determine sources and adequacy of funds for alternate-site care, medical equipment and supplies, the required medical personnel, any modifications neces-

sary to environment, and ongoing medical care.

**7.4** Development of the plan of care—A multidisciplinary plan of care is developed based upon the evaluation of the patient's needs and goals. The plan should be consistent with recommended practices and guidelines for the patient's condition.[1,6,8,10,11,14,19,20,34,35] Key elements should include delineation of

- **7.4.1** plan for integration into the community;
- **7.4.2** plan for patient self-care as appropriate;
- **7.4.3** roles and responsibilities of team members for daily care management;
- **7.4.4** documented mechanism for securing and training additional caregivers;
- **7.4.5** alternative emergency and contingency plans;
- **7.4.6** plan for use, maintenance, and troubleshooting of equipment;
- **7.4.7** plan for monitoring and appropriately responding to changes in the patient's medical condition;
- **7.4.8** medication administration;
- **7.4.9** method for ongoing assessment of outcomes;
- **7.4.10** time frame for implementation;
- **7.4.11** method to assess growth and development of pediatric patients;
- **7.4.12** follow-up (eg, medical, respiratory care);
- **7.4.13** mechanism for communication among all members of healthcare team.

**7.5** Education and training with clear demonstration and documentation of competencies must occur prior to discharge. Education and training must address key elements of the plan of care.[1,2,6-9,17,22,27,28,30,33,36-38]

**7.6** Limitations of method:

Barriers to full implementation and discharge may occur due to[1,25,30,34,39]

- **7.6.1** patient's medical condition;
- **7.6.2** lack of availability of appropriate site;
- **7.6.3** lack of financial and patient care resources;
- **7.6.4** patient/family desires and cooperation;
- **7.6.5** failure to identify all pertinent problems or needs (including problems stemming from language or other barriers to communication).

**DPRP 8.0 ASSESSMENT OF NEED:**

All patients with a primary respiratory diagnosis should be assessed for the need for a discharge plan.

**DPRP 9.0 ASSESSMENT OF OUTCOME:**

The desired outcome of the discharge plan is determined by[19,40]

- **9.1** no re-admission to an alternate care site due to discharge plan failure;
- **9.2** satisfactory performance of all treatments and modalities by caregivers as instructed;
- **9.3** caregivers' ability to assess the patient, troubleshoot, and solve problems as they arise;
- **9.4** the treatment's meeting the patient's needs and goals;
- **9.5** the equipment's meeting the patient's needs;
- **9.6** the site's providing the necessary services;
- **9.7** the patient and family's satisfaction.

**DPRP 10.0 RESOURCES:**

The discharge planning process requires[1,3,5-8,16,22,31]

- **10.1** a written discharge plan that clearly delineates
  - **10.1.1** the educational materials, training aids and assessment tools;
  - **10.1.2** the amount of time anticipated to complete the process and discharge the patient;
  - **10.1.3** team member access to patient and family for information gathering and training;
  - **10.1.4** the source and limits of funds to implement the plan.
- **10.2** physical and financial support adequate to implement the discharge plan.
- **10.3** personnel.[1,3,5-8,16,22,31] One member of the team with particular expertise in respiratory care[1,5,16,22] should be designated to coordinate the efforts of all team members.
  - **10.3.1** patient;
  - **10.3.2** family and/or caregiver (lay or professional);
  - **10.3.3** physician;
  - **10.3.4** nurse;

**10.3.5** respiratory care practitioner;
**10.3.6** medical equipment provider;
**10.3.7** social worker;
**10.3.8** physical, occupational, and speech therapist, as indicated by patient condition;
**10.3.9** case manager;
**10.3.10** nutritionist;
**10.3.11** representative of the alternate site.

**DPRP 11.0 MONITORING:**

The discharge plan coordinator and the physician should monitor the progress of the discharge plan.[22] Each team member should participate in regularly scheduled team conferences to assess the progress of the discharge plan. Modifications may be made according to the individual patient's goals and needs.

**DPRP 12.0 FREQUENCY:**

The discharge planning process should be developed, reviewed, modified, and implemented whenever the patient is considered for transfer to an alternate site.

**DPRP 13.0 INFECTION CONTROL:**

The presence of transmissible infection and the presence of compromised immunity in the patient should be taken into consideration when discharge planning is undertaken. Appropriate steps to protect patient, caregiver, and family should be incorporated into the plan of care,[41,42] including provision for age-and condition-specific immunizations.[43]

***Respiratory Home Care Focus Group:***

*Peggi Robart RRT RCP,* Chairman, Boston MA
*Barry J Make MD,* Denver CO
*Susan L McInturff RRT RCP,* Bremerton WA
*Dennis W Tureson Sr RRT CRTT,* Minneapolis MN
*Melissa P Weimer RRT,* McKeesport PA

**REFERENCES**


1. O'Donohue Jr WJ, Giovannoni RM, Goldberg AI, Keens TG, Make BJ, Plummer AL, Prentice WS. Long-term mechanical ventilation: guidelines for management in the home and at alternate community sites. Chest 1986;90(1, suppl):1-37.
2. Gilmartin ME. Transition from the intensive care unit to home: patient selection and discharge planning. Respir Care 1994;39(5):456-480.
3. Baldwin-Myers A, Geiger-Bronsky M, Chacona A, Ewing L, Huiskes B, Shiroma J, Gold P. Standards of care for the ventilator-assisted individual: a comprehensive management plan from hospital to home. Loma Linda University Medical Center, 1995.
4. Feldman J, Tuteur PG. Mechanical ventilation: from hospital intensive care to home. Heart Lung 1982;11 (2):162-165.
5. Donar ME. Community care: pediatric home mechanical ventilation. Holistic Nurs Pract 1988;2(2):68-80.
6. Gilmartin ME. Long-term mechanical ventilation: patient selection and discharge planning. Respir Care 1991;36(3):205-216.
7. Kopacz MA, Moriarty-Wright R. Multidisciplinary approach for the patient on a home ventilator. Heart Lung 1984;13(3):255-262.
8. Gilmartin ME. Long-term mechanical ventilation outside the hospital. In: Pierson DJ, Kacmarek RM, editors. Foundations of respiratory care. New York: Churchill Livingsone, 1992:1185-1204.
9. Make BJ. Long-term management of ventilator-assisted individuals: the Boston University experience. Respir Care 1986;31(4):303-310.
10. Naylor M, Brooten D, Jones R, Lavizzo -Mourey R, Mezey M, Pauly M. Comprehensive discharge planning for the hospitalized elderly. A randomized clinical trial. Ann Intern Med 1994;120(12):999-1006.
11. Department of Geriatric Health, Home Care Advisory Panel. Guidelines for the medical management of the home care patient. American Medical Association, Chicago, 1992.
12. King C, Macmillan M. Documentation and discharge planning for elderly patients. Nurs Times 1994;90 (20):31-33.
13. Parfrey PS, Gardner E, Vavasour H, Harnett JD, McManamon C, McDonald J, Dawe J. The feasibility and efficacy of early discharge planning initiated by the admitting department in two acute care hospitals. Clin Invest Med 1994;17(2):88-96.
14. McInturff SL, Dunne PJ. Assessment of the home care patient. In: Wilkins RL, Krider SJ, Sheldon RL, editors. Clinical assessment in respiratory care, 3rd ed. St. Louis: Mosby-Year Book, 1995:367-374.
15. American Thoracic Society. Standards of nursing care for adult patients with pulmonary dysfunction. Am Rev Respir Dis 1991;144(1):231-236.
16. Make BJ, Gilmartin ME. Care of ventilator-assisted individuals in the home and in alternative community sites. In: Hodgkin JE, Connors GL, Bell CW, editors. Pulmonary rehabilitation: guidelines to success, 2nd ed. Philadelphia: JB Lippincott, 1993:359-391.
17. Peters SG, Viggiano RW. Home mechanical ventilation. Mayo Clin Proc 1988;63:1208-1213.
18. American College of Chest Physicians. ACCP consensus statement on mechanical ventilation outside the critical care unit. Chest 1995;108 (in press).

19. Thomas VM, Ellison K, Howell EV, Winters K. Caring for the person receiving ventilatory support at home: care givers' needs and involvement. Heart Lung 1992; 21(2):180-186.
20. Smith CE, Mayer LS, Parkhurst C, Perkins SB, Pingleton SK. Adaptation in families with a member requiring mechanical ventilation at home. Heart Lung 1991;20(4):349-356.
21. Moss AH, Casey P, Stocking CB, Roos RP, Brooks BR, Siegler M. Home ventilation for amyotrophic lateral sclerosis patients: outcomes, costs, and patient, family, and physician attitudes. Neurology 1993;43:438-443.
22. Prentice WS. Transition from hospital to home. In: Gilmartin ME, Make BJ, editors. Mechanical ventilation in the home: issues for health care providers. Probl Respir Care 1988;1(2):175-191.
23. McBride RC. An audit of current discharge planning arrangements and their effectiveness on elderly care wards and community nursing services together with aspects of client satisfaction. J Nurs Manag 1995;3(1):19-24.
24. Clark, K. Psychosocial aspects of prolonged ventilator dependency. Respir Care 1986;31(4):329-333.
25. DeWitt PK, Jansen MT, Davidson Ward SL, Keens TG. Obstacles to discharge of ventilator-assisted children from the hospital to home. Chest 1993;103(5): 1560-1565.
26. Nochomovitz ML, Montenegro HD, Parran S, Daly B. Placement alternative for ventilator-dependent patients outside the intensive care unit. Respir Care 1991; 36(3)199-204.
27. Gilmartin ME, Make BJ. Home care of the ventilator-dependent person. Respir Care 1983;28(11):1490-1497.
28. Prentice WS. Placement alternatives for long-term ventilator care. Respir Care 1986;31(4):288-293.
29. Popovich Jr J. Intermediate care units: graded care options (editorial). Chest 1991;99(1):4-5.
30. N Morrow-Howell, Proctor E. Discharge destinations of Medicare patients receiving discharge planning: who goes where? Med Care 1994;32(5):488-497.
31. American Thoracic Society. Home mechanical ventilation of pediatric patients (statement). Am Rev Respir Dis 1990;142:258-259.
32. US Consumer Product Safety Commission. Safety for Older Consumers: home safety checklist. Washington DC: US Consumer Product Safety Commission, 1986.
33. Goldberg AI, Frownfelter D. The ventilator-assisted individuals study. Chest 1990;98(2):428-433.
34. Findeis A, Larson JL, Gallo A, Shekleton M. Caring for individuals using home ventilators: an appraisal of family caregivers. Rehabil Nurs 1994;19(1):6-11.
35. Jackson NC. Pulmonary rehabilitation for mechanically ventilated patients. Crit Care Nurs Clin North Am 1991; 3(4):591-600.
36. Glenn KA, Make BJ. Learning objective for positive pressure ventilation in the home. Denver: National Center for Home Mechanical Ventilation and National Jewish Center for Immunology and Respiratory Medicine, 1993.
37. Daley White K, Walsh Perez P. Your ventilator patient can go home again. Nursing 1986;12:54-56.
38. Thompson CL, Richmond M. Teaching home care for ventilator-dependent patients: the patients' perception. Heart Lung 1990;19(1):79-83.
39. Murtaugh CM. Discharge planning in nursing homes. Health Serv Res 1994;28(6):751-769.
40. Haddock KS. Collaborative discharge planning: nursing and social services. Clin Nurse Spec 1994;8(5)248-252,288.
41. Centers for Disease Control. Update: Universal Precautions for prevention of transmission of human immunodeficiency virus, hepatitis B virus, and other bloodborne pathogens in health-care settings. MMWR 1988;37:377-382,387-388.
42. Centers for Disease Control. Guidelines for preventing the transmission of tuberculosis in health-care settings, with special focus on HIV-related tissues. MMWR 1990;39(RR-17):1-29.
43. Mostow SR, Cate TR, Ruben FL. Prevention of influenza and pneumonia: official statement of the American Thoracic Society. Am Rev Respir Dis 1990;142(2): 487-488.

Interested persons may photocopy these Guidelines for noncommercial purposes of scientific or educational advancement. Please credit AARC and Respiratory Care Journal.

# AARC Clinical Practice Guideline

## Long-Term Invasive Mechanical Ventilation in the Home

**HIMV 1.0 PROCEDURE:**

The application of invasive mechanical ventilation and care of the patient-ventilator system in the home, as ordered by a physician.

**HIMV 2.0 DESCRIPTION/DEFINITION:**

Mechanical ventilation may be defined as a life support system designed to replace or support normal ventilatory lung function.[1] Ventilator dependence is caused by an imbalance between ventilatory capacity and demand.[2] "A ventilator-assisted individual (VAI) may require mechanical aid for breathing to augment or replace spontaneous ventilatory efforts to achieve medical stability" or to maintain life.[3] The patient eligible for invasive long term mechanical ventilation in the home (HIMV) requires a tracheostomy tube[4-6] for ventilatory support but no longer requires intensive medical and monitoring services.[7-9] This guideline refers to patients ventilated by positive pressure via a tracheostomy tube in the home.

The goals of HIMV are

**2.1** to sustain and extend life;[8,10-19]

**2.2** to enhance the quality of life;[10-15,17-29]

**2.3** to reduce morbidity;[8,10,11,13,16,20,30]

**2.4** to improve or sustain physical and psychological function of all VAIs[7,8,10,13,15,16,18,20,31,32] and to enhance growth and development in pediatric VAIs;[5,7,8,12,17-19,23,28,33-36]

**2.5** to provide cost-effective care.[7,8,10,11,13-19,22,23,27,28,32,36-45]

**HIMV 3.0 SETTING:**

The setting is the home, which for the purposes of this guideline may be the patient's home,[4,5,10,18,19,22,27,32,34,38,40,41,46-53] a foster home,[10,17] or a group-living environment.[10,51]

**HIMV 4.0 INDICATIONS:**

**4.1** Patients requiring invasive long-term ventilatory support have demonstrated:

**4.1.1** an inability to be completely weaned from invasive ventilatory support *or*

**4.1.2** a progression of disease etiology that requires increasing ventilatory support.

**4.2**.Conditions that met these criteria may include but are not limited to ventilatory muscle disorders,[4,5,10,11,14,16-19,21,26,27,33,35,38,42,43,46,52,54-62] alveolar hypoventilation syndrome,[4,5,10,17,18,19,23,33,34,42,43,46,47,59,60] primary respiratory disorders,[4,10,17,18,19,23,42,46,59,60] obstructive diseases,[5,10,57,58] restrictive diseases,[5,10,16,43,46,56] and cardiac disorders including congenital anomalies.[17,23,19,42,46,59]

**HIMV 5.0 CONTRAINDICATIONS**

Contraindications to HIMV include:

**5.1** The presence of a physiologically unstable medical condition requiring higher level of care or resources than available in the home.[4-7,10,14,16,17,19,20,21,23,26,29,33,52,59] Examples of indicators of a medical condition too unstable for the home and long term care setting are:

**5.1.1** $F_{IO_2}$ requirement > 0.40[4,5,10,16,35]

**5.1.2** PEEP > 10 cm $H_2O$[4,5,10,12,16,35]

**5.1.3** Need for continuous invasive monitoring in adult patients[4,6,16]

**5.1.4** Lack of mature tracheostomy

**5.2** Patient's choice not to receive home mechanical ventilation[5,10,16,19,23,26,39,42,52,56,58,63,64]

**5.3** Lack of an appropriate discharge plan[4,5,8,11,13,18,33,34,38,39,46,48,51,65]

**5.4** Unsafe physical environment as determined by the patient's discharge planning team.[10,13,66]

**5.4.1** Presence of fire, health or safety hazards including unsanitary conditions.[39,51]

**5.4.2** Inadequate basic utilities (such as heat, air conditioning, electricity).[4,5,10,19,22,33,38,39,52,67]

**5.5** Inadequate resources for care in the home:

**5.5.1** Financial[9,10,13,14,16,18,19,23,25,26,33,35,38-40,44,52,55,56,59,68,69]

**5.5.2** Personnel

**5.5.2.1** Inadequate medical follow-up[13,14,16,18,29,33,36,38,39,50,61]

**5.5.2.2** Inability of VAI to care for self, if no caregiver is available[5,16]

**5.5.2.3** Inadequate respite care for caregivers[17,19,26]

**5.5.2.4** Inadequate numbers of competent caregivers[5,13,21,23,25,26,30,38,39,52,68]

## HIMV 6.0 HAZARDS AND COMPLICATIONS

**6.1** Deterioration or acute change in clinical status of VAI. Although ventilator-associated complications in the home are poorly documented, experience in other sites can be extrapolated. The following may cause death or require rehospitalization for acute treatment.

**6.1.1** Medical: Hypocapnia, respiratory alkalosis,[70] hypercapnia, respiratory acidosis, [70] hypoxemia, barotrauma,[5,64,70] seizures, hemodynamic instability,[21] airway complications (stomal or tracheal infection, mucus plugging, tracheal erosion or stenosis),[5] respiratory infection (tracheobronchitis, pneumonia),[57,70,71] bronchospasm,[5] exacerbation of underlying disease, or natural course of the disease

**6.1.2** Equipment-related: Failure of the ventilator, malfunction of equipment,[10] inadequate warming and humidification of the inspired gases, inadvertent changes in ventilator settings, accidental disconnection from ventilator,[27] accidental decannulation

**6.1.3** Psychosocial: Depression,[5,10,43] anxiety,[4,10,43] loss of resources—caregiver or financial,[10,19,25,40,43] detrimental change in family structure or coping capacity[5,10,19,25,34,38,54,55,56,71,72]

## HIMV 7.0 LIMITATIONS

In the home care setting, making and implementing changes in the plan of care may take longer than in a health care facility.

## HIMV 8.0 ASSESSMENT OF NEED

**8.1** Determination that indications are present and contraindications are absent.

**8.2** Determination that the goals listed in 2.1 can be met in the home.

**8.3** Determination that no continued need exists for higher level of services.

**8.4** Determination that frequent changes in the plan of care will not be needed.

## HIMV 9.0 ASSESSMENT OF OUTCOME

At least the following aspects of patient management and condition should be evaluated periodically as long as the patient receives HIMV

**9.1** Implementation and adherence to the plan of care

**9.2** Quality of life

**9.3** Patient satisfaction

**9.4** Resource utilization

**9.5** Growth and development in the pediatric patient

**9.6** Unanticipated morbidity, including need for higher level site of care.

**9.7** Unanticipated mortality

## HIMV 10.0 RESOURCES

**10.1** Equipment

**10.1.1** Ventilator(s)—Choice should be based on patient's clinical need,[5,10,14,22,23,35,38,67,73] Patient's medical needs may dictate that more than one ventilator be provided.

**10.1.1.1** Ventilators chosen for home care must be dependable and easy for the intended caregivers to operate; small size and lightweight are desirable

**10.1.1.2** Mobility is frequently an essential element of the plan of care of the patient. The mechanical ventilator system chosen for such a patient should allow mobility.

**10.1.2** With portable, volume-cycled ventilators, use of the SIMV mode increases work of breathing, and the addition of an

external continuous-flow system reduces portability.[1,10,74-76]

**10.1.3** Complex and nonportable components are not recommended for HIMV but may be used to meet the needs of certain pediatric patients.[10,13,22,35,75]

**10.1.3.1** Ventilators powered by external compressed gas sources are less desirable.[10,22]

**10.1.3.2** A second ventilator should be provided for

**10.1.3.2.1** patients who cannot maintain spontaneous ventilation for 4 or more consecutive hours;[4,10,13,67]

**10.1.3.2.2** patients who live in an area where a replacement ventilator cannot be provided within 2 hours;[4,13,39,67]

**10.1.3.2.3** patients who require mechanical ventilation during mobility as prescribed in their plan of care.

**10.1.4** An adequate power source must be available to operate the ventilator consistent with patient needs.[4,5,10,13,14,39,67] This may be supplied by one or more of the following methods:

**10.1.4.1** Alternating current (AC) is the primary power source for most long-term care ventilators. Emergency AC power should be available in the long-term care facility.

**10.1.4.2** Direct current (DC) by external battery may be used to allow mobility and as an emergency power source. The internal battery of the ventilator should be used only for short-term, emergency use. It should not be used as a primary source of power.

**10.1.5** Alarms

**10.1.5.1** A patient-disconnect (eg, low-pressure[10] or low-exhaled-volume) and a high-pressure alarm are essential.

**10.1.5.2** If patient disconnection is likely to produce a serious adverse effect, a remote alarm and a secondary alarm may be indicated. A secondary alarm may be based on chest-wall impedance and cardiac activity, exhaled volume, end-tidal $CO_2$, or pulse oximetry with alarm capabilities.[42]

**10.1.6** Humidification system(s) are essential for invasive mechanical ventilation. The type of system used is determined by the patient's medical needs[77] and the patient's need for mobility.[10,13,35] It may be appropriate for the patient to use more than one type of system, based on those needs.[1,15,78,79-81]

**10.1.6.1** Heated humidifier (temperature probes should be provided).

**10.1.6.2** Heat and moisture exchanger can be used during transport and to enhance mobility.[1,77,81]

**10.1.7** Ventilator circuit and accessories as medically indicated.

**10.1.8** Self-inflating resuscitation bag with tracheostomy attachments and mask of appropriate size[5,10,21-23,39,67]

**10.1.9** Replacement tracheostomy tube of appropriate size plus a tube one size smaller should be available at all times.

**10.1.10** Suction equipment[5,10,13,21-23,39,62,67] including a battery-powered aspirator for patients who leave the home or when indicated as an alternate source in the event of a power failure

**10.1.11** Supplemental oxygen as medically indicated[10,13,39,67]

**10.1.12** Patients must have an adequate means of communicating their needs and desires and to summon help in the case of emergency.[10]

**10.2** Personnel:

**10.2.1** Lay caregivers (eg, family members, personal care attendants, and non-credentialed health care personnel such as nurse's aides) can be taught skills and techniques of care for a specific VAI. Appropriately trained lay caregivers must demonstrate competency in

**10.2.1.1** proper set up, use, troubleshooting, and maintenance of the equipment and supplies;[10,23,32,33,39,40,50,65]

**10.2.1.2** patient assessment and ongoing response to invasive mechanical ventilation;[10,23,32,33,35,40,65]

**10.2.1.3** responding to the hazards of invasive mechanical ventilation;[22,23,26,33]

**10.2.1.4** responding to emergencies;[10,23,32,39,40] in the case of

**10.2.1.4.1** power failure;

**10.2.1.4.2** acute life threatening events such as accidental decannulation[22] or other need for tracheostomy tube replacement,[10] other unexpected events, or medical deterioration of the patient

**10.2.1.4.3** failure of equipment or supplies;

**10.2.1.5** complying with appropriate infection control procedures;[10,39,65]

**10.2.1.6** providing appropriate return demonstrations in the use and application of any additional techniques required for the ongoing care of the VAI, such as suctioning and use of ancillary equipment;[10,39,40,50,65]

**10.2.2** Level-II practitioners are healthcare professionals capable not only of providing direct patient care but also possessing demonstrated competencies to monitor and assess both the patient and equipment. Level-II practitioners are capable of training and evaluating lay caregivers. Level-II practitioners should be credentialed health care professionals (eg, RRT, CRTT, RN) with documented knowledge and demonstrated competencies to:

**10.2.2.1** provide knowledge and understanding of the patient's disease, goals and limitations of invasive mechanical ventilation;[32,33,39]

**10.2.2.2** assess patient's response to invasive mechanical ventilation;

**10.2.2.3** make recommendations for changes in respiratory management of patient, including weaning as necessary;[10,33]

**10.2.2.4** train and monitor caregivers;[4,5,10,32,33,40,50]

**10.2.2.5** monitor patient's ongoing ventilatory status;

**10.2.2.6** communicate results of assessment to the health care team.[5,39]

**10.3** Finances: HIMV can only be instituted and maintained with adequate financial resources to provide the necessary equipment and personnel to manage the patient's care.[10,13,35,43]

## HIMV 11.0 MONITORING

The frequency of monitoring should be determined by the ongoing individualized care plan and be based upon the patient's current medical condition. The ventilator settings, proper function of equipment, and the patient's physical condition should be monitored and verified: (1) with each initiation of invasive ventilation to the patient, including altering the source of ventilation, as from one ventilator or resuscitation bag to another ventilator; (2) with each ventilator setting change; (3) on a regular basis as specified by individualized plan of care.[35]

All appropriately trained caregivers should follow the care plan and implement the monitoring that has been prescribed. These caregivers may operate, maintain and monitor all equipment and perform all aspects of care required by the VAI after having been trained and evaluated on their level of knowledge for that equipment and the VAI's clinical response to each of the interventions.

**11.1** Lay caregivers should monitor the following regularly:

**11.1.1** Patient's physical condition: respiratory rate, heart rate, color changes, chest excursion, diaphoresis, and lethargy, blood pressure, body temperature.

**11.1.2** Ventilator settings: The frequency at which alarms and settings are to be checked should be specified in the plan of care.

**11.1.2.1** Peak pressures

**11.1.2.2** Preset tidal volume

**11.1.2.3** Frequency of ventilator breaths

**11.1.2.4** Verification of oxygen concentration setting

**11.1.2.5** PEEP level (if applicable)

**11.1.2.6** Appropriate humidification of inspired gases

**11.1.2.7** Temperature of inspired gases (if applicable)

**11.1.2.8** Heat and moisture exchanger function

**11.1.3** Equipment function:[10,13]

**11.1.3.1** Appropriate configuration of ventilator circuit[82]

**11.1.3.2** Alarm function

**11.1.3.3** Cleanliness of filter(s)—according to manufacturer's recommendation

**11.1.3.4** Battery power level(s)—both internal and external

**11.1.3.5** Overall condition of all equipment

**11.1.3.6** Self-inflating manual resuscitator—cleanliness and function

**11.2** A Level-II practitioner should perform a thorough, comprehensive assessment of the patient and the patient-ventilator system on a regular basis as prescribed by the plan of care. In addition to the variables listed in 11.1.1-11.1.3. the Level-II practitioner should implement, monitor, and assess results of other interventions as indicated by the clinical situation and anticipated in the care plan.

**11.2.1** Pulse oximetry—should be used in patients requiring a change in prescribed oxygen levels or in patients with a suspected change in condition.[10,35]

**11.2.2** End-tidal $CO_2$—may be useful for establishing trends in $CO_2$ levels during weaning.[10,23,33,35,59,83,84]

**11.2.3** Specimen collection (and analysis as applicable) as prescribed by physician—including but not limited to sputum and blood work (eg, arterial blood gas analysis and complete blood counts).[5,10,32,37]

**11.2.4** Cardiorespiratory monitoring (electrocardiogram, heart-rate trending)[10]

**11.2.5** Pulmonary function testing

**11.2.6** Ventilator settings

**11.2.7** Exhaled tidal volume

**11.2.8** Analysis of fraction of inspired oxygen

**11.3** Level-II personnel are also responsible for maintaining interdisciplinary communication concerning the plan of care

**11.4** Level-II personnel should integrate respiratory plan of care into the patient's total care plan.[10] Plan of care should include

**11.4.1** all aspects of patient's respiratory care[66] and

**11.4.2** ongoing assessment and education of the caregivers involved.

## HIMV 12.0 FREQUENCY:

**12.1** The frequency of ventilation (and the patient's ventilator-free time) is dictated by the patient's physiologic needs and is determined in consultation with the patient's physician.

**12.2** The frequency of assessment of the VAI and the patient-ventilator system must be noted in the evolving total care plan as determined by the health care team, in conjunction with the VAI and their caregivers.

## HIMV 13.0 INFECTION CONTROL

**13.1** Both professional and lay caregivers should be aware of the potential for transmission of both chronic and acute infection from patient to caregiver and from caregiver to patient and should take the steps necessary to avoid that transmission. Aspects of avoidance include:

**13.1.1** careful handwashing and barrier protection when appropriate

**13.1.2** careful disposal of medical waste

**13.1.3** adequate environmental air exchange

**13.1.4** maximizing protection of patient, family, and caregivers (eg, influenza immunization) and minimizing exposure to persons with acute infections (eg, limiting visitors with upper respiratory infections).

**13.2** Evidence is lacking to support an optimal plan for changing and processing ventilator circuits and ancillary equipment in the home. However, studies from institutional settings[85,86] suggest that ventilator circuits need not be changed more often than once each week. Further, it appears that the less often a circuit is entered, the less likely contamination is to occur.

***Respiratory Home Care Focus Group:***

*Peggi Robart RRT RCP,* Chairman, Boston MA
*Barry J Make MD,* Denver CO
*Susan L McInturff RRT RCP,* Bremerton WA
*Dennis W Tureson Sr RRT CRTT,* Minneapolis MN
*Melissa P Weimer, RRT,* McKeesport PA

### REFERENCES

1. American Association for Respiratory Care. AARC consensus statement on the essentials of mechanical ventilators—1992. Respir Care 1992;37(9):1000-1008.
2. Marini JJ. The physiologic determinants of ventilator dependence. Respir Care 1986;31(4):271-282.

3. Goldberg A. Home care for life-supported person: is a national approach the answer? Chest 1986;90(5):744-748.
4. Gilmartin ME. Long-term mechanical ventilation: patient selection and discharge planning. Respir Care 1991; 36(3):205-216.
5. Gilmartin ME. Transition from the intensive care unit to home: patient selection and discharge planning. Respir Care 1994;39(5):456-480.
6. O'Donohue WJ Jr, Branson RD, Hoppough JM, Make BJ. Criteria for establishing units for chronic ventilator-dependent patients in hospitals. Respir Care 1988; 33(11):1044-1046.
7. Goldstein RS, Pierson DJ. Long-term mechanical ventilation as elective therapy. Respir Care 1991;36(4):288-289.
8. Health Care Financing Administration. Ventilator dependent demonstration. Technical Advisory Panel Meeting. Washington DC, 1990.
9. Prentice WS. Placement alternatives for long-term ventilator care. Respir Care 1986;31(4):288-293.
10. O'Donohue WJ, Giovannoni RM, Goldberg AI, Keens TG, Make BJ, Plummer AL, Prentice WS. Long-term mechanical ventilation: guidelines for management in the home and at alternate community sites. Chest 1986; 90(1):1S-37S.
11. Goldstein RS, Avendano, MA. Long-term mechanical ventilation as elective therapy: clinical status and future prospects Respir Care 1991;36:297-304.
12. Gilmartin ME, Make BJ. Home care of the ventilator-dependent person. Respir Care 1983;28(11):1490-1497.
13. Plummer AL, O'Donohue WJ Jr, Petty TL. Consensus conference on problems in home mechanical ventilation. Am Rev Respir Dis 1989;140(2):555-560.
14. Gilmartin ME, Make BJ. Mechanical ventilation in the home: a new mandate. Respir Care 1986;31(5):406-412.
15. Make B, Gilmartin M, Brody JS, Snider GL. Rehabilitation of ventilator-dependent subjects with lung diseases: the concept and initial experience. Chest 1984;86(3):358-365.
16. Make BJ, Gilmartin ME. Mechanical ventilation in the home. Crit Care Clin 1991;6(3):785-796.
17. Canlas-Yamsuan M, Sanchez I, Kesselman M, Chernick V. Morbidity and mortality patterns of ventilator-dependent children in a home care program. Clin Pediatr 1993; 32:706-713.
18. Brook Lodge Invitational Symposium on the Ventilator-Dependent Child, October 16-18, 1983. Sponsored by American Academy of Pediatrics, Children's Home Health Network of Illinois, La Rabida Children's Hospital and Research Center, and Upjohn Health Care Services.
19. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Health Resources and Services Administration, Bureau of Health Care Delivery and Assistance, Division of Maternal and Child Health in conjunction with the Children's Hospital of Philadelphia. Report of the Surgeon General's workshop on children with handicaps and their families. Case example: the ventilator-dependent child. December 1982.
20. Leone M, Cassara EL, Stein M. Home care for pulmonary diseases. Respir Care 1990;35(12):1203-1205.
21. Alexander MA, Johnson EW, Petty J, Stauch D. Mechanical ventilation of patients with late stage Duchenne muscular dystrophy: management in the home. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 1979;60:289-292.
22. Banaszak EF, Travers H, Frazier M, Vinz T. Home ventilator care. Respir Care 1981;26(12):1262-1268.
23. Donar ME. Community care: pediatric home mechanical ventilation. Holistic Nurse Pract 1988;2(2):68-80.
24. Fischer DA, Prentice WS. Feasibility of home care for certain respiratory-dependent restrictive or obstructive lung disease patients. Chest 1982;82(6):739-743.
25. Thomas VM, Ellison K, Howell EV, Winters K. Caring for the person receiving ventilatory support at home: care givers' needs and involvement. Heart Lung 1992; 21(2):180-186.
26. Smith CE, Mayer LS, Parkhurst C, Perkins SB, Pingleton SK. Adaptation in families with a member requiring mechanical ventilation at home. Heart Lung 1991;20(4): 349-356.
27. Splaingard ML, Frates RC Jr, Harrison GM, Carter E, Jefferson LS. Home positive-pressure ventilation: twenty years' experience. Chest 1983;84(4):376-382.
28. Downes JJ, Pilmer SL. Chronic respiratory failure—controversies in management. Crit Care Med 1993;21 (9, Suppl):S363-S364.
29. Purtilo RB. Ethical issues in the treatment of chronic ventilator-dependent patients. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 1986;67:718-721.
30. Dunkin LJ. Home ventilatory assistance. Anaesthesia 1983;38:644-649.
31. Affeldt JE, Bower AG, Dail CW, Aratan N. Prognosis for recovery in severe poliomyelitis. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 1957;38:290-295.
32. Make BJ. Long-term management of ventilator-assisted individuals: the Boston University experience. Respir Care 1986;31(4):303-310.
33. American Thoracic Society Ad Hoc Committee of the Scientific Assembly on Pediatrics. Home mechanical ventilation of pediatric patients. Am Rev Respir Dis 1990;141:258-259.
34. Massachusetts Department of Public Health, Burr BH, Guyer B, Todres ID, Abrahams B, Chiodo T. Home care for children on respirators. N Engl J Med 1983;309 (21):1319-1323.
35. Kacmarek RM, Thompson JE. Respiratory care of the ventilator-assisted infant in the home. Respir Care 1986;31(7):605-614.
36. Whitcomb ME. Care of the ventilator-dependent patient: public policy considerations. Respir Care 1986;31 (4):283-287.
37. Clark K. Psychosocial aspects of prolonged ventilator dependency. Respir Care 1986;31(4):329-333.
38. Dunne P. Demographics and financial impact of home respiratory care. Respir Care 1994;39(4):309-320.
39. Feldman J, Tuteur PG. Mechanical ventilation: from hospital intensive care to home. Heart Lung 1982; 11(2):162-165.
40. Fields AI, Rosenblatt A, Pollack MM, Kaufman J. Home care cost-effectiveness for respiratory technolo-

gy—dependent children. AJDC 1991;145:729-733.
41. Fischer DA, Prentice WS. Feasibility of home care for certain respiratory-dependent restrictive or obstructive lung disease patients. Chest 1982;82(6):739-743.
42. Frates RC Jr, Splaingard ML, Smith EO, Harrison GM. Outcome of home mechanical ventilation in children. J Pediatr 1985;106(5):850-856.
43. Sivak ED, Cordasco EM, Gipson WT. Pulmonary mechanical ventilation at home: a reasonable and less expensive alternative. Respir Care 1983;28(1):42-49.
44. Goldberg AI, Frownfelter D. The ventilator-assisted individuals study. Chest 1990;98(2):428-433.
45. Goldberg AI, Faure EA. Home care for life supported persons in England: the Responant approach. Chest 1984;86:910-914.
46. Goldberg A. Children on ventilators: breathing easier at home. Cont Pediatr Vol. 59-79.
47. Oren J, Kelly DH, Shannon DC. Long-term follow-up of children with congenital central hypoventilation syndrome. Pediatrics 1987;80(3):375-380.
48. Goldberg AI. Mechanical ventilation and respiratory care in the home in the 1990s: some personal observations. Respir Care 1990;35(3):247-259.
49. Peters SG, Viggiano RW. Home mechanical ventilation. Mayo Clin Proc 1988;63:1208-1213.
50. Thompson CL, Richmond M. Teaching home care for ventilator-dependent patients: the patients' perception. Heart Lung 1990;19(1):79-83.
51. Prentice WS. Transition from hospital to home. In: Gilmartin ME, Make BJ, (editors). Prob Respir Care 1988;1(2):174-191.
52. Nochomovitz ML, Montenegro HD, Parran S, Daly B. Placement alternatives for ventilator-dependent patients outside the intensive care unit. Respir Care 1991; 36(3):199-204.
53. American Medical Association Home Care Advisory Panel. Guidelines for the medical management of the home care patient. 1992.
54. Miller JR, Colbert AP, Schock NC. Ventilator use in progressive neuromuscular disease: impact on patients and their families. Dev Med Child Neurol 1988;30 (2):200-207.
55. Moss AH, Casey P, Stocking CB, Roos RP, Brooks BR, Siegler M. Home ventilation for amyotrophic lateral sclerosis patients: outcomes, costs, and patient, family, and physician attitudes. Neurology 1993;43:438-443.
56. Sivak ED, Cordasco EM, Gipson WT, Mehta A. Home care ventilation: the Cleveland Clinic experience from 1977 to 1985. Respir Care 1986;31(4):294-302.
57. Hänninen P, Wendelin H, Räsänen O, Panelius M. Chronic respiratory paralysis. Acta Paediatr 1972; 228(Suppl):1-32.
58. Gilgoff I, Prentice W, Baydur A. Patient and family participation in the management of respiratory failure in Duchenne's muscular dystrophy. Chest 1989;95(3): 519-524.
59. Schreiner MS, Downes JJ, Kettrick RG, Ise C, Voit R. Chronic respiratory failure in infants with prolonged ventilator dependency. JAMA 1987;258(23):3398-3404.
60. Strumpf DA, Millman RP, Hill NS. The management of chronic hypoventilation. Chest 1990;98(2):474-480.
61. Pierson DJ. Home respiratory care in different countries. Eur Respir J 1989;2(7, Suppl):630S-636S.
62. Adams AB, Whitman J, Marcy T. Surveys of long-term ventilatory support in Minnesota: 1986 and 1992. Chest 1993;103(5):1463-69.
63. Silverstein MD, Stocking CB, Antel JP. Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis and life-sustaining therapy: patient's desires for information, participation in decision making, and life-sustaining therapy. Mayo Clin Proc 1991;66:906-913.
64. Snider GL. Thirty years of mechanical ventilation: changing implications (commentary). Arch Intern Med 1983;143:745-749.
65. Daley White K, Walsh Perez P. Your ventilator patient can go home again. Nursing 1986;12:54-56.
66. American Association for Respiratory Care. AARC clinical practice guideline: discharge planning for the respiratory care patient. Respir Care 1995;40(12): 1308-1312.
67. Kacmarek RM, Spearman CB. Equipment used for ventilatory support in the home. Respir Care 1986;31 (4):311-328.
68. Hodgkin JE. Non-ventilator aspects of care for ventilator-assisted patients. Respir Care 1986;31(4):334-337
69. DeWitt PK, Jansen MT, Davidson Ward SL, Keens TG. Obstacles to discharge of ventilator-assisted children from the hospital to home. Chest 1993;103(5):1560-1565.
70. Pierson DJ. Complications associated with mechanical ventilation. Crit Care Clin 1990;6(3):711-724.
71. Harrison GM Jr, Mitchell MB. The medical and social outcome of 200 respirator and former respirator patients on home care. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 1961;42: 590-598.
72. Quint RD, Chesterman E, Crain LS, Winkleby M, Boyce WT. Home care for ventilator-dependent children. AJDC 1990;144:1238-1241.
73. Drinker P, McKhann CF. The use of a new apparatus for the prolonged administration of artificial ventilation: a fatal case of poliomyelitis. JAMA 1929;255(11):1473-1475, 1658-1660.
74. Kacmarek RM, Stanek KS, McMahon K, Wilson RS. Imposed work of breathing during synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation (SIMV) provided by five home care ventilators. Respir Care 1990;35(5):405-414.
75. Kacmarek RM. Essential gas delivery features of mechanical ventilators. Respir Care 1992;37(9):1045-1055.
76. Robart P, Hirsch C, Barker S, Kacmarek R. Work of breathing imposed during spontaneous breathing in the SIMV mode of home care ventilators (abstract). Respir Care 1992;37(11):1358-1360.
77. American Association for Respiratory Care. AARC clinical practice guideline: humidification during mechanical ventilation. Respir Care 1992;37(8):887-890.
78. Branson RD, Chatburn RL. Humidification of inspired gases during mechanical ventilation (editorial). Respir Care 1993;38(5):461-468.
79. Shelly MP. Inspired gas conditioning. Respir Care 1992;37(9):1070-1080.

80. Misset B, Escudier B, Rivara D, Leclercq B, Nitenberg G. Heat and moisture exchanger vs heated humidifier during long-term mechanical ventilation. Chest 1991; 100(1):160-163.
81. Branson RD, Hurst JM, Laboratory evaluation of moisture output of seven airway heat and moisture exchangers. Respir Care 1987;32(9):741-747.
82. Gietzen JW, Lund JA, Swegarden JL. Effect of PEEP-valve placement on function of a home-care ventilator. Respir Care 1991;36(10):1093-1098.
83. Carlon GC, Ray C, Miodownik S, Kopec I, Groeger JS. Capnography in mechanically ventilated patients. Crit Care Med 88;16(5):550-556.
84. Stock MC. Capnography for adults. Crit Care Clin 1995;11(1):219-232.
85. Hess DR, Burns EC, Romagnoli DM, Kacmarek RM. Weekly ventilator circuit changes. A strategy to reduce costs without affecting pneumonia rates. Anesthesiology 1995;82(4):903-911.
86. Kollef MG, Shapiro SD, Fraser VJ, Silver, P, Murphy DM, Trovillion E, et al. Mechanical ventilation with or without 7-day circuit changes. A randomized controlled trial. Ann Intern Med 1995;123(3):168-174.

## ADDITIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Goldberg AI, Monahan CA. Home health care for children assisted by mechanical ventilation: the physician's perspective. J Pedriatr 1989;114(3):378-383.

Bone RC. Long-term ventilator care: a Chicago problem and a national problem. Chest 1987;92(3):536-539.

Indihar FJ, Forsberg DP. Experience with a prolonged respiratory care unit. Chest 1982;81(2):189-192.

Indihar FJ, Walker NE. Experience with a prolonged respiratory care unit: revisited. Chest 1984;86(4):616-620.

Wagner DP. Economics of prolonged mechanical ventilation. Am Rev Respir Dis 1989;140(Suppl):S14-S18.

Gracey DR, Viggiano RW, Naessens JM, Hubmayr RD, Silverstein MD, Koenig GE. Outcomes of patients admitted to a chronic ventilator-dependent unit in an acute-care hospital. Mayo Clin Proc 1992;67:131-136.

American Association of Respiratory Care. Guidelines for disinfection of respiratory care equipment used in the home. Respir Care 1988;33(9):801-808.

Chatburn RL. Decontamination of respiratory care equipment: what can be done, what should be done. Respir Care 1989;34(2):98-109.

Davis PB, di Sant'Agnese PA. Assisted ventilation for patients with cystic fibrosis. JAMA 1978;239(18):1851-1854.

Zwillich CW, Pierson DJ, Creagh CE, Sutton FD, Schatz E, Petty TL. Complications of assisted ventilation: a prospective study of 354 consecutive episodes. Am J Med 1974;57:161-170.

Stauffer JL, Olson DE, Petty TL. Complications and consequences of endotracheal intubation and tracheotomy: a prospective study of 150 critically ill adult patients. Am J Med 1981;70:65-76.

Craven DE, Kunches LM, Kilinsky V, Lichtenberg DA, Make BJ, McCabe WR. Risk factors for pneumonia and fatality in patients receiving continuous mechanical ventilation. Am Rev Respir Dis 1986;133:792-796.

Dreyfuss D, Djedaini K, Weber P, Brun P, Lanore JJ, Rahmani J, Boussougant Y, Coste F. Prospective study of nosocomial pneumonia and of patient and circuit colonization during mechanical ventilation with circuit changes every 48 hours versus no change. Am Rev Respir Dis 1991; 143:738-743.

Craven DE, Goularte TA, Make BJ. Contaminated condensate in mechanical ventilator circuits: a risk factor for nosocomial pneumonia? Am Rev Respir Dis 1984;129:625-628.

Pierson DJ, George RB. Mechanical ventilation in the home: possibilities and prerequisites. Respir Care 1986;31 (4):266-270.

Interested persons may photocopy these Guidelines for noncommercial purposes of scientific or educational advancement. Please credit AARC and Respiratory Care Journal.

# AARC Clinical Practice Guideline

## Capnography/Capnometry during Mechanical Ventilation

### $CO_2$ MV 1.0 PROCEDURE:

Capnography comprises the continuous analysis and recording of carbon dioxide concentrations [$CO_2$] in respiratory gases. Although the terms capnography and capnometry are sometimes considered synonymous, capnometry suggests measurement (ie, analysis alone) without a continuous written record or waveform.

### $CO_2$ MV 2.0 DESCRIPTION/DEFINITION:

For the purposes of this Guideline, capnography refers to the evaluation of the [$CO_2$] in the respiratory gases of mechanically ventilated patients. A capnographic device incorporates one of two types of analyzers: mainstream or sidestream.[1,2] Mainstream analyzers insert a sampling window into the ventilator circuit for measurement of $CO_2$, whereas a sidestream analyzer aspirates gas from the ventilator circuit, and the analysis occurs away from the ventilator circuit. Analyzers utilize infrared, mass or Raman spectra, or a photoacoustic spectra technology.[3,4]

### $CO_2$ MV 3.0 SETTING:

This procedure may be performed by trained health care personnel in any setting in which mechanically ventilated patients are found—for example, the hospital, the extended care facility, or during transport.

### $CO_2$ MV 4.0 INDICATIONS:

On the basis of available evidence, capnography should not be mandated for all patients receiving mechanical ventilatory support, but it may be indicated for

**4.1** evaluation of the exhaled [$CO_2$], especially end-tidal $CO_2$, which is the maximum partial pressure of $CO_2$ exhaled during a tidal breath (just prior to the beginning of inspiration) and is designated $P_{etCO_2}$;[5,6]

**4.2** monitoring severity of pulmonary disease[5] and evaluating response to therapy, especially therapy intended to improve the ratio of dead space to tidal volume ($V_D/V_T$)[7,8] and the matching of ventilation to perfusion (V/Q),[9] and, possibly, to therapy intended to increase coronary blood flow;[5,10,11]

**4.3** determining that tracheal rather than esophageal intubation has taken place (low or absent cardiac output may negate its use for this indication);[12-16]

**4.4** continued monitoring of the integrity of the ventilatory circuit, including the artificial airway;[12,15]

**4.5** evaluation of the efficiency of mechanical ventilatory support by determination of the difference between the arterial partial pressure for $CO_2$ ($P_{aCO_2}$) and the $P_{etCO_2}$;[17,18]

**4.6** reflecting $CO_2$ elimination;[19]

**4.7** monitoring adequacy of pulmonary and coronary blood flow;[10,11,20-22]

**4.8** monitoring inspired $CO_2$ when $CO_2$ gas is being therapeutically administered;[23]

**4.9** graphic evaluation of the ventilator-patient interface. Evaluation of the capnogram may be useful in detecting rebreathing of $CO_2$, obstructive pulmonary disease, waning neuromuscular blockade ('curare cleft'), cardiogenic oscillations, esophageal intubation, cardiac arrest, and contamination of the monitor or sampling line with secretions or mucus.[24]

### $CO_2$ MV 5.0 CONTRAINDICATIONS:

There are no absolute contraindications to capnography in mechanically ventilated adults provided that the data obtained are evaluated with consideration given to the patient's clinical condition.

**$CO_2$ MV 6.0 HAZARDS/COMPLICATIONS:**

Capnography with a clinically approved device is a safe, noninvasive test, associated with few hazards. With mainstream analyzers, the use of too large a sampling window may introduce an excessive amount of dead space into the ventilator circuit.[2,25] Care must be taken to minimize the amount of additional weight placed on the artificial airway by the addition of the sampling window or, in the case of a sidestream analyzer, the sampling line.

**$CO_2$ MV 7.0 LIMITATIONS OF PROCEDURE OR DEVICE:**

Capnography, when performed using a device calibrated and operated as recommended by the manufacturer, has few limitations. It is important to note that although the capnograph provides valuable information about the efficiency of ventilation (as well as pulmonary and coronary perfusion), it is not a replacement or substitute for assessing the $P_{aCO_2}$.[17,24,26-28] The difference between $P_{etCO_2}$ and $P_{aCO_2}$ increases as dead-space volume increases. In fact, the difference between the $P_{aCO_2}$ and $P_{etCO_2}$ has been shown to vary within the same patient over time.[29-32]

Certain situations may affect the reliability of the capnogram. The extent to which the reliability is affected varies somewhat among types of devices (infrared,[33] photoacoustic, mass spectrometry, and Raman spectrometry). Limitations include

**7.1** The composition of the respiratory gas mixture may affect the capnogram (depending on the measurement technology incorporated).

**7.1.1** The infrared spectrum of $CO_2$ has some similarities to the spectra for both oxygen and nitrous oxide.[33] High concentrations of either or both oxygen or nitrous oxide may affect the capnogram, and, therefore, a correction factor should be incorporated into the calibration of any capnograph used in such a setting.[34]

**7.1.2** The reporting algorithm of some devices (primarily mass spectrometers) assumes that the only gases present in the sample are those that the device is capable of measuring.[35] When a gas that the mass spectrometer cannot detect (such as helium) is present, the reported values of $CO_2$ are incorrectly elevated in proportion to the concentration of helium present.

**7.2** The breathing frequency may affect the capnograph. High breathing frequencies may exceed the response capabilities of the capnograph.[36] In addition, the breathing frequency, above 10 breaths/min, has been shown to affect devices differently.[37]

**7.3** The presence of Freon (used as a propellant in metered dose inhalers) in the respiratory gas has been shown to artificially increase the $CO_2$ reading of mass spectrometers (ie, to show an apparent increase in $[CO_2]$). A similar effect has not yet been demonstrated with Raman or infrared spectrometers.[38]

**7.4** Contamination of the monitor or sampling system by secretions or condensate, a sample tube of excessive length, a sampling rate that is too high, or obstruction of the sampling chamber can lead to unreliable results.

**$CO_2$ MV 8.0 ASSESSMENT OF NEED:**

Capnography is considered a standard of care during anesthesia.[12] The Society of Critical Care Medicine has suggested that capnography be available in every ICU.[39] Assessment of the need to use capnography with a specific patient should be guided by the clinical situation. The patient's primary cause of respiratory failure and the acuteness of his or her condition should be considered. Patients with severe dynamic disease, such as ARDS, should be considered candidates for capnography.[5,6]

**$CO_2$ MV 9.0 ASSESSMENT OF OUTCOME:**

Results should reflect the patient's condition and should validate the basis for ordering the monitoring. Documentation of results (along with all ventilatory, and hemodynamic variables available), therapeutic interventions, and/or clinical decisions made based on the capnogram should be included in the patient's chart.

**$CO_2$ MV 10.0 RESOURCES:**

**10.1** Equipment: The capnograph and accessories (eg, airway adapter, sampling tube, depending on capnograph). The capnograph

should be calibrated as recommended by the manufacturer, with calibration quality gases in the clinical range of [$CO_2$].

**10.2** Personnel: Licensed or credentialed respiratory care practitioners or individuals with similar credentials (eg, MD, RN) who have the necessary training and demonstrated skills to correctly calibrate and evaluate the capnograph, assess the patient and the patient-ventilator system, and the ability to exercise appropriate clinical judgment.

## $CO_2$ MV 11.0 MONITORING:

During capnography the following should be considered and monitored

**11.1** ventilatory variables: tidal volume, respiratory rate, positive end-expiratory pressure, inspiratory-to-expiratory time ratio (I:E), peak airway pressure, and concentrations of respiratory gas mixture;[24,26]

**11.2** hemodynamic variables: systemic and pulmonary blood pressures, cardiac output, shunt, and ventilation-perfusion imbalances.[24,26]

## $CO_2$ MV 12.0 FREQUENCY:

Capnography (or, at least, capnometry) should be available during endotracheal intubation.[12,13,15,26] Capnography is not indicated for every mechanically ventilated patient; however, when it is used, the measurement period should be long enough to allow determination of the $P_{aCO_2}$-$P_{etCO_2}$ difference, note changes in $P_{aCO_2}$-$P_{etCO_2}$ difference as a result of therapy, and allow interpretation of observed trends.

## $CO_2$ MV 13.0 INFECTION CONTROL:

No specific precautions are necessary although Universal Precautions (as described by the Centers for Disease Control & Prevention)[40] and precautions designed to limit the spread of tuberculosis[41] should always be implemented during patient care.

**13.1** The sensor (the portion of the device contacting the patient's airway) should be subjected to high-level disinfection between patients, according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

**13.2** The monitor (the portion not contacting the patient or the patient's airway) should be cleaned as needed according to manufacturer's recommendations.

### *Mechanical Ventilation Focus Group*

*Robert S Campbell RRT,* Chairman, Cincinnati OH
*Richard D Branson RRT,* Cincinnati OH
*William "Chuck" Burke PhD RRT,* Indianapolis
*Jack Covington RRT BA CPFT,* San Francisco CA
*John Graybeal CRTT,* Hershey PA

### REFERENCES


1. Hess DR, Branson RD. Noninvasive respiratory monitoring equipment. In: Branson RD, Hess DR, Chatburn RL, eds. Respiratory care equipment. Philadelphia: Lippincott, 1994:184-216.
2. Block FE, McDonald JS. Sidestream versus mainstream carbon dioxide analyzers. J Clin Monit 1992;8:139-141.
3. O'Flaherty D. Capnometry. London: BMJ Publishing Group, 1994:21-54.
4. VanWagenen RA, Westenskow DR, Benner RE, Gregonis DE, Coleman DL. Dedicated monitoring of anesthetic and respirator gases by Raman scattering. J Clin Monit 1986;2:215-222.
5. Carlon GC, Ray C, Miodownik S, Kopec I, Groeger JS. Capnography in mechanically ventilated patients. Crit Care Med 1988;16(5):550-556.
6. Gravenstein N, Good ML. Noninvasive assessment of cardiopulmonary function. In: Civetta JM, Taylor RW, Kirby RR, (ed) Critical Care. Lippincott, Philadelphia. 1988:291-311.
7. Yamanaka MK, Sue DY. Comparison of arterial-end-tidal $P_{CO_2}$ difference and dead space/tidal volume ratio in respiratory failure. Chest 1987;92(5):832-835.
8. Poppius H, Korhonen O, Viljanen AA, Kreus KE. Arterial to end-tidal $CO_2$ difference in respiratory disease. Scand J Respir Dis 1975;56(5):254-262.
9. Burrows FA. Physiologic dead space, venous admixture, and the arterial to end-tidal carbon dioxide difference in infants and children undergoing cardiac surgery. Anesthesiology 1989;70(2):219-225.
10. Kern KB, Sanders, AB, Voorhees, WD, Babbs CF, Tacker WA, Ewy GA. Changes in expired end-tidal carbon dioxide during cardiopulmonary resuscitation in dogs: a prognostic guide for resuscitation effort. J Am Coll Cardiol 1989;13(5):1184-1189.
11. Sanders AB, Atlas M, Ewy GA, Kern KB, Bragg S. Expired $P_{CO_2}$ as an index of coronary perfusion pressure. Am J Emerg Med 1985;3(2):147-149.
12. Eichhorn JH, Cooper JB, Cullen DJ, Maier WR, Philip JH, Seeman RG. Standards for patient monitoring during anesthesia at Harvard Medical School. JAMA 1986; 256(8):1017-1020.
13. Birmingham PK, Cheney FW, Ward RJ. Esophageal intubation: A review of detection techniques. Anesth Analg 1986;65(8):886-891.

14. Sanders AB. Capnometry in emergency medicine. Ann Emerg Med 1989;18(12):1287-1290.
15. Murray JP, Modell JH. Early detection of endotracheal tube accidents by monitoring carbon dioxide concentration in respiratory gas. Anesthesiology 1983;59(4):344-346.
16. Roberts WA, Maniscalco AR et al. The use of capnography for recognition of esophageal intubation in the neonatal intensive care unit. Pediatr Pulmonol 1995; 19:262.
17. Graybeal JM, Russell GB. Capnometry in the surgical ICU: an analysis of the arterial-to-end-tidal carbon dioxide difference. Respir Care 1993;38:923-928.
18. Braman SS, Dunn SM, Amico CA, Millman RP. Complications of intrahospital transport of critically ill patients. Ann Internal Med 1987;107(4):469-473.
19. Morley TF, Giaimo J, Maroszan E, Bermingham J, Gordon R, Griesback R, Zappasodi SJ, Giudice JC. Use of capnography for assessment of the adequacy of alveolar ventilation during weaning from mechanical ventilation. Am Rev Respir Dis 1993;148(2):339-344.
20. Kalenda Z. The capnogram as a guide to the efficacy of cardiac massage. Resuscitation 1978;6(4):259-263.
21. Sanders AB, Ewy GA, Bragg S, Atlas M, Kern KB. Expired $p_{CO_2}$ as prognostic indicator of successful resuscitation from cardiac arrest. Ann Emerg Med 1985;14 (10):948-952.
22. Shibutani K, Muraoka M, Shirasaki S, Kubal K, Sanchala VT, Gupte P. Do changes in end-tidal $P_{CO_2}$ quantitatively reflect changes in cardiac output? Anesth Analg 1994;79(5):829-833.
23. Fatigante L, Cartei F, Ducci F, Marini C, Predilletto R, Caciagli P, Laddaga M. Carbogen breathing in patients with gliblastoma multiforme submitted to radiotherapy: assessment of gas exchange parameters. Acta Oncol 1994;33(7):807-811.
24. Bhavani-Shankar K, Moseley H, Kumar AY, Delphi Y. Capnometry and anesthesia. Can J Anesth 1992;39(6): 617-632.
25. Szaflarski NL, Cohen NH. Use of capnography in critically ill adults. Heart Lung 1991;20(4):363-374. Erratum Heart Lung 1991 Nov;20(6):630.
26. Hess D. Capnometry and capnography: Technical aspects, physiologic aspects, and clinical applications. Respir Care 1990;35:557-573.
27. Isert P. Control of carbon dioxide levels during neuroanesthesia: current practice and an appraisal of our reliance upon capnography. Anaesth Intensive Care 1994; 22(4):435-441.
28. Jellinek H, Hiesmayr M, Simon P, Klepetko W, Haider W. Arterial to end-tidal $CO_2$ tension difference after bilateral lung transplantation. Crit Care Med 1993;21 (7):1035-1040.
29. Russell GB, Graybeal JM. End-tidal carbon dioxide as an indicator of arterial carbon dioxide in neurointensive care patients. J Neurosurg Anesth 1992;4:245-249.
30. Russell GB, Graybeal JM. Reliability of the arterial to end-tidal carbon dioxide gradient in mechanically ventilated patients with multisystem trauma. J Trauma 1994; 36(3):317-322.
31. Russell GB, Graybeal JM. The arterial to end-tidal carbon dioxide difference in neurosurgical patients during craniotomy. Anesth Analg 1995;81(4):806-810.
32. Hess D, Schlottag A, Levin B, Mathai J, Rexrode WO. An evaluation of the usefulness of end-tidal $P_{CO_2}$ to aid weaning from mechanical ventilation following cardiac surgery. Respir Care 1991;36:837-843.
33. Ammann ECB, Galvin RD. Problems associated with the determination of carbon dioxide by infrared absorption. J Appl Physiol 1968;25(3):333-335.
34. Severinghaus JW, Larson CP, Eger EI. Correction factors for infrared carbon dioxide pressure broadening by nitrogen, nitrous oxide and cyclopropane. Anesthesiology 1961;22:429-432.
35. Perkin-Elmer MGA 1100 Operation and Maintenance Manual. 1982:6-26.
36. From RP, Scamman FL. Ventilatory frequency influences accuracy of end-tidal $CO_2$ 70.
37. Graybeal JM, Russell GB. Relative agreement between Raman and Mass Spectrometry for measuring end-tidal carbon dioxide. Respir Care 1994;39:190-194.
38. Elliott WR, Raemer DB, Goldman DB, Philip JH. The effects of bronchodilator-inhaler aerosol propellants on respiratory gas monitors. J Clin Monit 1991;7:175-180.
39. Society of Critical Care Medicine: Task force on guidelines. Recommendations for services and personnel for delivery of care in a critical care setting. Crit Care Med 1988;16(8):809-811.
40. Centers for Disease Control. Update: Universal Precautions for prevention of transmission of human immunodeficiency virus, hepatitis B virus, and other bloodborne pathogens in health-care settings. MMWR 1988;37:377-382,387-388.
41. Centers for Disease Control. Guidelines for preventing the transmission of tuberculosis in health-care settings, with special focus on HIV-related tissues. MMWR 1990;39(RR-17):1-29.

Interested persons may photocopy these Guidelines for noncommercial purposes of scientific or educational advancement. Please credit AARC and RESPIRATORY CARE Journal.

# AARC Clinical Practice Guideline

## Selection of an Aerosol Delivery Device for Neonatal and Pediatric Patients

**NPAM 1.0 PROCEDURE:**

This guideline addresses the appropriate selection of a device for the administration of aerosolized medications by small volume nebulizer (SVN), large volume nebulizer (LVN), metered dose inhaler (MDI), and dry powder inhaler (DPI) to neonatal and pediatric patients. Recommendations are made for patients both with and without an artificial airway, those spontaneously breathing, and those requiring assisted positive-pressure breathing. Evidence suggests that in pediatric patients a properly used MDI is as effective for delivering medications as is an SVN.[1-5]

**NPAM 2.0 DESCRIPTION:**

Effective administration of medication as aerosol depends on the delivery system and its position in relation to the patient.[6,7] Aerosol particle deposition is influenced by particle size, ventilatory pattern, and airway architecture.[8] Effective medication response is also influenced by the dose of the medication used.[9-12] In the neonatal and pediatric population, the process for determining the doses of specific aerosolized medications is not completely understood.[13] Drug pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics are markedly altered in neonates and may require dose adjustments.[13-16] This guideline addresses characteristics of an aerosol delivery system.

This guideline provides recommendations to assist the clinician in selecting an aerosol delivery device based on the patient's ability. Identifying the ability of the patient (ie, coordination and generated flows, rather than specific age requirements) is essential to selecting the appropriate aerosol delivery device in any population.

The three principal elements of an aerosol delivery system are the generator, the power source, and the interface.[6,7] Generators include small volume nebulizers (SVN), large volume nebulizers (LVN), metered dose inhalers (MDI), and dry powder inhalers (DPI).[7,17] The power source is the mechanism by which the generator operates or is actuated and includes compressed gas for SVN and LVN and self-contained propellants for MDI.[7,17] The interface is the conduit between the generator and the patient and includes spacer devices/accessory devices with mouthpieces or face masks.[7,17] Depending on the patient's age (ability) and coordination, various interfaces are used in conjunction with SVN and MDI in order to optimize drug delivery.[7,17]

A SVN is a jet nebulizer that is powered by a compressed gas source. The medication is displaced up a capillary tube from the nebulizer's reservoir and is dispersed continuously as aerosolized particles.[7] The aerosolized particles are spontaneously inhaled by the patient or delivered in conjunction with positive-pressure breaths.[6,7] For patients > 3 years who are spontaneously breathing without an artificial airway and are able to cooperate, a mouthpiece with an extension reservoir should be used.[6,7] For patients unable to negotiate a mouthpiece (usually < 3 years), a face mask should be used.[18,19]

A MDI is a pressurized canister that contains a medication and propellant. Actuation of the MDI results in the ejection of one dose of medication as aerosolized particles, which can be spontaneously inhaled by the patient or delivered in conjunction with positive-pressure breaths.[7] A spacer device/accessory device should be used with an MDI. A spacer device enhances delivery by decreasing the velocity of the particles and reducing the number

of large particles.[20,21] A spacer device with a one-way valve, ie, holding chamber, eliminates the need for the patient to coordinate actuation and inhalation and optimizes drug delivery.[20,21] A spacer device without valves requires coordination between inhalation and actuation. The MDI with spacer device and face mask is appropriate for patients (usually < 3 years) unable to use a mouthpiece.[18,22-27]

A DPI is a breath-actuated device that uses a gelatin capsule containing a single dose of medication and a carrier substance to aid in the dispersion of the drug.[7] The capsule is inserted into the device and punctured.[28] The patient's inspiratory flow disperses the dry particles and draws them into the lower airways.[28] In spontaneously breathing patients, this device is appropriate in patients who are able to achieve an inspiratory flow ≥ 50 L/min. This usually corresponds to children > 6 years of age.[13,29]

A LVN can be used to deliver a dose of medication continuously over a period of time.[30,31] A LVN is powered by a compressed gas source, and a face mask is typically used as the interface.[30] There has been only limited investigation of its use in the neonatal and pediatric population.

**NPAM 3.0 SETTING:**

Aerosolized medications can be administered in a number of settings including hospitals, clinics, extended care facilities, the home, and during transportation.

**NPAM 4.0 INDICATIONS:**

An aerosol delivery system is indicated when a medication approved for inhalation is prescribed.

**NPAM 5.0 CONTRAINDICATIONS:**

**5.1** Contraindications associated with specific medications may exist. Pharmaceutical information should be consulted for relative contraindications.

**5.2** An MDI or DPI should not be used

**5.2.1** for patients with known allergies to medication preservatives;

**5.2.2** for patients unable to perform the respiratory maneuver required to disperse/deliver the drug.

- **NPAM 6.0 HAZARDS/COMPLICATIONS:**

**6.1** Aerosol delivery

**6.1.1** Malfunction of device and/or improper technique may result in underdosing. Overuse may result in overdosing.[32,33]

**6.1.2** Specific pharmacologic agents can produce adverse side effects.[34]

**6.1.3** The prescription of aerosol delivery devices for use in the home can lead to misuse if the user has not been properly trained.[33-35]

**6.2** SVN

**6.2.1** Continuous nebulizer flow increases tidal volume and associated pressure during volume-targeted ventilation.[36-38]

**6.2.2** Continuous flow creates a bias flow in the ventilator circuit and may interfere with patient-triggered modes of ventilation.[36-39]

**6.2.3** Continuous flow of aerosol may damage the expiratory flow transducers found in some ventilators.[37]

**6.2.4** The continuous flow of gas from a flowmeter or compressor to an inline nebulizer used with a continuous-flow ventilator may result in an excess of flow and may cause an increase in airway pressure and/or expiratory retard or PEEP.

**6.2.5** The continuous flow of gas from a flowmeter or compressor to an in-line nebulizer used with a ventilator may result in variable $F_{IO_2}$s.

**6.2.6** Aerosol particles may deposit and crystallize on expiratory mechanisms and may create inadvertent expiratory resistance or PEEP.[36,37]

**6.2.7** Medication reservoirs may become contaminated and can be a source of infection.[40]

**6.2.8** Diluents that are not isotonic may increase airway reactivity.[34]

**6.3** MDI

**6.3.1** The volume of gas discharged with actuation of the canister/inhaler may add a clinically important volume to tidal volume particularly in neonates.[37]

**6.3.2** Additional dead-space volume can

occur when a spacer device is placed at the end of an artificial airway.

**6.3.3** Volume of gas discharged from MDI may affect $F_{IO_2}$.

**6.3.4** Inappropriate patient use may result in underdosing or overdosing.

**6.3.5** Reaction to propellants and other additives including coughing and wheezing may occur.[34,41,42]

**6.3.6** Chlorofluorocarbons may contribute to ozone depletion.[43-45]

**6.3.7** Oropharyngeal impaction from corticosteroid supplied in MDI form may result in local side effects.[7,46]

**6.4** DPI

**6.4.1** Airway irritation from dry powder may occur.[7,28]

**6.4.2** Reaction to lactose or glucose carriers may occur.[7,28]

**6.5** LVN

**6.5.1** Side effects may occur at any time during continuous nebulization, and frequent assessment is required.[30,31]

**6.5.2** Medication reservoirs may become contaminated and can be a source of infection.[40]

**NPAM 7.0 LIMITATIONS OF PROCEDURE OR DEVICE:**

**7.1** SVN

**7.1.1** Deposition of medication into the lungs is reduced to as little as 2-10% of the dose,[6,8,14,47-52] and may vary from brand to brand and unit to unit of the same brand.

**7.1.1.1** Patients with smaller tidal volumes, particularly neonates[14,53-55] or dyspneic patients with shallow breathing may inhale less of the aerosolized agent and receive less of the dose when nebulization is continuous.[14,47,52]

**7.1.1.2** Patients with airways of smaller diameter may receive a smaller fraction of the total particles produced.[14,53,55-57]

**7.1.1.3** High inspiratory flows, as those associated with crying, may reduce deposition.

**7.1.1.4** Approximately one half the initial solution volume is deposited on the internal walls and reservoir of the SVN.[6,8,47,58-60]

**7.1.1.5** Concentration of the solution increases during nebulization resulting in retention of much of the dose in the SVN.[6,8,47,58,59] The effects of changing osmolality on bronchoreactivity are not clear.

**7.1.1.6** Aerosol is lost during the expiratory phase of breathing.[6]

**7.1.1.7** Treatment length may result in premature termination prior to complete nebulization of medication.[36]

**7.1.1.8** Fill volume in the SVN affects the output.[58]

**7.1.2** Use is labor intensive and costly.[61-64]

**7.1.3** Duration of treatment is variable and may be prolonged.[6,7,61,62] (Increasing diluent volume lengthens treatment time but may improve drug delivery.[8,58])

**7.1.4** The need for a power source makes the SVN less portable, particularly in the home setting.[6,7]

**7.1.5** SVNs require preparation and cleaning.[7]

**7.1.6** The brand of SVN used (ie, those that operate effectively only in the upright position).

**7.2** SVN in conjunction with positive-pressure breathing.

**7.2.1** Impaction of aerosol particles on artificial airways greatly reduces deposition.[37,65-71] The presence of artificial airways of smaller diameter results in a greater reduction in particle deposition and delivered dose.[6,7,67,71,72] The smaller the artificial airway, the greater the reduction in particle deposition.

**7.2.2** Limited research on use of aerosols in neonatal and pediatric patients has been published.[37,54,73]

**7.2.3** Aerosol delivery may be less effective in conjunction with manual ventilation than with mechanical ventilation.[13,72]

**7.2.4** Mechanical ventilator modes, flows, and flow patterns may affect particle deposition.[25,65,66,74]

**7.2.5** The presence of an in-line humidifier may reduce aerosol delivery by 50%.[37]

**7.2.6** Use of SVN with continuous-flow

ventilators may result in the loss of a large percentage of the aerosolized particles through the exhalation valve.[37]

**7.2.7** Positioning of the SVN too close to the artificial airway results in less airway deposition.[37,65,66,69,75]

**7.3** SVN with face mask

**7.3.1** Cold, wet mist may be irritating to children and may limit the time that the treatment is tolerated.[13]

**7.3.2** Nasal breathing results in a reduction in particle deposition.[57,76,77]

**7.3.3** Particle deposition is reduced because of upper airway impaction.[57,76,77]

**7. 4** MDI

**7.4.1** Use of an MDI without a spacer device with one-way valve (ie, holding chamber), requires the patient to coordinate the actuation of the canister with inhalation, which may be particularly difficult for small children (eg, < 7 years).[13,78]

**7.4.2** Use of an MDI without a spacer device results in greater oropharyngeal impaction and a reduction in airway deposition.[6,7,78,79]

**7.4.3** Use of an MDI without a spacer device may result in a cold sensation when the propellant reaches the back of the throat (ie, cold-Freon effect) that may interfere with proper delivery technique.[7,17,80]

**7.4.4** Inadequate or inaccurate instruction and technique may result in misuse and reduced aerosol deposition.[13,81-83]

**7.4.5** Propellants may cause bronchospasm in some patients with reactive airway diseases.[41]

**7.4.6** Average deposition in the lungs is 10% to 25% of the total dose.[49,84-86]

**7.4.7** Particle size varies with operating pressure which is directly related to canister temperature.

**7.5** MDI with spacer device

**7.5.1** Addition of the spacer/accessory device increases cost over cost of the MDI alone.[6,7]

**7.5.2** The spacer/accessory device is relatively cumbersome and less convenient than the MDI alone.[6,7]

**7.5.3** All spacer/accessory devices may not fit all MDIs.

**7.5.4** All spacer devices/accessory devices do not eliminate coordination problems.

**7.5.4.1** A spacing/accessory device with a one-way valve (ie, holding chamber) eliminates coordination problem.

**7.5.4.2** Open tube spacer/accessory devices (non-valved) require coordination.

**7.6** MDI with spacer device-face mask—The inspiratory flow and the number of inhalations required by neonates and small children (< 3 years) to effectively use these devices is not completely understood.[13,52,54,87]

**7.7** MDI with spacer device designed for mechanical ventilation

**7.7.1** Research is limited in this population.[13,21]

**7.7.2** The smaller the diameter of the artificial airway, the greater the reduction in particle deposition and delivered dose.[13,37,88]

**7.7.3** Particle deposition may be as low a 2-10% of the total drug delivered.[13,3769,89-91]

**7.7.4** Use of an elbow-type spacer results in less airway deposition than a chamber-type spacer.[36,87,89,92]

**7.7.5** The chamber type spacer if left inline with a ventilator circuit potentially increases the compressible volume of the ventilator circuit.

**7.7.6** The gas discharged from the MDI may affect $F_{IO_2}$.

**7.8** DPI

**7.8.1** Reduced inspiratory flow (< 50 L/min) can lead to reduced deposition.[14,29,92,93] This may be more likely in children < 6 years[13,29] and in an acute exacerbation when peak flows are significantly reduced.

**7.8.2** Some drug preparations are water soluble and, thus, humidity may affect DPI performance.[6,7]

**7.8.3** Oropharyngeal impaction of much of the dose occurs and results in a reduction in lower airway deposition.[14,28]

**7.8.4** The patient must be able to load each dose, for most medications.[47]

**7.8.5** Average deposition in the lungs is 10-25% of the total dose.[7,13,92,94]

**7.9** LVN with mask

**7.9.1** The use of LVN for continuous nebulization in the pediatric population has not been widely investigated.[30,95]

**7.9.2** Cold, wet mist may be irritating to children and may limit the time that the treatment is tolerated.[13]

**7.9.3** Nasal breathing results in a reduction in lower airway deposition.[57,76,77]

**7.9.4** Bronchial deposition is reduced because of upper airway impaction.[57,76,77]

**7.9.5** Limited to use in a critical care setting. Not appropriate for home use.

**7.10** Drug pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics are markedly altered in neonates and may require dose adjustments.[13-16]

**NPAM 8.0 ASSESSMENT OF NEED:**

**8.1** SVN: General Indications

**8.1.1** The need to deliver aerosolized medications that are approved in solution form to the lower airway of spontaneously breathing patients with or without an instrumented airway.[6,7,13]

**8.1.2** The need to provide supplemental gas flow in conjunction with aerosol treatment.[7]

**8.1.3** The need to modify drug concentration.[7]

**8.1.4** The need to deliver a particular aerosolized medication that is only available in solution form.

**8.1.5** The need to deliver aerosolized medications to patients in acute distress or with reduced inspiratory flow.

**8.1.6** The need to deliver aerosolized medications to patients who are unable to coordinate or perform the necessary inspiratory maneuvers required with an MDI or DPI.

**8.2** SVN with mouthpiece and extension reservoir—The need to deliver aerosolized medications approved in solution form to the lower airways of spontaneously breathing patients without an instrumented airway who are able to utilize a mouthpiece (patients > 3 years).[6,7]

**8.3** SVN with face mask

**8.3.1** The need to deliver aerosolized medications that are approved in solution form to the lower airways of spontaneously breathing patients without an instrumented airway who are unable to negotiate a mouthpiece (usually < 3 years).[18,19]

**8.3.2** The need to deliver aerosolized medications to the upper airway.

**8.4** SVN with T-connector (15-mm and 22-mm openings)

**8.4.1** The need to deliver aerosolized medications approved in solution form inline with a mechanical ventilator circuit or manual resuscitation bag.[74,96]

**8.4.2** The need to deliver aerosolized medications approved in solution form to patients with instrumented airways who are spontaneously breathing.

**8.5** MDI: General indications

**8.5.1** The need to deliver aerosolized medications that are approved in MDI form.[18]

**8.5.2** The need to deliver a particular medication that is only available in MDI form.

**8.5.3** The need to reduce the length of time for the aerosol treatment.

**8.5.4** The need for maximum portability.[55]

**8.6** MDI with spacer device with one-way valve—

**8.6.1** The spacer device with one-way valve and face mask is appropriate for small children (usually < 3 years) and others unable to use a mouthpiece.[18,22-27,97]

**8.6.2** The need to eliminate actuation and inspiratory maneuver coordination.[20,21]

**8.6.3** The need to reduce oropharyngeal impaction,[20,21]particularly with the delivery of corticosteroids by inhalation.[98,99]

**8.6.4** The valved-spacer device with mouthpiece is the method of choice if patient is able to use a mouthpiece.

**8.6.5** A specially designed spacer device is used for MDI-delivery during mechanical ventilation or with manual resuscitators.[73,100]

**8.7** MDI with a non-valved spacer device

**8.7.1** The need to use a MDI when a patient can coordinate inspiration and actuation.

**8.7.2** The need to reduce oropharyngeal impaction,[20,21] particularly with the delivery of corticosteroids by inhalation.[98,99]

**8.9** DPI

**8.9.1** The need to deliver aerosolized medications approved in DPI form.[38,101,102]

**8.9.2** The need to deliver a particular

medication that is only available in DPI form.[38,101,102]

**8.9.3** The need to eliminate chlorofluorocarbon propellants.

**8.10** LVN—The need to deliver continuously aerosolized medication, approved in solution form, to the lower airway of spontaneously breathing patients without an instrumented airway.[31]

## NPAM 9.0 ASSESSMENT OF OUTCOME:

**9.1** Desired medication effect is observed as indicated by an improvement in subjective (physical examination) and objective (pulmonary function measurements) assessments.[19,31,103-108]

**9.2** Health care providers demonstrate competency with proper technique and patient instruction of aerosol delivery systems.[33]

**9.3** Patients and patients' family members demonstrate proper technique and compliance with the application of aerosol delivery systems.[33]

## NPAM 10.0 RESOURCES

**10.1** Equipment

**10.1.1** SVN capable of producing a high drug output, short nebulization time, aerosol particles with a mass median aerodynamic diameter (MMAD) $\leq 5\ \mu$, and with a low residual volume.[8,55,58,60] Characteristics of nebulizers may vary among brands and among units of the same brand.

**10.1.1.1** Power source such as hospital compressed oxygen or air, portable oxygen or air cylinder, or domiciliary air compressor capable of producing a flow of at least 6-8 L/min.[6-8,58,108]

**10.1.1.2** A blender for use with a ventilator to maintain desired $F_{IO_2}$.

**10.1.2** Interface

**10.1.2.1** Face mask for small children unable to utilize a mouthpiece which may include an additional 6-inch section of aerosol tubing.[18,19]

**10.1.2.2** Mouthpiece with extension reservoir.[6]

**10.1.2.3** T-connector with 15- and 22-mm openings or tracheostomy collar adaptation for patients with artificial airway and/or receiving aerosolized medications in conjunction with a manual resuscitation bag.

**10.1.2.4** T-connector with inspiratory circuit reservoir for patients receiving aerosolized medications in conjunction with mechanical ventilation.[65]

**10.1.3** Medication and isotonic diluent.

**10.1.3.1** MDI, which includes the medication canister and actuator, with appropriate accessories for patient's ability and circumstances.

**10.1.3.1.1** Chamber-style spacer with mouthpiece or mask, depending on the patient's ability.[109]

**10.1.3.1.2** Chamber-style spacer with inspiratory circuit configuration for patients receiving aerosolized medications in conjunction with mechanical ventilation.[91]

**10.1.3.1.3** Chamber-style spacer configured for patients with artificial airways and/or receiving aerosolized medications in conjunction with a manual resuscitation bag, placed between airway and bag.

**10.3.1** DPI with accompanying medication capsule and dispenser.

**10.4.1** LVN capable of producing aerosol particles with a mass median aerodynamic diameter (MMAD) $\leq 5\ \mu$ with face mask.

**10.5** Personnel

**10.5.1** Health care providers responsible for delivery of aerosolized medications should have demonstrated and documented knowledge and skills related to

**10.5.1.1** aerosol delivery devices and their limitations;[110]

**10.5.1.2** assembly, care and use of aerosol delivery devices;[110]

**10.5.1.3** provision of comprehensive patient and lay caregiver instruction;[18,111,112]

**10.5.1.4** medications being delivered including contraindications, potential side effects and desired response;[110]

**10.5.1.5** recognition and response to adverse reactions during medication delivery and modification of treatment accordingly;[110]

**10.5.1.6** performance of the necessary subjective and objective assessments in order to determine medication efficacy and the patient's ability to properly utilize aerosol delivery devices.

**10.5.2** Patient and/or family member or lay caregiver should

**10.5.2.1** demonstrate proper use and understanding of aerosol delivery device and delivery technique;[32,108]

**10.5.2.2** demonstrate proper assembly, cleaning, care of aerosol delivery device, and medication preparation;[32,108]

**10.5.2.3** demonstrate an understanding of medication purpose, dosage, indications, and side effects, be able to alter medication as needed,[108] and know when to report to physician or surrogate.

## NPAM 11.0 MONITORING

**11.1** Observe delivery technique of spontaneously breathing patients who are able to self-administer aerosolized medications.

**11.1.1** A slow deep inhalation with an inspiratory pause/hold is performed during SVN treatments.[55] A flow of 6-8 L/min and fill volume of 4 mL (dependent upon the brand of SVN used) provide a maximum volume of delivered drug.[53] The sides of the SVN are periodically tapped in order to minimize the dead volume (ie, volume of solution not nebulized) and maximize the volume nebulized.[53]

**11.1.2** MDI actuation occurs at end-exhalation followed by a slow inspiration and breath hold for 10 seconds.[55,111,112]

**11.1.3** Patient is able to produce a rapid inhalation in order to fully activate and discharge DPI.[101]

**11.2** Observe patient and/or patient's family member following instruction and demonstration.[108]

**11.2.1** Proper understanding and return-demonstration of delivery device and accompanying equipment is observed.[47,108]

**11.2.2** Proper understanding and preparation of medication is observed.[47,108]

**11.3** Observe response to medication by performing subjective (eg, physical examination) and objective (eg, pulmonary function measurements) assessments and other diagnostic techniques that are appropriate for the specific medication being delivered.[19,31,103-107]

**11.3.1** Ensure that medication volume is nebulized over desired amount of time when using LVN.

**11.3.2** Continuous monitoring of ECG is recommended when delivering a bronchodilator by LVN.

**11.4** Monitor ventilator function for inadvertent increases in tidal volume or airway pressures, changes in $F_{IO_2}$, difficulty with patient triggering and patient-ventilator synchrony, or other system problems.[36]

**11.5** Documentation

**11.5.1** Successful training of patients and/or patient's family member are documented in the patient's medical record.[33,108]

**11.5.2** Treatments administered in a clinical setting are documented in the patient's medical record. Information on medication dose, frequency, response and adverse reactions are included.

## NPAM 12.0 FREQUENCY

Aerosol delivery devices are used according to the frequency of the prescribed medication.

## NPAM 13.0 INFECTION CONTROL

**13.1** Universal Precautions and measures to limit the transmission of tuberculosis must be adhered to at all times.[113,114]

**13.2** SVN are for single patient use.

**13.2.1** Between treatments on the same patient, disinfect, rinse with sterile water, and air-dry.[40] In the home environment, cleaning, rinsing with solution of vinegar and water, and air drying may be adequate, although clear evidence to support this procedure is lacking.

**13.2.2** Between patients, replace SVN with those that have undergone high level disinfection or sterilization.[40]

**13.3** MDI, DPI and accessories are for single patient use only. Clean or replace when they appear dirty.

**13.4** LVN are for single patient use. LVN

should be subjected to high-level disinfection or sterilization between patients.

**13.5** Aerosol solutions.

**13.5.1** Use only sterile fluids and dispense them aseptically.[40]

**13.5.2** Medications obtained from multi-dose vials are handled, dispensed and stored according to manufacturers' instructions.

**13.6** Patients with a natural airway should be instructed to rinse the mouth with water following each administration of inhaled steroids.

***Perinatal-Pediatric Focus Group:***

*Lynne K Bower RRT,* Chairman, Boston MA
*Sherry L Barnhart RRT,* Cabot AR
*Peter Betit BS RRT,* Boston MA
*Michael P Czervinske RRT,* New Orleans LA
*Joanne Masi-Lynch BS RRT,* Salt Lake City UT
*Barbara G Wilson MEd RRT,* Durham NC

## REFERENCES


1. Parkin PC, Saunders NR, Diamond SA, Winders PM, Macarthur C. Randomised trial spacer v nebuliser for acute asthma. Arch Dis Child 1995;72(3):239-240.
2. Lin YZ, Hsieh KH. Metered dose inhaler and nebuliser in acute asthma. Arch Dis Child 1995;72(3):214-218.
3. Cunningham SJ, Crain EF. Reduction of morbidity in asthmatic children given a spacer device. Chest 1994; 106(3):753-757.
4. Kerem E, Levison H, Schuh S, O'Brodovich H, Reisman J, Bentur L, Canny GJ. Efficacy of albuterol administered by nebulizer versus spacer device in children with acute asthma. J Pediatr 1993;123(2): 313-317.
5. Chou KJ, Cunningham SJ, Crain EF. Metered-dose inhalers with spacers vs nebulizers for pediatric asthma. Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med 1995;149(2):201-205.
6. Kacmarek RM, Hess D. The interface between patient and aerosol generator. Respir Care 1991;36(9):952-976.
7. Newman SP. Aerosol generators and delivery systems. Respir Care 1991;36(9):939-951.
8. Phipps PR, Gonda I. Droplets produced by medical nebulizers. Some factors affecting their size and solute concentration. Chest 1990;97(6):1327-1332.
9. Tashkin DP. Dosing strategies for bronchodilator aerosol delivery. Respir Care 1991;36(9):977-988.
10. Matthys H, Herceg R. Dosing strategies for aerosol delivery to the lung parenchyma, with specific recommendations for pentamidine. Respir Care 1991;36(9): 989-993.
11. Scuch S, Parkin P, Rajan A, Canny G, Healy R, Rieder, et al. High- versus low- dose frequently nebulized albuterol in children with severe, acute asthma. Pediatrics 1989;83(4):513-518.
12. Nussbaum E, Eyzaguirre M, Galant SP. Dose-response relationship of inhaled metaproterenol sulfate in preschool children with mild asthma. Pediatrics 1990;85(6):1072-1075.
13. Rau JL. Delivery of aerosolized drugs to neonatal and pediatric patients. Respir Care 1991;36(6):514-542.
14. Dolovich M. Clinical aspects of aerosol physics. Respir Care 1991;36(9):931-938.
15. Besunder JB, Reed MD, Blumer JL. Principles of drug biodisposition in the neonate: a critical evaluation of the pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic interface. Clin Pharmacokinetics 1988;14(5):261-286.
16. Kelly HW. Pharmacotherapy of pediatric lung disease: differences between children and adults. Clin Chest Med 1987;8(4):681-694.
17. Crompton GK. New inhalation devices. Eur J Respir Dis 1988;1(8):679-680.
18. Pedersen S. Choice of inhalation therapy in pediatrics. Eur Respir Rev 1994;4:85-88.
19. Lowenthal D, Kattan M. Facemasks versus mouthpieces for aerosol treatment of asthmatic children. Pediatr Pulmonol 1992;14(3):192-196.
20. Sackner MA, Kim CS. Recent advances in the management of obstructive airways disease. Auxiliary MDI aerosol delivery systems. Chest 1985;88(2 Suppl): 161S-170S.
21. Newman SP, Millar AB, Lennard-Jones TR, Moren F, Clarke SW. Improvement of pressurized aerosol deposition with Nebuhaler spacer device. Thorax 1984;39 (12):935-941.
22. Lee H, Evans HE. Evaluation of inhalation aids of metered dose inhalers in asthmatic children. Chest 1987; 91(3):366-369.
23. Sly RM, Barbera JM, Middleton HB, Eby DM. Delivery of albuterol aerosol by Aerochamber to young children. Ann Allergy 1988;60(5):403-406.
24. Conner WT, Dolovich MB, Frame RA, Newhouse MT. Reliable salbutamol administration in 6- to 36- month-old children by means of a metered dose inhaler and Aerochamber with mask. Pediatr Pulmonol 1989;6(4): 263-267.
25. Yuksel B, Greenough A, Maconochie I. Effective bronchodilator treatment by a simple spacer device for wheezy premature infants. Arch Dis Child 1990;65 (7):782-785.
26. O'Callaghan C, Milner AD, Swarbrick A. Spacer device with face mask attachment for giving bronchodilators to infants with asthma. Br Med J 1989;298(6667):160-161.
27. Rachelefsky GS, Rohr AS, Wo J, Gracey V, Spector SL, Siegel SC, Katz RM, Mickey MR. Use of a tube spacer to improve the efficacy of a metered-dose inhaler in asthmatic children. Am Rev Respir Dis 1986;140(11): 1191-1193.
28. Crompton GK. Clinical use of dry powder systems. Eur J Respir Dis 1982;122(Suppl):96s-99s.

29. Pedersen S, Hansen OR, Fuglsang G. Influence of inspiratory flow rate upon effect of Turbuhaler. Arch Dis Child 1990;65(3):308-310.
30. Sly RM. Aerosol therapy in children. Respir Care 1991;36(9)994-1007.
31. Scalabrin DM, Naspitz CK. Efficacy and side effects of salbutamol in acute asthma in children: comparison of the oral route and two different nebulizer systems. J Asthma 1993;30(1):51-59.
32. Cochrane GM, Bosley C. Compliance with inhaled therapy in asthma. Eur Respir Rev 1994;4:92-94.
33. Bendefy IM. Home nebulisers in childhood asthma: survey of hospital supervised use. Br Med J 1991;302 (6786)1180-1181.
34. Snell NJ. Adverse reactions to inhaled drugs. Respir Med 1990;84(5):345-348.
35. Cochrane GM, Prior JG, Rees PJ. Home nebulisers for airflow limitation (editorial). Br Med J 1985;290 (6482):1608-1609.
36. Hanhan U, Kissoon N, Payne M, Taylor C, Murphy S, DeNicola LK. Effects of in-line nebulization on preset ventilatory variables. Respir Care 1993;38(5):474-478.
37. Hess D. Inhaled bronchodilators during mechanical ventilation: delivery techniques, evaluation of response, and cost effectiveness. Respir Care 1994;39(2):105-122.
38. LaForce CF, Ellis EF, Kordansky DW, Cocchetto DM, Sharp JT. Use and acceptance of Ventolin Rotacaps and the Rotohaler in 1235 asthmatic patients. Clin Therapeutics 1993;15(2):321-329.
39. Beaty CD, Ritz RH, Benson MS. Continuous in-line nebulizers complicate pressure support ventilation. Chest 1989;96(6):1360-1363.
40. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Guideline for the prevention of nosocomial pneumonia. Respir Care 1994;39(12):1191-1236.
41. Yarbrough J, Mansfield LE, Ting S. Metered dose inhaler-induced bronchospasm in asthmatic patients. Ann Allergy 1985;55(1):25-27.
42. Rafferty P, Beasley R, Holgate ST. Comparison of the efficacy of preservative free ipratropium bromide and Atrovent nebulizer solutions. Thorax 1988;43(6):446-450.
43. Newman SP. Metered dose pressurized aerosols and the ozone layer. Eur Respir J 1990;3(10)495-497.
44. Pavia D, McLeod L. The environmental impact of inhaled aerosols Eur Respir Rev 1994;4:75-77.
45. Balmes JR. Propellant gases in metered dose inhalers: their impact on the global environment. Respir Care 1991;36(9):1037-1044.
46. Salzman GA, Pyszcynski DR. Oropharyngeal candidiasis in patients treated with beclomethasone dipropionate delivered by metered-dose inhaler alone and with Aerochamber. J Allergy Clin Immunol 1988;81(2): 424-428.
47. Newman SP. Delivery of therapeutic aerosols. Probs Respir Care 1988;1:53-82.
48. Lewis RA, Fleming JS. Fractional deposition from a jet nebulizer: how it differs from a metered dose inhaler. Br J Dis Chest 1985;79(4):361-367.
49. Johnson MA, Newman SP, Bloom R, Talaee N, Clarke SW. Delivery of albuterol and ipratropium bromide from two nebulizer systems in chronic stable asthma: efficacy and pulmonary deposition. Chest 1989;96(1):6-10.
50. Mason JW, Miller WC, Small S. Comparison of aerosol delivery via Circulaire system vs conventional small volume nebulizer. Respir Care 1994;39(12):1157-1161.
51. Agnew JE. Characterizing lung aerosol penetration. J Aerosol Med 1991;4:237-249.
52. Everard ML, Clark AR, Milner AD. Drug delivery from jet nebulisers. Arch Dis Child 1992;67(5):58-585.
53. Xu JB, Yu CP. The effects of age on deposition of inhaled aerosols in the human lung. Aerosol Sci Technol 1986;5:349-357.
54. Silverman M. Aerosol therapy in the newborn. Arch Dis Child 1990;65(8):906-908.
55. Vidgren M. Factors influencing lung deposition of inhaled aerosols. Eur Respir J 1994;4:68-70.
56. Chung KF, Jeyasingh K, Snashall PD. Influence of airway calibre on the intrapulmonary dose and distribution of inhaled aerosol in normal and asthmatic subjects. Eur Respir J 1988;1(10):890-895.
57. Salmon B, Wilson NM, Silverman M. How much aerosol reaches the lungs of wheezy infants and toddlers? Arch Dis Child 1990;65(4):410-403.
58. Hess D, Horney D, Snyder T. Medication-delivery performance of eight small-volume, hand-held nebulizers: effects of diluent volume, gas, flowrate, and nebulizer model. Respir Care 1989;34(8):717-723.
59. Wood JA, Wilson RSE, Bray C. Changes in salbutamol concentration in the reservoir solution of a jet nebulizer. Br J Dis Chest 1986;80(2):164-169.
60. Alvine GF, Rodgers P, Fitzsimmons KM, Ahrens RC. Disposable jet nebulizers. How reliable are they? Chest 1992;101(2):316-319.
61. Tenholder MF, Bryson MJ, Whitlock WL. A model for conversion from small volume nebulizer to metered dose inhaler aerosol therapy. Chest 1992;101(3):634-637.
62. Bowton DL, Goldsmith WM, Haponik EF. Substitution of metered-dose inhalers for hand-held nebulizers: success and cost savings in a large, acute-care hospital. Chest 1992;101(2):305-308.
63. Jasper AC, Mohsenifar Z, Kahan S, Goldberg HS, Koerner SK. Cost-benefit comparison of aerosol bronchodilator delivery methods in hospitalized patients. Chest 1987;91(4):614-618.
64. Orens DK, Kester L, Fergus LC, Stoller JK. Cost impact of metered dose inhalers vs small volume nebulizers in hospitalized patients: The Cleveland Clinic experience. Respir Care 1991;36(10):1099-1104.
65. Hughes JM, Saez J. Effects of nebulizer mode and position in a mechanical ventilator circuit on dose efficiency. Respir Care 1987;32(12):1131-1135.
66. Manthous CA, Hall JB. Administration of therapeutic aerosols to mechanically ventilated patients. Chest 1994;106:560-571.
67. Flavin M, MacDonald M, Dolovich M, Coates G, O'Brodovich H. Aerosol delivery to the rabbit lung with an infant ventilator. Pediatr Pulmonol 1986;2(1):35-39.
68. Rau JL, Harwood RJ. Comparison of nebulizer delivery

methods through a neonatal endotracheal tube: a bench study. Respir Care 1992;37(11):1233-1240.
69. Cameron D, Caly M, Silverman M. Evaluation of nebulizers for use in neonatal ventilator circuits. Crit Care Med 1990;18(8):866-870.
70. Fuller HD, Dolovich MB, Posmituck G, Pack W, Newhouse MT. Pressurized aerosol versus jet aerosol delivery to mechanically ventilated patients: comparison of dose to the lungs. Am Rev Respir Dis 1990;141 (2):440-444.
71. Ahrens RC, Ries RA, Popendorf W, Wiese JA. The delivery of therapeutic aerosols through endotracheal tubes. Pediatr Pulmonol 1986;2(1):19-26.
72. Henry WD, Chatburn RL. Effects of manual versus mechanical ventilation on aerosol efficiency (abstract). Respir Care 1988;33:914.
73. Watterberg KL, Clark AR, Kelly HW, Murphy S. Delivery of aerosolized medication to intubated babies. Pediatr Pulmonol 1991;10(2)136-141.
74. MacIntyre NR, Silver RM, Miller CW, Schuler F, Coleman RE. Aerosol delivery in intubated, mechanically ventilated patients. Crit Care Med 1985;13(2):81-85.
75. Quinn WW. Effect of a new nebulizer position on aerosol delivery during mechanical ventilation: a bench study. Respir Care 1992;37(5):423-431.
76. Heyder J. Mechanism of aerosol particle deposition. Chest 1981;80(6 suppl):820-823.
77. Steventon RD, Wilson RS. Facemask or mouthpiece for delivery of nebulized bronchodilator aerosols? Br J Dis Chest 1981;75(1):88-90.
78. Vidgren MT, Paronen TP, Karkkainen A, Karjalainen. Effect of extension devices on the drug deposition from inhalational aerosols. Int J Pharm 1987;39:107-112.
79. Kim CS, Eldridge MA, Sackner MA. Oropharyngeal deposition and delivery aspects or metered-dose inhaler aerosols. Am Rev Respir Dis 1987;135(1):157-164.
80. Lindgren S, Bake B, Larsson S. Clinical consequences of inadequate inhalation technique in asthma therapy. Eur J Respir Dis 1987;70:(2)93-98.
81. Pedersen S. Optimal use of tube spacer aerosols in asthmatic children. Clin Allergy 1985;15(5):473-478.
82. Oprehek J, Gayrard P, Grimaud CH, Charpin J. Patient error in the use of bronchodilator metered aerosols. Br Med J 1976;1(6001):76-77.
83. Kelling JS, Strohl KP, Smith RL, Altose MD. Physician knowledge in the use of canister nebulizers. Chest 1983;83(4):612-614.
84. Newman SP, Moren F, Pavia D, Sheahan NF, Clarke SW. Deposition of pressurized aerosols in the human respiratory tract. Thorax 1981;36(1):52-55.
85. Spiro SG, Singh CA, Tolfree SEJ, Partridge MR, Short MD. Direct labeling of ipratropium bromide aerosol and its deposition pattern in normal subjects and patients with chronic bronchitis. Thorax 1984;39(6):432-435.
86. Zainudin BMZ, Biddiscombe M, Tolfree SEJ, Short M, Spiro SG. Comparison of bronchodilator responses and deposition patterns of salbutamol inhaled from pressurised metered dose inhaler, as a dry powder, and as a nebulized solution. Thorax 1990;45(6):469-473.
87. SennHauser FH, Sly PD. Pressure flow characteristics of the valve in spacer devices. Arch Dis Child 1989;64 (9):1305-1307.
88. Crogan SJ, Bishop MJ. Delivery efficiency of metered dose aerosols given via endotracheal tube. Anesthesiology 1989;70(6):1008-1010.
89. Bishop MJ, Larson RP, Buschman DL. Metered dose inhaler aerosol characteristics are affected by the endotracheal tube actuator/adapter used. Anesthesiology 1990;73(6):1263-1265.
90. Arnon S, Grigg J, Nikander K, Silverman M. Delivery of micronized budesonide suspension by metered dose inhaler and jet nebulizer into a neonatal ventilator circuit. Pediatr Pulmonol 1992;13(3):172-175
91. Ebert J, Adams AB, Green-Eide B. An evaluation of MDI spacers and adapters: their effect on the respirable volume of medication. Respir Care 1992;37(8):862-868.
92. Auty RM, Brown K, Neale MG, Snashall PD. Respiratory tract deposition of sodium cromoglycate is highly dependent upon technique of inhalation using the Spinhaler. Br J Dis Chest 1987;81(4):371-380.
93. Richards R, Simpson SF, Renwick AG, Holgate ST. Inhalation rate of sodium cromoglycate determines plasma pharmacokinetics and protection against AMP-induced bronchoconstriction in asthma. Eur Respir J 1988;1(10):896-901.
94. Vidgren MT, Karkkainen A, Karjalainen P, Paronen P, Nuutinen J. Effect of powder inhaler design on drug deposition in the respiratory tract. Int J Pharm 1988;42: 211-216.
95. Portnoy J, Aggarwal J Continuous terbutaline nebulization for the treatment of severe exacerbation of asthma in children. Ann Allergy 1988;60:368-371
96. Cameron D, Clay M, Silverman M. Evaluation of nebulizers for use in neonatal ventilator circuits. Crit Care Med 1990;18(8):866-870.
97. Mallol J, Barrueto L, Girardi G, Toro O. Bronchodilator effect of feneterol and ipratropium bromide in infants with acute wheezing: use of MDI with a spacer device. Pediatr Pulmonol 1987;3(5):352-356.
98. Canny GJ, Levison H. Childhood asthma: a rational approach to treatment. Ann Allergy 1990;64(5):406-418.
99. Toogood JH, Baskerville J, Jennings B, Lefcoe NM, Johansson SA. Use of spacers to facilitate inhaled corticosteroid treatment of asthma. Am Rev Respir Dis 1984;129(5):723-729.
100. Grigg J, Arnon S, Jones T, Clarke A, Silverman M. Delivery of therapeutic aerosols to intubated babies. Arch Dis Child 1992;67(1 spec no):25-30.
101. Pedersen S. How to use a Rotohaler. Arch Dis Child 1986;61(1):11-14.
102. Pedersen S. Treatment of acute bronchoconstriction in children with the use of a tube spacer aerosol and a dry powder inhaler. Allergy 1985;40(4):300-304.
103. Mallol J, Barrueto L, Girardi G, Munoz R, Puppo H, Ulloa V, Toro O, Quevado F. Use of nebulized bronchodilators in infants under 1 year of age: analysis of four forms of therapy. Pediatr Pulmonol 1987;3(5): 298-303.

104. Lyttle BD, Hollestelle AM. Asthma: assessment and management in a pediatric hospital. Can Fam Physician 1993;39:793-798.
105. Spier S, Drblik SP, Lamarre A, Lapierre G, Marcotte JE, Bourgeois M. A protocol for aerosol therapy in acute hospitalized asthmatics. J Asthma 1992;29(6):401-405.
106. Brudno DS, Parker DH, Slaton G. Response of pulmonary mechanics to terbutaline in patients with bronchopulmonary dysplasia. Am J Med Sci 1989;297 (3):166-168.
107. Wilkie RA, Bryan MH. Effect of bronchodilators on airway resistance in ventilator-dependent neonates with chronic lung disease. J Pediatr 1987;111(2):278-282.
108. Caldwell NA. Nebulization in hospitals and home: standardizing the variables. Eur Respir Rev 1994;4:99-101.
109. Everard ML, Clark AR, Milner AD. Drug delivery from holding chambers with attached facemask. Arch Dis Child 1992;67(5):580-585.
110. Henney HR III, Blatt RS. Knowledge of nurse and respiratory therapists about using canister nebulizers. Am J Hops Pharm 1984;41(11):2403-2405.
111. Roberts RJ, Robinson JD, Doering PL, Dallman JJ, Steeves RA. A comparison of various types of patient instruction in the proper administration of metered inhalers. Drug Intell Clin Pharm 1982;16(1):53-55, 59.
112. Self TH, Brooks JB, Lieberman P, Ryan MR. The value of demonstration and role of the pharmacist in teaching the correct use of pressurized bronchodilators. Can Med Assoc J 1986;128:129-131.
113. Centers for Disease Control. Update: Universal Precautions for prevention and transmission of human immunodeficiency virus, hepatitis B virus, and other bloodborne pathogens in health care settings. MMWR 1988;37:377-388.
114. Centers for Disease Control/ Guidelines for preventing the transmission of tuberculosis in health-care settings, with special focus on HIV-related tissues. MMWR 1990;39(RR-17):1-29.

Interested persons may photocopy these Guidelines for noncommercial purposes of scientific or educational advancement. Please credit AARC and Respiratory Care Journal.

# AARC-APT Clinical Practice Guideline

## Polysomnography

This Guideline was developed jointly by the AARC Cardiopulmonary Diagnostics CPG Focus Group and representatives of the Association of Polysomnography Technologists (APT). Both groups have approved its content.

**PSG 1.0 PROCEDURE:**

Polysomnography

**PSG 2.0 DESCRIPTION/DEFINITION:**

Polysomnography refers to the collective process of monitoring and recording physiologic data during sleep. The specific variables monitored during center-based polysomnographic evaluation of sleep-related respiratory disturbances are listed.[1,2] Home-based polysomnography[3] and unattended monitoring systems are not addressed in this guideline.

The variables monitored and recorded during polysomnography include but are not limited to:[4,5]

**2.1** global neural electroencephalographic activity (EEG) from electrodes placed on the patient's scalp;

**2.2** eye movements (electro-oculogram, or EOG) from electrodes placed near the outer canthus of each eye;

**2.3** submental electromyographic activity (EMG) from electrodes placed over the mentalis, submentalis muscle, and/or masseter regions;

**2.4** rhythm electrocardiogram (ECG) with two or three chest leads;

**2.5** respiratory effort, by chest-wall and abdominal movement via strain gauges, piezoelectric belts, inductive plethysmography, impedance or inductance pneumography, endoesophageal pressure, or by intercostal EMG;

**2.6** nasal and/or oral airflow via thermistor or pneumotachograph;

**2.7** oxygen saturation ($S_{pO_2}$) via pulse oximetry;

**2.8** body position via mercury switches or by direct observation;

**2.9** limb movements (arms and legs) via EMG;[6]

**2.10** recordings of or vibration (frequency and/or volume) may be recorded;[7]

**2.11** end-tidal $CO_2$, transcutaneous $CO_2$, esophageal pH, penile tumescence, and bipolar EEG are beyond the scope and intent of this guideline.

**PSG 3.0 SETTING:**

Center-based polysomnography is performed within specialized hospital sleep laboratories,[1] appropriately equipped hospital rooms, or stand-alone sleep centers, with a qualified technician in constant attendance.[8]

**PSG 4.0 INDICATIONS:**

Polysomnography *may be* indicated in patients[9-12]

**4.1** with COPD whose awake $P_{aO_2}$ is > 55 torr but whose illness is complicated by pulmonary hypertension, right heart failure, polycythemia, or excessive daytime sleepiness;

**4.2** with restrictive ventilatory impairment secondary to chest-wall and neuromuscular disturbances whose illness is complicated by chronic hypoventilation, polycythemia, pulmonary hypertension, disturbed sleep, morning headaches, or daytime somnolence and fatigue;

**4.3** with disturbances in respiratory control whose awake $P_{aCO_2}$ is > 45 torr or whose illness is complicated by pulmonary hypertension, polycythemia, disturbed sleep, morning headaches, or daytime somnolence and fatigue;

**4.4** with nocturnal cyclic brady- or tachyar-

rhythmias, nocturnal abnormalities of atrioventricular conduction, or ventricular ectopy that appear to increase in frequency during sleep;
**4.5** with excessive daytime sleepiness or insomnia;
**4.6** with snoring associated with observed apneas and/or excessive daytime sleepiness;
**4.7** with other symptoms of sleep-disordered breathing as described in International Classification of Sleep Disorders;[6]
**4.8** with symptoms of sleep disorders described in the International Classification of Sleep Disorders.[6]

**PSG 5.0 CONTRAINDICATIONS:**

There are no absolute contraindications to polysomnography when indications are clearly established. However, risk-benefit ratios should be assessed if medically unstable inpatients are to be transferred from the clinical setting to a sleep laboratory for overnight polysomnography.

**PSG 6.0 PRECAUTIONS/COMPLICATIONS:**

**6.1** Skin irritation may occur as a result of the adhesive used to attach electrodes to the patient.
**6.2** At the conclusion of the study, adhesive remover is used to dissolve adhesive on the patient's skin. Adhesive removers (eg, acetone) should only be used in well-ventilated areas.
**6.3** The integrity of polysomnographic equipment's electrical isolation must be certified by engineering or biomedical personnel qualified to make such assessment.
**6.4** The adhesive used to attach EEG electrodes, (eg, collodion) should not be used to attach electrodes near the patient's eyes and should always be used in well-ventilated areas.
**6.5** Due to the high flammability of collodion and acetone, they should be used with caution, especially in those patients who require supplemental oxygen.
**6.6** Collodion should be used with caution in those patients with reactive airways disease and in small infants.
**6.7** Patients with parasomnias or seizures may be at risk for injury related to movements during sleep. Institution-specific policies and guidelines describing personnel responsibilities and appropriate responses should be developed.

**PSG 7.0 DEVICE LIMITATIONS/VALIDATION OF RESULTS:**

Due to the nature of the various physiologic variables that are examined during polysomnography, a variety of devices are attached to the patient, and the output of these devices is interfaced with a standard polysomnographic recorder; consequently, the potential exists for several individual device limitations, rather than any one specific limitation to polysomnography.

**7.1** Records of EEG, EOG, and EMG activity. These variables are monitored by gluing or taping, small metal-disk electrodes to the patient.[13] The low impedance limit is 1,000 ohms (1 K), and, in the routine diagnostic polysomnogram recorded at 10-15 mm/s using referential EEG channels, an impedance ≤ 10,000 ohms (10 K) is acceptable for all channels.[14-16] Slightly higher impedances are acceptable for limb EMG.[17] However, a maximum impedance of 5, 000 ohms (5 K) is recommended for bipolar EEG channels frequently used in extended polysomnography montages when seizure activity is suspected.[18] Limitations associated with EEG, EOG, and EMG monitoring include:

**7.1.1** displacement of the electrode from the subject's skin causes a reduction, or complete loss, of the signal;

**7.1.2** failure to properly prepare the skin or drying of the transduction gel inside of the electrode obscures the signal's characteristics;

**7.1.3** artifactual signals can obscure actual physiologic signals;

**7.1.4** environmental electrical noise can obscure actual physiologic signals.

**7.2** Record of ECG activity. Rhythm ECGs are typically obtained by using two of the described EEG electrodes. Recording a modified Lead-II (right shoulder and left leg) or precordial lead (MCL) is sufficient. Limitations associated with rhythm ECGs obtained during polysomnography include:

**7.2.1** The recording paper speed used during polysomnography may be slower than that used by cardiac monitors and recorders. This or improper filtering tech-

niques may obscure P-wave or QRS-complex wave morphology.[5]

**7.2.2** Other limitations can be the same as described in Section 7.1.

**7.3** Record of chest-wall and abdominal movement. A variety of devices exist for measuring chest-wall and abdominal movement including mercury strain gauges, piezoelectric belts, inductance, and impedance pneumography.[1]

**7.3.1** Mercury strain gauges are placed on or around the chest or abdomen. Limitations of strain gauges include:[19]

**7.3.1.1** The quality and interpretability of the respiratory signal is affected (1) if the gauge slips from its original position and (2) if the patient changes position.

**7.3.1.2** Calibration of strain gauges is difficult; consequently, the displayed data are more qualitative than quantitative.

**7.3.1.3** The mercury in the Silastic tubing can develop bubbles that can affect signal integrity.

**7.3.2** Piezoelectric belts are placed around the chest and/or abdomen. Limitations of piezoelectric belts include:

**7.3.2.1** The quality and interpretability of the respiratory signal is affected if belts slip out of their original position.

**7.3.2.2** Belts are generally not calibrated; consequently, the displayed data are more qualitative than quantitative.

**7.3.3** Inductance plethysmography is accomplished by placing elastic belts around the abdomen and chest of the patient. Limitations of inductance plethysmography include:[20]

**7.3.3.1** The slipping of a belt from its original position affects the calibration, and, consequently, the quality and interpretability of the respiratory signal.

**7.3.3.2** Calibration of inductance plethysmography is difficult in morbidly obese people, and, consequently, the data are more qualitative than quantitative.

**7.3.3.3** The thin wires on the surface of inductance plethysmography belts are easily broken with a consequent loss of the monitored signal.

**7.3.4** Impedance pneumography uses 2 or 3 electrodes attached to the patient in a configuration similar to that of a 3-lead ECG. Limitations of impedance pneumography include:[21]

**7.3.4.1** The technique provides only a qualitative indication of chest-wall movement. There is no direct relationship to the volume of air within the chest.

**7.3.4.2** Because impedance pneumography displays only global chest-wall movement, obstructive apneic events cannot be clearly differentiated from central or mixed apneic events in the absence of airflow measures.

**7.3.4.3** No standards exist for the frequency response, precision, and reliability of signal reproductions that represent changes in thoracic impedance.

**7.3.4.4** Signal degradation can occur with changes in body position.

**7.3.4.5** Impedance pneumography is susceptible to cardiogenic artifact.

**7.4** Record of intercostal muscle activity. Intercostal EMG is monitored by gluing or taping small metal-disk electrodes to the patient's intercostal spaces. When these electrodes are placed near the insertion of the diaphragm, they can monitor EMG activity from both the diaphragm and intercostal muscles. Limitations of intercostal EMG recording are the same as those listed in Section 7.1.

**7.5** Record of esophageal pressure changes:

**7.5.1** Esophageal pressures are monitored via esophageal balloons or liquid-filled catheters, which are attached to pressure transducers and signal amplifiers. Esophageal balloons are inflated with air or liquid, whereas liquid-filled catheters are filled with water or saline. They are inserted into the nares, through the nasopharynx, and into the esophagus to monitor changes in intrathoracic pressures occurring with inspiration and expiration.[22]

**7.5.2** An esophageal balloon consists of a catheter attached to an air-filled balloon, which is inserted into the esophagus. Problems with esophageal balloons include:

**7.5.2.1** inadvertent tracheal intubation;
**7.5.2.2** nasal trauma or irritation;
**7.5.2.3** inadequate filling rendering the pressure measurements inaccurate;
**7.5.2.4** patient discomfort to a degree sufficient to alter sleep staging;
**7.5.2.5** patient movement's altering the position of the catheter, and, thereby affecting the accuracy of the pressure measurements.

**7.5.3** Liquid-filled catheters are similar to esophageal balloons. Limitations include:
**7.5.3.1** air bubbles in the tubing can alter the characteristics of the pressure transmission through the tubing and cause the pressure readings to be inaccurate;
**7.5.3.2** inadvertent tracheal intubation can give rise to irritation or aspiration of a catheter's contents into the lungs;
**7.5.3.3** patient movement can alter the position of the catheter, thereby affecting the accuracy of the pressure measurements.

**7.6** Record of airflow
**7.6.1** Thermistors and thermocouples can provide information about the presence or absence of airflow based on temperature differences between inhaled and exhaled air. The devices incorporate small wiry sensors that can be taped below the patient's nostril and next to the mouth. Limitations include:[23]
**7.6.1.1** the devices cannot be calibrated and, therefore, provide only qualitative information;
**7.6.1.2** the collection of moisture on a sensor can affect its ability to detect temperature changes and affect signal integrity;
**7.6.1.3** dislodgment from the subject results in partial or complete loss of the signal.

**7.6.2** Pneumotachometers/pneumotachographs: Pneumotachography is used when quantitation of airflow and volume are necessary. Limitations of pneumotachography include:[24]
**7.6.2.1** The patient's nose and mouth must be securely covered (leak free) by a face mask with the pneumotachometer attached to it;
**7.6.2.2** The pneumotachometer and face mask are obtrusive and cumbersome and may not be tolerated by the patient and, therefore, may not be suitable for routine polysomnography;
**7.6.2.3** Pneumotachography requires calibration at different air flows, and the amplifiers need to be calibrated frequently to ensure linearity.

**7.6.3** Recording of tracheal sounds audible via microphone is inexpensive and can be used to quantitate snoring.[7]

**7.7** Recording of oxygen saturation ($S_{pO_2}$). Pulse oximetry transmits two wavelengths of light through a pulsatile vascular bed to measure arterial oxygen saturation. Many factors can affect device accuracy and these have been well described.[25-29] With respect to polysomnography, limitations of pulse oximetry include:
**7.7.1** During apneic events, the pulse oximeter may alarm and awaken the patient. Therefore, during polysomnography, it is important that the audible low-oxygen-saturation alarm be disabled. Alarms should be disabled only if a qualified technician is in constant attendance, monitoring the physiologic signals, and able to intervene if clinically indicated.
**7.7.2** Not all pulse oximeters have an analog output that can be interfaced with the polygraph recorder.
**7.7.3** Pulse oximetry does not reflect total gas exchange (cannot detect changes in $P_{aCO_2}$).
**7.7.4** The polygraph amplifier requires calibration to ensure that the oximeter recording is linear and displayed within institutional requirements (ie, each drop in $S_{pO_2}$ causes a 1-mm pen deflection).
**7.7.5** Lengthy signal averaging in some older pulse oximeters may produce imprecise values during acute events such as apnea.[29]

## PSG 8.0 ASSESSMENT OF NEED:

In those patients who are suspected of sleep-related respiratory disturbances, periodic-limb-movement

disorder, or other sleep disorders described within The International Classification of Sleep Disorders, Diagnostic and Coding Manual,[6] polysomnography is used to assess and quantify the presence and severity of such disturbances and their effect on oxygenation, cardiac status, and sleep continuity.

**PSG 9.0 ASSESSMENT OF TEST QUALITY:**

**9.1** With respect to sleep-related respiratory disturbances, polysomnography should either confirm or eliminate a diagnosis.

**9.2** Documentation of findings, suggested therapeutic intervention, and/or other clinical decisions resulting from polysomnography should be noted in the patient's chart.

**9.3** Each laboratory should devise and implement indicators of quality assurance with respect to equipment calibration and maintenance, patient preparation and monitoring, scoring methodology, and intertechnician scoring variances.

**PSG 10.0 RESOURCES:**

**10.1** Equipment:

**10.1.1** A polygraph recorder capable of recording a minimum of 10 channels of high-frequency physiologic data. The data should be recorded on strip-chart paper, in ink (or by inkless pens writing on heat-sensitive paper) at a paper speeds from 10-30 mm/s. The polygraph may also be interfaced with an analog or digital storage device (cassette tape, optical disk) that has the ability to store and to print all raw data collected during the study.[30] The polygraph should be equipped with both alternating (AC) and direct-current (DC) bioamplifiers, with user-selectable electrical filters and sensitivities.

**10.1.2** To record EEG and EOG, the polysomnographic recorder should have the sensitivity to give a pen deflection of 5.0-10.0 mm for a 50 $\mu$V signal. A calibration signal of 50 $\mu$V/cm is most common. It is essential that the recorder be calibrated prior to the study because changes in signal amplitude are one criterion for scoring the study.[13]

**10.1.3** When recording EMGs, a pen deflection of 2 $\mu$V/mm is common; however, the absolute magnitude of the amplitude is irrelevant. Rather, the emphasis is placed upon relative changes in the EMG amplitude.[13]

**10.1.4** EEG and EOG signals are amplified with an AC amplifier. The high-frequency-filter setting should be $\geq$ 30-35 Hz with a low-frequency-filter setting of $\leq$ 0.3 Hz.[13]

**10.1.5** The EMG signal is also amplified with an AC amplifier. A high-frequency-filter setting of 70-120 Hz and a low-frequency-filter setting $\geq$ 5 Hz are suggested.[13]

**10.1.6** To record the rhythm ECGs, two additional EEG electrodes are configured for Leads I, II, III, or MCL. No particular emphasis need be placed on signal amplitude provided the signal is large enough to be discernible.

**10.1.7** Output from respiratory effort and airflow-sensing devices and oxygen-saturation data are directed to the recorder and displayed with the other data.

**10.1.8** Body position may be determined with mercury switches, with output signal directed to the recorder and displayed with the other data. If body position is monitored by direct observation, the patient's position should be noted at the beginning of the recording and whenever changes in position occur.

**10.2** Personnel qualifications:

Level-I personnel are designated as those with at least a high school education but without formal credentialing in polysomnographic technology and with no professional credentialing or licensing. Level-I personnel can be described as those who meet minimal job requirements and have received on-the-job polysomnographic training. Both Level-I and Level-II personnel should work under the direction of a physician specifically trained in the diagnosis and treatment of sleep disorders. Any personnel responsible for observing the patient should hold a current course-completion care in cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) at, at least, the basic life support (BCLS) level and be competent to perform cardiac defibrillation.[31]

**10.2.1** Level-I personnel:

**10.2.1.1** may perform polysomnography;

**10.2.1.2** need to be proficient in patient preparation, sensor application, and operation of the polysomnograph;[2]

**10.2.1.3** should be familiar with operating principles and basic troubleshooting of the equipment listed in Section 7.0.

**10.2.1.4** have an appreciation for the scoring and interpretation of polysomnograms and their use in the diagnosis of patients with sleep disorders;

**10.2.1.5** have effective patient assessment and communication skills relative to recognizing and reporting adverse patient conditions (ie, a decline in the patient's clinical condition).

**10.2.2** Level-II personnel

**10.2.2.1** should have the knowledge and demonstrated ability to perform Level-I responsibilities, ***and***

**10.2.2.2** should be either credentialed or licensed as a Registered Polysomnographic Technician (RPSGT), a Registered Electroencephalographic Technologist (REEGT), Respiratory Care Practitioners (CRTT or RRT), or a Registered Nurse (RN);

**10.2.2.3** must demonstrate the ability to score polysomnographic recordings and have an understanding of interpretative methods.

**10.2.2.4** should have documented ability to recognize the patterns of polysomnographic variables as they are monitored and recorded enabling the practitioner to differentiate among technical difficulties and occult pathophysiology during polysomnography;

**10.2.2.5** should display a proficiency in interpreting respiratory variables affected by initiation of continuous positive or bi-level positive airway pressure or nocturnal ventilatory support and should demonstrate knowledge of normative ranges for such variables as those measured during the monitoring of arterial blood gas, end-tidal $CO_2$, oxygen saturation, respiratory movement, and airflow;[32]

**10.2.2.6** should be able to initiate and titrate supportive therapy for sleep-related respiratory disorders;[32]

**10.2.2.7** should be able to assess the patient's response to therapy;

**10.2.2.8** should be able to recommend modifications to prescribed therapy, as appropriate;

**10.2.2.9** should be familiar with operating principles, interface techniques, data acquisition, scoring, and reporting for other than cardiopulmonary-based studies, such as penile tumescence and seizure disorders.

## PSG 11.0 MONITORING:

**11.1** During polysomnography, the patient variables to be monitored are those listed in Section 2.2. Intervention is required if the physiologic signals are lost due to problems with instrumentation or become obscured by artifact.

**11.2** Infrared or low-light videocameras and recording equipment should permit visualization of the patient, by the technician, throughout the procedure.[30]

**11.3** Patients undergoing polysomnography are being evaluated for the presence of a chronic disease; therefore, their clinical status is unlikely to deteriorate acutely. However, the center-based polysomnographic studies described in this guideline require the presence of a technician throughout the study. Therefore, the technician should intervene if an acute change in physiologic status occurs and communicate these changes to appropriate medical personnel.

## PSG 12.0 FREQUENCY:

**12.1** A second polysomnographic study may be indicated

**12.1.1** if the first study is technically inadequate due to equipment failure;

**12.1.2** if the subject could not sleep or slept for an insufficient amount of time to allow a clinical diagnosis;

**12.1.3** if initiation of therapy or confirma-

tion of the efficacy of prescribed therapy is needed.

**PSG 13.0 INFECTION CONTROL:**

Practitioners should exercise Universal Precautions and precautions for prevention of the spread of tuberculosis as appropriate.[33,34]

**13.1** Nondisposable patient use items (eg, pneumotachometers, face masks, electrodes) should undergo cleaning and sterilization procedures as recommended by the manufacturer. If sterilization is not feasible, then high-level disinfection is warranted.

**13.2** The syringe and flat-tipped needle used to inject transduction gel into the EEG, EOG, and EMG electrodes should be discarded after use.

**13.3** With respect to body-position sensors, inductance and impedance pneumography, abdominal or thoracic strain gauges, or piezoelectric belts, no special precautions are generally required. Gas sterilization may be used if the sensors or belts become contaminated with body fluids.

**13.4** Some thermistors are equipped with disposable sensors. If nondisposable sensors are used, they should be cleaned and subjected to high-level disinfection after use.

***Cardiopulmonary Diagnostics Focus Group***

*Kevin Shrake MA RRT,* Chairman, Springfield IL
*Pam Minkley RRT RPSGT* (Special Consultant representing the Association of Polysomnography Technologists), Lansing MI
*Sue Blonshine RRT RPFT BS,* Lansing MI
*Robert A Brown BS RRT RPFT,* Madison WI
*Michael J Decker CRTT,* Cleveland OH
*Gregg L Ruppel MEd RRT,* St Louis MO
*Jack Wanger MBA RRT RPFT,* Denver CO

**REFERENCES**


1. Indications and Standards for Cardiopulmonary Sleep Studies. American Thoracic Society consensus statement. Am Rev Respir Dis 1989; 139:559-568.
2. Decker MJ, Smith B, Strohl KP. Center-based vs patient-based diagnosis and therapy of sleep-related respiratory disorders and the role of the respiratory care practitioner. Respir Care 1994 39(4);390-396.
3. Smith JR. Transferring EEG polysomnography technology to the home environment. In: Miles LE, Broughton RJ (eds) Medical monitoring in the home and work environment. New York: Raven Press;1990:217-229.
4. American Electroencephalographic Society. Guideline fifteen: guidelines for polygraphic assessment of sleep-related disorders (polysomnography). J Clin Neurophysiol 1994;11(1):116-124.
5. Martin RJ, Block AJ, Cohn MA. Indications and standards for cardiopulmonary sleep studies. Sleep 1985;8 (4):371-379.
6. American Sleep Disorders Association. The International Classification of Sleep Disorders, Diagnostic and Coding Manual. ASDA 1990.
7. Parisi R, Santiago T. Respiration and respiratory function: techniques of recording and evaluation. In: Sleep disorders medicine: basic science, technical considerations, and clinical aspects (Chapter 9), S Chokroverty, editor. Boston: Butterworth-Heinemann 1994.
8. ASDA Standards of Practice. Portable recording in the assessment of obstructive sleep apnea. Ferber R, Millman R, Coppola M, Fleetham J, Murray CF, Iber C, et al. Sleep 1994;17(4):378-392.
9. Strohl KP, Cherniack NL, Gothe B. Physiologic basis of therapy for sleep apnea. Am Rev Respir Dis 1986; 134:791-802.
10. Fletcher EC, Donner CF, Midgren B, Zielinski J, Levi-Valensi P, Braghiroli A, et al. Survival in COPD patients with a daytime $P_{aO_2} > 60$ mm Hg with and without nocturnal hemoglobin desaturation. Chest 1992;101(3):649-655.
11. Strohl KP, Chester CS. Polysomnography for breathing disorders in sleep. In: Nochomovitz ML, Cherniack NS (eds) Noninvasive respiratory monitoring. Churchill Livingstone Inc NY, 1986:153-166.
12. Sullivan CE, Issa FG, Bruderer J, McCauley V, Bye PT, Grunstein R, Costas L. Treatment of cardiorespiratory disturbances during sleep. Interdiscipl Topic Geronto 1987;22:47-67.
13. Carskadon MA, Rechtschaffen A. Monitoring and staging human sleep. In: MH Kryger, T Roth, WC Dement (eds) Principles and practice of sleep medicine. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1989:665-668.
14. Kennan S. Polysomnographic techniques: an overview. In: Sleep disorders medicine: basic science, technical considerations, and clinical aspects (Chapter 6), S Chokroverty, editor. Boston: Butterworth-Heinemann 1994:82.
15. Walczak T, Chokroverty S. Electroencephalography, electromyography, and electrocardiography: general principles and basic technology. In: Sleep disorders medicine: basic science, technical considerations, and clinical aspects (Chapter 7), S Chokroverty, editor. Boston: Butterworth-Heinemann 1994:97.
16. Grass Model 8 Instruction Manual. Part II theory and application. Grass Instrument Co, Quincy MA, October 1973.
17. The Atlas Task Force. Recording and scoring leg movements. Sleep 1993, 16(8):748-759.
18. Tyner FS, Knott JR, Mayer WB Jr. Chapter 10:131. In: Fundamentals of EEG technology, Vol I: basic concepts and methods. New York: Raven Press.

19. Kryger MH. Monitoring respiratory and cardiac function. In: MH Kryger, T Roth, WC Dement (eds) Principles and practice of sleep medicine. Philadelphia: WB Saunders 1994:984-1007.
20. Ancoli-Israel S. Evaluating sleep with the portable modified Medilog/Respitrace system. In: Miles LE, Broughton RJ (eds) Medical monitoring in the home and work environment. New York: Raven Press 1990:275-294.
21. Blunt JY. Impedance pneumography. In: Spacelabs Biophysical Measurement Series, Respiration. Redmond, Washington: Spacelabs Inc 1992:107-126.
22. Simons JH, Giacomini A, Guilleminault C. Routine use of a water-filled catheter for measuring respiration during NPSG studies: an overview of the procedures and clinical utility. Sleep Research 22:1993.
23. Arguin LJ, Hall EP. Signal processing and data display. In: Kacmarek RM, Hess D, Stoller JK (eds) Monitoring in respiratory care. St Louis: Mosby 1993:71-95.
24. Myrabo K. Airway monitoring of adult, pediatric, and neonatal patients. In: Spacelabs Biophysical Measurement Series, Respiration. Redmond, Washington: Spacelabs Inc 1992:55-78.
25. McCarthy K, Decker MJ, Stoller J, Strohl KP. Pulse oximetry. In: Kacmarek R., Hess D, Stoller JK (eds) Monitoring in respiratory care. St Louis: Mosby 1993:309-347.
26. American Association for Respiratory Care. AARC Clinical Practice Guideline: pulse oximetry. Respir Care 1991;36:1406-1409.
27. Brown DP, Cheung PW, Kenny MA, Shoene RB, Strohl KP, Decker MJ. Theoretical models and experimental studies of pulse oximetry. Proceedings of Ninth Annual Conference of the IEEE Engineering in Medicine and Biology Society, Boston MA, Nov 13-16, 1987.
28. Cahan C. Decker MJ, Hoekje PL, Strohl KP. Agreement between noninvasive oximetric values for oxygen saturation. Chest 1990,97(4):814-819.
29. Decker MJ, Strohl KP. Pulse oximetry. In: Spacelabs Biophysical Measurement Series, Respiration. Redmond, Washington: Spacelabs Inc 1992:79-93.
30. American Sleep Disorders Association Accreditation Committee. Standards for accreditation of sleep disorders centers. Rochester, Minnesota: American Sleep Disorders Association 1994.
31. American Association for Respiratory Care. AARC Clinical Practice Guideline: Defibrillation during resuscitation. Respir Care 1995;40(7):744-748.
32. Sullivan CE, Grunstein RR. Continuous positive airway pressure in sleep disordered breathing. In: MH Kryger, T Roth, WC Dement (eds) Principles and practice of sleep medicine. Philadelphia: WB Saunders 1989:559-570.
33. Centers for Disease Control. Update: Universal Precautions for prevention of transmission of human immunodeficiency virus, hepatitis B virus, and other bloodborne pathogens in health-care settings. MMWR 1988;37:377-382,387-388.
34. Centers for Disease Control. Guidelines for preventing the transmission of tuberculosis in health-care settings, with special focus on HIV-related tissues. MMWR 1990;39(RR-17):1-29.

## ADDITIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Agostoni E, Sant'ambrogio G, del Portillo Carrasco H. Electromyography of the diaphragm in man and transdiaphragmatic pressure. J Appl Physiol 1960;15(6):1093-1097.

American Sleep Disorders Association Standards of Practice Committee, Thorpy M, chairman. Practice parameters for the use of polysomnography in the evaluation of insomnia. Sleep 1995;18:55-57.

Berthon-Jones M, Sullivan CE. Ventilatory and arousal responses to hypoxia in sleeping humans. Am Rev Respir Dis 1982;125:632-639.

Gilliam PMS. Patterns of respiration in human beings at rest and during sleep. Bull Physiopathol Resp 1972;8: 1059-1070.

Haleász P, Ujszászi J, Gádoros J. Are microarousals preceded by electroencephalographic slow wave synchronization precursors of confusional awakenings? Sleep 1985; 8(3):231-238.

Laffont F, Autret A, Minz M, Beillevaire HP, Cathala HP, Castaigne P. Sleep respiratory arrhythmias in control subjects, narcoleptics and non-cataplectic hypersomniacs. Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol 1978;44: 697-705.

Miles LE, Dement WC, Objective sleep parameters in elderly men and women. Sleep 1980;3(2):131-149.

Önal E, Lopata M, Ginzburg S, O'Connor TD. Diaphragmatic EMG and transdiagphragmatic pressure measurements with a single catheter. Am Rev Respir Dis 1981; 124:563-565.

Phillipson EA. Control of breathing during sleep (state of the art). Am Rev Respir Dis 1978;118:909-937.

Rechtschaffen A, Kales A (eds) A manual of standardized terminology: techniques and scoring systems for sleep stages of human subjects. Los Angeles: UCLA Brain Information Service/Brain Research Institute, 1968.

Sackner MA, Landa J, Forrest T, Greeneltch D. Periodic sleep apnea: chronic sleep deprivation related to intermittent upper airway obstruction and central nervous system disturbance. Chest 1975;67(2):164-171.

Sauerland EK, Orr WC, Hairston LE. EMG patterns of oropharyngeal muscles during respiration in wakefulness and sleep. Electromyogr Clin Neurophysiol 1981,21: 307-316.

Sauerland EK, Harper RM. The human tongue during sleep: electromyographic activity of the genioglossus muscle. Exp Neurol 1976;51:160-170.

Shepard JW Jr, editor. Atlas of sleep medicine. Rochester MN: Mayo Foundation 1991.

Interested persons may photocopy these Guidelines for noncommercial purposes of scientific or educational advancement. Please credit AARC and RESPIRATORY CARE Journal.

# Books, Films, Tapes, & Software

**Listing and Reviews of Books and Other Media**
Note to publishers: Send review copies of books, films, tapes, and software to RESPIRATORY CARE, 11030 Ables Lane, Dallas TX 75229-4593.

**Assisted Mechanical Ventilation at Home: A Practical Guide**, by WJM Kinnear. Hardcover, illustrated, 100 pages. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1994. $33.

In the preface, Kinnear presents this book as a "...practical guide..." and as a general overview of home mechanical ventilation specifically for practitioners who use in-home mechanical ventilation and for those without previous experience with this technology. The author also states the book may be of interest to patients who depend on mechanical ventilation. An array of information—from the hospital-discharge-planning process to the types of ventilation used in the home— is included in this book.

The selection of patients for home mechanical ventilation is reviewed in the first chapter. The author incorporates several useful graphs and tables and lists risk factors for the development of respiratory failure in different patient populations. In addition, a comparison of indications and contraindications for each type of home ventilation is covered. Indications for mechanical ventilation in chronic respiratory failure, nocturnal hypoventilation, and prophylaxis of respiratory failure are also reviewed.

The author devotes the next four chapters to individual methods of home mechanical ventilation such as nasal intermittent positive-pressure ventilation, invasive ventilation, and external negative-pressure ventilation. In each chapter, the author uses photographs and illustrations of the control panel of each ventilator to define step-by-step directions.

The chapter on nasal ventilation includes a great deal of information related to initiating a patient on mask ventilation, and it also contains information about the various brands of masks that are commercially available and their suppliers. The BiPap ventilator received only a small section at the end of the chapter. For home use, this particular type of ventilation has increased in popularity in the United States. The subject of humidity during nasal ventilation is not addressed in this chapter. Nasal dryness, irritation, and bleeding may occur with nasal ventilation. (At The Children's Medical Center, we have found that the simple addition of the pass-over humidifier produced by Respironics [Murrysville PA] reduces the incidence of this complication, especially in end-stage Cystic Fibrosis patients.)

The chapter, "Intermittent Positive-Pressure Ventilation through a Tracheostomy," omitted two products that are used by ventilator-dependent individuals in the United States. In the section under speech, the author did not mention the use of speaking valves. The Passy-Muir Inc company (Irvine CA) produces a one-way valve that is easily attached to the tracheostomy tube to facilitate speech. A valve specifically designed for use with a positive-pressure ventilator is also available from the company.

Another company that was omitted from this chapter is Aequitron Medical (Minneapolis MN). They produce a popular line of portable home mechanical ventilators that are user friendly, easy to operate, and comparable in size to other home ventilators.

This section could have been expanded with information on the variety of commercially available tracheostomy tubes. A discussion on cuffed, uncuffed, and fenestrated tracheostomy tubes, their complications, advantages, and disadvantages would be valuable to practitioners.

As a pediatric respiratory discharge planner, I was disappointed with the chapter on pediatric home ventilation. The author did not mention the use of secondary alarms for pediatric patients dependent on mechanical ventilation. Low-pressure alarms on the ventilator may not always alert the caregiver to life-threatening situations, such as accidental decannulation. The ventilator low-pressure limit may be exceeded due to resistance in the tubing, a situation that would not result in an alarm. Any patient, regardless of age, who is at risk for sudden death in the event of accidental ventilator disconnection, should have a secondary alarm such as an oximeter or an apnea monitor.

Another consideration for pediatric patients is the circuit itself. The weight of permanent circuitry is sometimes a problem. Adjustments must also be made to decrease the amount of dead space in the ventilator circuits. Compressed volume in the circuit itself should also be considered when using volume ventilation with pediatric patients. These important considerations are not explored in either chapter.

The chapter on external negative-pressure was detailed and thorough, with good illustrations. All types of negative-pressure ventilators are covered as well as jackets, cuirasses, and cabinet respirators. The author provides detailed instructions, complete with photographs, to outline the process of making a jacket respirator. Chapter 5 covers other modes of ventilator assistance including phrenic nerve pacing, rocking beds, pneumobelts and high-frequency chest-wall oscillation.

The chapter on discharge planning covers several concerns of the family, patient, and discharge planner, including education and equipment required for the care of a ventilator-dependent individual. The author uses the University Hospital in Nottingham, England as an example. At this facility, hospital staff maintain an intense level of involvement with patients while they are at home. Home visits by hospital staff members assist families and allow medical reassessment of the patient when necessary. The staff at the hospital have appropriate information to arrange for re-admission to the hospital at the patient's request. One-week respite admissions are encouraged every three months to enhance the family's ability to care for the ventilator-dependent patient. Ventilator maintenance is completed either through a service contract or by hospital staff during routine admissions.

At our hospital, we use a team approach, because each discipline provides a different expertise. Training takes place well in advance of the actual discharge, and the at-home caregivers are asked to spend time at the bedside assuming the care of the ventilator-dependent individual. One important aspect of a ventilator discharge is the identification of a qualified home-care equipment provider, who assumes responsibility for the equipment once the patient is discharged. The companies we make referrals to have licensed respiratory therapists on call 24 hours/day in case of equipment malfunction. Parents and other caregivers are thoroughly trained in emergency care and CPR. In addition, most of our ventilator-dependent patients have professional nursing assistance in the home, in lieu of respite admissions as allowed in England.

I especially enjoyed the final chapter, written by a patient who is ventilator dependent.

To me, working with families and patients is a pleasure, and I am constantly inspired by their courage, determination, and zest for life. I appreciate the author's comments on the fullness of life—the ability to travel and the desire to remain as active as possible.

Overall, **Assisted Mechanical Ventilation at Home** is an easy-to-read concise reference. Although I noted some deficits for pediatric practices, and some differences due to medical practices for discharge planning in England and the United States, it is overall a good reference guide. The book would be particularly useful for the practitioner for facilitating his or her first discharge of a ventilator-dependent patient. It is also an excellent reference for negative-pressure ventilation, especially for the practitioner who does not have experience with this mode of ventilation.

**Teri Nikolai Wilson RRT RPFT**
The Children's Medical Center
Dayton, Ohio


# Call for Abstracts

## 1996 RESPIRATORY CARE OPEN FORUM

Early Deadline: February 11, 1996
Final Deadline: April 28, 1996

Accepted abstracts will be printed in the
October 1996 issue of RESPIRATORY CARE

Selected authors will present
their research at the OPEN FORUM during the
1996 AARC Annual Meeting in
San Diego, California

## RETROSPECTROSCOPE

# The Inside Story

Come, come, and sit you down.
You shall not budge.
You go not till I set you up a glass
Where you may see the inmost part of you.
Shakespeare
*Hamlet* III, iv

"No discovery of our time—or any other time— has been followed by so immediate and universal an outbreak of scientific activity" (from Silvanus Thompson's first presidential address before the Roentgen Society, November 5, 1897). What was this discovery that sped throughout the world with the speed of wireless and profoundly influenced the course of many sciences, especially Medicine?

On November 8, 1895, Wilhelm Conrad Roentgen, Professor of Physics at the University of Würzburg, passed the discharge from a large induction coil through an evacuated Crookes tube. The apparatus was in a completely darkened room and the tube was covered with black cardboard; nevertheless, at each discharge he observed that a paper screen covered with a fluorescent material became brightly illuminated. He soon found that not only black cardboard but all substances permitted the passage of "X-rays" (as he named them) but—and this is all-important—to differing degrees: a bound book of about 1,000 pages offered no hindrance, glass containing lead offered some, and lead itself, if at least 1.5 mm thick, almost blocked them. Most remarkable was his observation that "if the hand be held before the fluorescent screen, the shadow shows the bones darkly with only faint outlines of the surrounding tissues." (1)

Over the next few weeks he satisfied himself that he was not dealing with cathode or any other known type of rays and, by substituting a glass photographic plate for the fluorescent screen, he took the first roentgenogram—that of his wife's hand. He then wrote a communication to the Würzburg Physical Medical Society that the president immediately published in the December 28 Proceedings, more than three weeks before Roentgen presented his paper orally (January 23, 1896).

The response was dramatic. Roentgen, as was customary then (and now), had mailed to some of his physicist colleagues reprints of his paper and, with each, some photographic prints (his published paper contained no illustration—not even of his wife's hand, though the latter appeared miraculously in the English translation of his paper in *Science*, February 14, 1896). One colleague showed the paper and prints to a physician whose father, publisher of the Vienna *Freie Presse*, printed an article on Roentgen's discovery on January 5.*

On January 23, 1896, Roentgen gave his oral presentation to the Würzburg Society—the same day that an English translation of the December 28 report was printed in *Nature*. Albert Rudolph Kölliker, famous for his 1856 work on the electrocardiogram, presided, and in the discussion that followed the paper, it was he who proposed, with enthusiastic acclaim from the large audience, that x-rays thenceforth be called Roentgen rays (2).

Probably not even penicillin was used as rapidly and as widely as the new Roentgen rays. The supply of commercially available Crookes tubes quickly ran out, but almost anyone who knew a little about physics could easily assemble the equipment at little expense and go to work. Within the first year, more than 1,000 scientific papers and 50 books were published dealing entirely with Roentgen rays! A new journal, *Archives of Clinical Skiagraphy*† ("shadow writing") appeared in the spring of 1896, edited by Sydney Rowland, still a medical student (3). And a new Roentgen Society was formed in June 1897 (4).

The wide range of the uses of the new rays was amazing (5). Surgeons of course used them to examine broken bones, to

Reprinted with permission of the American Lung Association, from Am Rev Respir Dis 1976;113:381-385.

* In this modern age of speed, let us note humbly that in 1895-96, the total time between submission of Roentgen's paper and its world-wide acclaim by the press took no longer than 15 to 20 days (among these were the Christmas and New Year's holidays); this time includes that for review and acceptance by the editor, setting in type a 10-page article, proofreading and printing it, supplying reprints to the author, mailing reprints, delivery by a Postal Service and notice by the press!

† The Archives dropped the word Clinical from its title in 1897, to emphasize its broad field of interest, and one number later it dropped Skiagraphy and became the *Archives of the Roentgen Ray*.

study abnormal bony structures (figure 1) and to locate foreign objects. Others used them to detect, locate and characterize a wide variety of pulmonary disorders. Anatomists had a new tool to examine the human skeleton without even undressing the subject. Figure 2 shows the first radiograph of the entire skeleton taken with one exposure (produced by W. J. Morton, son of the Morton who first used ether for surgical anesthesia). The lady has removed only her corset; her hat pin, necklace, bracelet, rings, and highbutton shoes with nailed-on heels remain.

Within a few months, others put Roentgen rays to many uses that we often regard as more modern developments: studies of the motion and size of the human heart (6) reported first at the April 1896 meeting of the Association of American Physicians; angiographic examination of an amputated hand made after injection into its vessels of a medium opaque to x-rays (7); cineradiography of a leg in motion (8); examination of a patient's esophagus while he swallowed nitrate of bismuth (9); and locating an aortic aneurysm (10). Walter Cannon plunged into research on Roentgen rays while still a first-year medical student at Harvard and presented his classic work on the effect of emotions on gastric motility at the May 1897 meeting of the American Physiological Society (11).

Botanists and zoologists also got into the act. Volume 1 of the *Archives of Clinical Skiagraphy* contains roentgenograms of Homarus vulgaris (lobster) and Cancer pagurus (edible crab). The 1897 *Archives of the Roentgen Ray* contained its first supplement and it was completely devoted to Marine Zoology, with 36 illustrations of the British Echinodermata (figure 3). The effect of x-rays on ascaris eggs was also studied by 1897. One reviewer could adequately describe the diversity of experimental material only by quoting Macbeth:

> Eye of newt, and toe of frog,
> Wool of bat, and tongue of dog,
> Adder's fork, and blind worm's sting,
> Lizard's leg, and howlet's wing ...

One even noted that the light of glowworms (like Roentgen's rays) passed through aluminum and cast shadows (4).

Equally fascinating was the early application of the Roentgen ray to many nonbiological problems. Hedley, in his 1897 review (5), noted:

> It now also bids fair to prove useful in other "arts and crafts." It has been used, or its use suggested, in distinguishing real gems from artificial ones; to discover the fraudulent introduction of mineral substances into textile fabrics to increase their weight; to discover the contents of packages in the parcel post; to recognize explosives and contraband in baggage; to age and oxidize alcohol; to test insulation in the construction of cables; to ascertain cohesion in welding.

(I confess that I thought that filling suitcases with bombs and finding them with x-rays were unique to our present stage of civilization!) Another early use was in metallography: Heycock in 1897 (4) "placed thin slices of alloys under the rays and revealed their structure in a marvellous way"; was this the beginning of x-ray diffraction to study the structure of matter?

## Harmful Effects of Roentgen Rays

For a while, most physicists and physicians thought that x-rays passed through tissues without damaging them; some individuals even used exposure to Roentgen rays to promote good health, and the feature of every charity bazaar was the x-ray booth where anyone could see the bones of his hands for sixpence (the forerunner of free x-ray examination of feet by shoe store clerks!). Elihu Thomson decided to find out for himself whether the passage of x-rays harmed tissues (12):

> I was interested sometime ago in regard to the effect of Röntgen rays on tissues. I had read a few times that certain people had been burned by Röntgen rays. I did not believe it. These rays went through tissue so eas-

Fig. 1. A young lady, with six toes on each foot, suffered from the extra breadth of her feet. The surgeon removed the supernumerary toes "with much greater precision than if he had not had it [the skiagram] to guide him." Plate XV from Arch Clin Skiagraphy, 1896, 1.

ily that their action could not amount to anything, but it was certainly worthwhile investigating so as to know ... I put my finger up to the clear glass window and kept the other fingers pretty well shielded by the blue glass of other parts of the tube. I exposed the finger for half an hour to the rays, a Holtz machine being the source of electricity. I put the finger up pretty close to the tube, and after half an hour I thought perhaps it was not long enough, perhaps it was not half long enough. But if there were to be any effect it would be equivalent to a few hours distance, and as I got tired I went no farther. I shut down the tube and went away. Five, six, seven, eight days passed and nothing happened, and I felt that people had been mistaken about the effect of the rays. But on the ninth day the finger began to redden; on the twelfth day there was a blister, and a very sore blister. On the thirteenth and fourteenth day after exposure, the blister had included all the skin down to the part not exposed and had gone around the finger almost to the other side. The whole of the epidermis came away and left an ulcer without any possibility of recovering its own epidermis except from the edges, and I had to go through that painful process of having a raw sore there and the epidermis growing in from the side and gradually closing up. Only three days ago was the sore actually closed, and the skin is yet very tender, and nature does not appear to have found out how to make a good skin over that finger. The skin still comes off in flakes and is very disagreeable and very tender, and there is a burning, smarting, sensation every

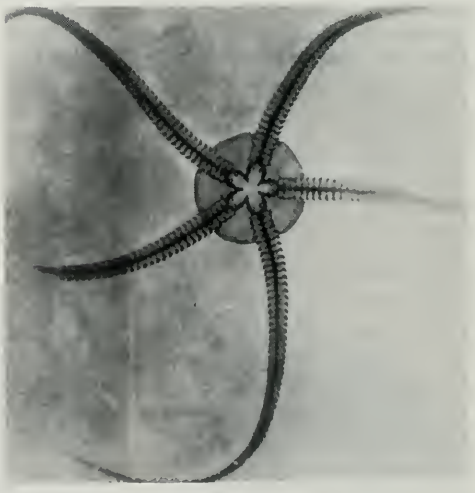


Fig. 2. First x-ray picture of the entire adult body at one exposure. The tube was 54 inches from the photographic plate. "Time, including stoppages, thirty minutes." Plate XXX b from Arch Roentgen Ray, 1897 (July), 2.

Fig. 3. X-ray photography of Ophiurus Ciliaris. From the first Supplement to *Archives of the Roentgen Ray*, 1897. It dealt entirely with radiography of marine biology, specifically with the British Echinodermata.

> now and then. But I am satisfied it is coming out all right ... This has taken six and a half weeks today.

That was written in 1896. It convinced Grubbe to devise lead shielding that same year and Price to make lead-lined gloves in 1898. But it didn't reach or convince everyone. Thomas Edison was intrigued first with "photographing" the brain. When that yielded nothing of interest, he became fascinated with the idea of fluorescent light bulbs. According to Griggs (2, p. 783), Edison began to use modified Crookes tubes as light bulbs, calling them "fluorescent lamps." The results were disastrous: "... I [said Edison] started in to make a number of these lamps, but I soon found that the x-ray had affected poisonously my assistant, Mr. Dally, so that his hair came out and his flesh commenced to ulcerate. I then concluded it would not do, and that it would not be a very popular kind of light, so I dropped it ..." (Understatement of the century!)

Dally died in 1904 at the age of 39—the first fatality from x-ray "poisoning" in the United States. In April 1898, the Council of the Roentgen Society appointed the first committee to collect information on alleged injurious effects of x-rays. One of the five-man group reported in 1899, in part (13):

> We may, I think, safely assert that the length of exposure necessary to produce any injury is at least three or four times that required to obtain a radiograph with the improved apparatus now at our disposal, even where the most opaque parts of the body are concerned, and then only when the patient is specially susceptible to the electrical forces which cause the injury.

It is noteworthy that the first cure of cancer by x-ray therapy was reported in 1899, three years before the first report of cancer *caused* by x-ray exposure. If the cancer-*caused* had preceded the cancer-*cured*, would the story of x-rays have stopped abruptly with the cancer-caused? (14)

## Rays before Roentgen

> In the history of Science, nothing is more true than that the discoverer—even the greatest of discoverers—is but the descendant of his scientific forefathers, is always and essentially the product of the age in which he is born. Roentgen himself has frankly avowed the ancestry of his discoveries. He himself has stated that, being aware of the existence of unsolved problems respecting the emission of cathode rays in and by an electrically stimulated vacuum tube, he had for a long time followed with the greatest interest the researches of Hertz and of Lenard, and had determined, as soon as he should find the necessary leisure, to make some researches of his own. Behind Roentgen then, stand Lenard and Hertz; behind Hertz stand Crookes, and Varley, and Hittorf, and Sprengel and Geissler; and so back to Hauksbee, and Boyle, and Otto Guericke, into the beginnings of modern science as it emerged from the vain imaginings and occult mysteries of Mediaeval night (15).

Hedley (5) began his account with the fascinating electrical demonstrations that amused and amazed the savants of the French Court in the 1750s and the "electric egg," an ovoid glass vessel with a variable vacuum, across which leaped a spark created by an electrical machine. Then in 1838, Faraday began his systematic investigations of phenomena that occur when electric discharges pass through rarefied gases. Four years later, Abria of Boulogne, passing current from an induction coil through an "electric egg," saw the beautiful purple light that streamed from the positive to negative pole and had the extraordinary power of exciting fluorescence. In 1879, Crookes, working with much higher degrees of vacuum (one millionth of an atmosphere or less), discovered emanations from the negative pole that excited brilliant fluorescence and were deflected by a magnet; he regarded these as a stream of negatively electrified molecules or atoms flying with great velocity from the cathode. Crookes' experiments were interesting but his tube shared the oblivion of the electric egg until Hertz took it out of retirement. Hertz believed that the cathode discharge did not consist of electrified particles but was wave motion. When Hertz found that the waves passed through a thin aluminum sheet, Lenard decided to bring the cathode rays *outside* the glass tube and did it by substituting a small window of thin aluminum for a portion of the glass tube; by so doing, he made both cathode rays and true Roentgen rays available for study. Roentgen differentiated the two.

Was Roentgen's an accidental discovery? Others might have discovered them earlier, but did not. Crookes, after experimenting with his tube and developing some photographic plates, noted on his pictures marks that corresponded to his fingers; thinking the plates were defective, he returned them to the manufacturer with some strong remarks! Roentgen's research dealt with the nature of rays coming from Lenard or Crookes tubes. "Roentgen's discovery cannot in any sense be called accidental; it was the result of deliberate and directed thought. He was looking for something—he knew not precisely what. And he found it. Fortunate the discovery may well be deemed, but not fortuitous" (15).

**Julius H. Comroe, Jr.**

### REFERENCES


1. Röntgen, W. C.: Ueber eine neue Art von Strahlen, Sitzung Physikal-Medicin Gesellschaft, Würzburg, 1895, 137, 132-141. (English translation: Science, 1896 [Feb. 14], 3, 227-231.)
2. Grigg, E. R. N.: The Trail of the Invisible Light from X-Strahlen to Radio(bio)logy, Charles C Thomas, Springfield, Ill., 1965.
3. Archives of Clinical Skiagraphy, vol. 1, edited by Sydney Rowland. Rebman Publishing Co., 1896.

4. Thompson, S.: Minutes of the first meeting of the Roentgen Society, June 3, 1897, Arch Roentgen Ray, 1897, 2, 5-6.
5. Hedley, W. S.: Roentgen rays. A survey, present and perspective, Arch Roentgen Ray, 1897, 2, 6-12.
6. Williams, F. H.: A method for more fully determining the outline of the heart by means of the fluorescope [sic] together with other uses of this instrument in medicine, Boston Med Surg J, 1896, 135, 335-337.
7. Haschek, E. and Lidentahl, O. Th.: Ein Beitrag zur praktischen Verwertung der Photographie nach Röntgen, Wien Klin Wochenschr, 1896, 9, 63-64.
8. MacIntyre, J.: X-ray records for the cinematograph, Arch Skiagraphy, 1897, 1, 37.
9. Kummel: Ger Surg Soc, 1897 (April), Quoted by Hedley (5), p. 10.
10. Béclère, Oudin and Barthelemy: Soc Med des Hôpit, Quoted by Hedley (5).
11. Cannon, W. B.: The movements of the stomach studied by means of the Röntgen rays, Am J Physiol, 1898, 1, 359-382.
12. Rowland, H. A., Thomson, E., Pupin, M. I., and Kennelly, A. E.: The Röntgen ray and its relation to physics: a topical discussion, Trans Amer Inst Elect Engin, 1896, 13, 403-432 (quoted by Nelson, P. A.: Role of scientific societies in disseminating knowledge and fostering research on x-rays, Med Instrum, 1975, 9, 260-266).
13. Payne, E.: Notes on the effects of x-rays, Arch Roentgen Ray, 1899 (Feb), 3, 67-69.
14. Spear, F. G.: Early days of experimental radiology, Br J Radiol, 1973, 46, 762-765.
15. Thompson, Silvanus: First Presidential Address to the Roentgen Society, Arch Roentgen Ray, 1897, 2, 23-30.


# Call for Abstracts

## 1996 RESPIRATORY CARE OPEN FORUM

Early Deadline: February 11, 1996
Final Deadline: April 28, 1996

Accepted abstracts will be printed in the
October 1996 issue of RESPIRATORY CARE

Selected authors will present
their research at the OPEN FORUM during the
1996 AARC Annual Meeting in
San Diego, California

# Appreciation of Reviewers

The Editors of RESPIRATORY CARE are deeply grateful to the following persons who have contributed their expertise and time to the reviewing of manuscripts and OPEN FORUM abstracts during the past year.

Alexander B Adams MPH RRT
Sheila Horan Alderson BS RRT
Michael Anders BS RRT
Jeanette Asselin BA RRT
Tom Barnes EdD RRT
Ralph E Bartel MEd RRT
DE Bebout PhD RRT
Peter Betit RRT
Howard J Birenbaum MD
Paul B Blanch BA RRT
Susan Blonshine RPFT RRT
Karen M Boudin MA RRT
Kathleen M Boyle MS RRT
Richard D Branson RRT
Laura I Brougher RN RRT
Robert A Brown BS RPFT RRT
William "Chuck" Burke PhD RRT
Robert S Campbell RRT
John E Capehart MD
Waldemar A Carlo MD
Frank J Caruso BS RRT
Bartolome R Celli MD
Jacquelyn L Chamberlin MA OTR/L
David W Chang EdD RRT
Robert L Chatburn RRT
Sherry E Courtney MD MS
Gerard J Criner MD
Joseph A Curro MBA RRT
J Randall Curtis MD
Michael P Czervinske RRT
Phillip R Dellinger MD
Franklin Dennison MEd RPFT RRT
Patricia Ann Doorley MS RRT
William H Dubbs MS RRT
Crystal L Dunlevy EdD RRT
Charles G Durbin MD
Thomas D East PhD
Mohamad F El-Khatib MS
James B Fink RRT
Robert R Fluck Jr MS RRT
Philip J Fracica MD
David R Gerber DO
John M Graybeal CRTT
Barry Grenier BA RRT
Ken Hargett RRT
John E Heffner MD
Dean Hess PhD RRT
Mark Heulitt MD
Nicholas S Hill MD
Leslie A Hoffman RN PhD
William J Holt RRT RPFT
James M Hurst MD
Charles G Irvin PhD
Kelly Jager RRT
Jay A Johannigman MD
Arthur Jones EdD RRT
Robert M Kacmarek PhD RRT
Thomas J Kallstrom RRT
William Kaye MD
Jim Keenan BS RRT
John P Kinsella MD
Gretchen Lawrence BA RRT
L Lynn LeBouef BS RRT RCP
Nancy Lowe RRT
John M Luce MD
John A Lund BA RRT
Neil R MacIntyre MD
Barry Make MD
Cindy Malinowski MA RRT
William Malley MS RRT CPFT
Hugh S Mathewson MD
Michael McPeck BS RRT
Mark W Millard MD
Chris C Miller BA RRT
Shelley C Mishoe PhD RRT
Jon Nilsestuen PhD RRT
Timothy B Op't Holt EdD RRT
John M Palmisano RRT
Stephen Picca MD
Fran Piedalue BS RRT
David J Pierson MD
Alan Plummer MD
Joseph L Rau Jr PhD RRT
Gregg L Ruppel MEd RRT
John W Salyer RRT
Allan B Saposnick MS RRT
Catherine SH Sassoon MD
Paul A Selecky MD
Kevin Shrake MA RRT
Mark Simmons MS RPFT RRT
Kenneth J Smith MD
Peter Southorn MD
Dennis C Stevens MD
James K Stoller MD
John E Thompson RRT
Al Torres Jr MD
Martin Tweeddale MD
James Volpe III MEd RRT
Jack Wanger MBA RRT RPFT
Robert H Warren MD
Mary E Watson EdD RRT
Jonathan B Waugh PhD RRT
Robert R Weilacher RRT
Mark C Wilson MD
Theodore J Witek DrPH RPFT RRT

# Author Index to Volume 40 (1995)


Abbona H & Navarro R: Mechanical ventilation in Duchenne's disease: a case report **40(7):734** *case report*
Adatia I, *coauthor*: Betit **40(7):706**
Alagar R, *coauthor*: Hess **40(5):498**
Alderson SH & Warren RH: Respiratory inductive plethysmography—application in infants **40(1):114** *Kittredge's Corner*
Aman CS, *coauthor*: Buff **40(6):624**
Anders M, *coauthor*: Carmack **40(1):28**
Anders M, *coauthor:* Heulitt **40(1):74**
Anders M, *coauthor:* Schexnayder **40(1):44**
Anders M, *coauthor:* Torres **40(1):22**
Antunes MJ, *coauthor*: Holt **40(2):145**
Arnoldi DK, *coauthor*: Liffmann **40(8):820**
Aufderheide TP: Pacemakers and electrical therapy during advanced cardiac life support **40(4):364** *conference proceedings*
Barnes TA: Clinical practice guidelines for resuscitation in acute care hospitals **40(4):346** *conference proceedings*
Bassein L, *coauthor*: Del Bufalo **40(10):1042**
Bavli SZ, *coauthor*: Buff **40(6):624**
Benham D, *coauthor:* Heulitt **40(1):74**
Benjamin P, *coauthor*: Betit **40(7):706**
Betit P et al: Inhaled nitric oxide: evaluation of a continuous titration delivery technique for infant mechanical and manual ventilation **40(7):706** *research article*
Betit PJ, *coauthor:* Bower **40(1):61**
Bigatello LM, *coauthor*: Hess **40(7):702**
Binns M, *coauthor:* Schexnayder **40(1):44**
Bishop MJ: Practice guidelines for airway care during resuscitation **40(4):393** *conference proceedings*
Blackson T et al: A case of patient-ventilator dyssynchrony caused by inadvertent PEEP **40(11):1144** *case report*
Bloch MH, *coauthor*: Buff **40(6):624**
Bogdonoff DL, coauthor: Leisure **40(12):1279**
Bogdonoff DL, *coauthor*: Spiekermann **40(6):644**
Boudin KM: Strategies for maintaining ACLS skills in hospitals **40(5):550** *conference proceedings*
Bower LK & Betit PJ: Extracorporeal life support and high-frequency oscillatory ventilation—alternatives for the neonate in severe respiratory failure **40(1):61** *review article*
Branson RD & Davis K Jr: Work of breathing imposed by five ventilators used for long-term support—the effects of PEEP and simulated patient demand **40(12):1270** *original research*
Branson RD & Johannigman JA: Ventilatory support during cardiopulmonary resuscitation **40(5):479** *conference proceedings*
Branson RD, *coauthor*: Haas **40(7):716**
Branson RD, *coauthor*: Hess **40(9):957**
Branson RD: Broadening our outlook—oxygen therapy in the People's Republic of China **40(8):810** *editorial*
Brooks CW Jr, *coauthor*: Mishoe **40(11):1120**
Brougher P: Consensus III—assessing innovations in mechanical ventilatory support **40(9):925** *editorial*
Brougher P: *contributor:* 75 Years Ago in Texas Medicine: February 1920—a Case of Foreign Body in the Lung **40(10):1074** *Historical Notes*
Brougher P: response to Hagan letter **40(2):186**
Buff DD et al: Circadian patterns of emergency asthma presentations: implications for staffing and treatment **40(6):624** *research article*
Cairns MA: review of Essentials of Anatomy and Physiology with Instructor's Guide & Student Workbook, 3rd edition [Scanlon & Sanders] **40(4):444** *book review*
Campbell RS, *coauthor*: Haas **40(7):716**
Carlo WA, *coauthor*: Cifuentes **40(6):667**
Carmack J et al: Comparison of inspiratory work of breathing in young lambs during flow-triggered and pressure-triggered ventilation **40(1):28** *research article*
Caruso FJ, *coauthor*: Decker **40(2):185**
Cavalier C, *coauthor*: Liffmann **40(8):820**
Cavanaugh S, *coauthor*: Simmons **40(6):618**
Chandra NC, *coauthor*: Halperin **40(4):380**
Chatila W et al: The effect of pulmonary secretions on respiratory mechanics in intubated patients **40(10):1048** *case series*
Childers M & Jones A: The status of research instruction in advanced respiratory care practitioner programs—a

survey **40(2):152** *research article*
Ciarlariello S & Cohn RC: review of Pediatric Respiratory Disease: Diagnosis and Treatment [Hilman] **40(7):776** *book review*
Ciarlo J, *coauthor*: Blackson **40(11):1144**
Cifuentes J & Carlo WA: review of Lung Surfactant: Basic Research in the Pathogenesis of Lung Disorders [Müller & von Wichert] **40(6):667** *book review*
Clark WR Jr, *coauthor*: Fluck **40(6):631**
Cohn RC, *coauthor*: Ciarlariello **40(7):776**
Comroe JH Jr: RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX: How to succeed in failing without really trying **40(10):1069** *Classic Reprints*
Comroe JH Jr: RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX: the inside story **40(12):1346** *Classic Reprint*
Comroe JH Jr: RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX: Whodunit (and why) Part I **40(6):658** *Classic Reprint*
Comroe JH Jr: RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX: Whodunit (and why) Part II **40(7):770** *Classic Reprints*
Comroe JH Jr: RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX—the witch doctor, the which doctor, and the wish doctor **40(2):175** *Classic Reprint*
Consensus Conference Participants: Consensus conference—assessing innovations in mechanical ventilatory support **40(9):928** *statement*
Contolini T, *coauthor*: Liffmann **40(8):820**
Courtney SE: review of New Therapies for Neonatal Respiratory Failure [Boynton, Carlo, & Jobe] **40(8):878** *book review*
Criner GJ & Isaac L: Psychological issues in the ventilator-dependent patient **40(8):855** *review article*
Criner GJ, *coauthor*: Gilmore **40(7):722**
Cullen JA, *coauthor*: Holt **40(2):145**
Czachowski RJ: Continuing education—motivated or mandated? **40(6):617** *editorial*
Davis K Jr, *coauthor*: **40(12):1270**
Davis K Jr, *coauthor*: Haas **40(7):716**
Deao D, *coauthor*: Simmons **40(6):618**
Dechert RE, *coauthor*: Haas **40(7):716**
Dechert RE, *coauthor*: Liffmann **40(8):820**
Decker MJ & Caruso FJ: review of Handbook of Sleep-Related Breathing Disorders [Stradling] **40(2):185** *book review*
Del Bufalo C et al: Severity scores in respiratory intensive care: APACHE II predicted mortality better than SAPS II **40(10):1042** *original research*
Dellinger RP: Clinical outcome end points and assessment of mechanical ventilation innovations **40(9):975** *conference proceedings*
Dennison FH, *coauthor*: Mishoe **40(11):1120**
DeVries DF: Mechanical ventilation innovations: the manufacturer's perspective **40(9):942** *conference proceedings*
Dhand R, *coauthor*: Fink **40(2):186**
Dhand R, *coauthor*: Tobin **40(9):971**
Douce FH, *coauthor*: Dunlevy **40(8):889**
Dunlevy C & Douce FH: CRCE through the Journal—1995 **40(8):889** *examination*
Dunlevy CL: *contributor*: On the Air Route **40(9):999** *Historical Notes*
Durbin CG Jr: First, do no harm—balancing the risks and benefits of medical procedures **40(11):1118** *editorial*
Durbin CG Jr: Resuscitation in acute care hospitals—the time for change is now! **40(4):335** *conference proceedings*
East TD: Resources for assessing innovations in mechanical ventilatory support: the missing link **40(9):987** *conference proceedings*
El-Lessy HN: Pulmonary vascular control in hypoplastic left-heart syndrome: hypoxic- and hypercarbic-gas therapy **40(7):737** *case report*
Fan LL, *coauthor:* Schellhase **40(1):48**
Fasano L, *coauthor*: Del Bufalo **40(10):1042**
Fawcett DD: Inhaled anti-inflammatory agents in childhood asthma—theory and practice **40(1):108** *Drug Capsule*
Fink J & Dhand R: Reader-investigators probe differences in aerosol study results **40(2):186** *letter*
Fluck RR Jr et al: Effects of aerosolized synthetic surfactant in a canine model of wood smoke inhalation **40(6):631** *research article*
Fluck RR Jr: Bad press for RCPs? **40(11):1149** *letter*
Fluck RR Jr: The first ACLS course—resuscitation training for students **40(5):567** *conference proceedings*
Folk LM, *coauthor*: Haas **40(7):716**
Fortenberry JD, *coauthor:* Teague **40(1):86**
Frye T, *coauthor*: Mishoe **40(11):1120**
Gilmore BJ et al: Measurement of airway occlusion pressure ($P_{0.1}$) by a semi-automated bedside system **40(7):722** *research article*
Goodfellow LT, *coauthor*: Harwood **40(2):187**
Goodfellow LT: review of Respiratory Infections: A Scientific Basis for Management [Niederman, Sarosi, & Glassroth, editors] **40(9):994** *book review*
Graybeal JM, *coauthor*: Russell **40(7):728**
Greene D: review of Pulmonary Rehabilitation—Guidelines to Success, 2nd ed [Hodgkin, Connors, & Bell, editors] **40(1):122** *book review*
Greenspan JS, *coauthor*: Holt **40(2):145**
Gunella G, *coauthor*: Del Bufalo **40(10):1042**
Haas CF et al: Patient-determined inspiratory flow during assisted mechanical ventilation **40(7):716** *research article*
Hagan GD: A reader objects to small-type abstracts **40(2):186** *letter*
Haines S: Therapeutic touch and respiratory therapy **40(11):1149** *letter*
Hall JB, *coauthor*: Chatila **40(10):1048**
Halperin HR et al: Compression techniques and blood

flow during cardiopulmonary resuscitation **40(4):380** *conference proceedings*
Hamill RJ: Resuscitation—when is enough, enough? **40(5):515** *conference proceedings*
Harwood RJ et al: response to Fink & Dhand letter **40(2):187**
Hess D & Alagar R: Methods of emergency drug administration **40(5):498** *conference proceedings*
Hess D & Branson RD: Case studies on mechanical ventilator innovations: perspectives of two clinicians **40(9):957** *conference proceedings*
Hess D et al: Inhaled nitric oxide delivery systems: a role for respiratory therapists **40(7):702** *editorial*
Hess D: Clinical practice guidelines—why, whence, and whither? **40(12):1264** *editorial*
Heulitt MJ et al: Acute respiratory distress syndrome in pediatric patients: redirecting therapy to reduce iatrogenic lung injury **40(1):74** *review article*
Heulitt MJ, *coauthor*: Carmack **40(1):28**
Heulitt MJ, *coauthor:* Schexnayder **40(1):44**
Heulitt MJ, *coauthor:* Torres **40(1):22**
Hill KV, *coauthor*: Mishoe **40(11):1120**
Hiltner M: Radiologic abnormalities due to penetrating chest trauma **40(2):181** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*
Hoffman GM: Airway complications of instrumentation—a physiologic approach **40(1):97** *review article*
Holland J, *coauthor*: Liffmann **40(8):820**
Holt S, *coauthor*: Carmack **40(1):28**
Holt S: review of Cardiac and Pulmonary Management [Bussy, Wilson, & Lazar, editors] **40(1):121** *book review*
Holt WJ et al: Pulmonary response to an inhaled bronchodilator in chronically ventilated preterm infants with suspected airway reactivity **40(2):145** *research article*
Hurford WE, *coauthor*: Hess **40(7):702**
Isaac L, *coauthor*: Criner **40(8):855**
Johannigman JA, *coauthor*: Branson **40(5):479**
Jones A, *coauthor*: Childers **40(2):152**
Jones A: Second International Cochrane Colloquium—official annual meeting of the Cochrane Collaboration: a conference report **40(2):171** *report*
Jubran A, *coauthor*: Tobin **40(9):971**
Jun Z, *coauthor*: Yuan **40(8):811**
Kacmarek RM, *coauthor*: Hess **40(7):702**
Kacmarek RM: Introducing new mechanical ventilation technology: the hospital perspective **40(9):947** *conference proceedings*
Kaye W: Research on ACLS training—which methods improve skill and knowledge retention? **40(5):538** *conference proceedings*
Kollef MH & Silver P: Ventilator-associated pneumonia: an update for clinicians **40(11):1130** *review*
Komara JJ Jr & Stoller JK: The impact of a postoperative oxygen therapy protocol on use of pulse oximetry and oxygen therapy **40(11):1125** *original research*
Laghi F, *coauthor*: Tobin **40(9):971**
Law JS, *coauthor*: Liffmann **40(8):820**
Lawrence G: Asthma self-management programs can reduce the need for hospital-based asthma care **40(1):39** *research article*
Lawrence G: review of Principles and Practice of Pulmonary Rehabilitation [Casaburi & Petty, editors] **40(4):442** *book review*
Lawson DH, *coauthor*: Liffmann **40(8):820**
Lebowitz LC & Mazzagatti FA: Closed-system suction catheter **40(10):1076** *letter*
Leisure GS et al: Airway management of the chronically intubated patient **40(12):1279** *review article*
Leisure GS, *coauthor*: Spiekermann **40(6):644**
Levin HR, *coauthor*: Halperin **40(4):380**
Liffmann SM et al: Multisite evaluation of a hemoglobin-based control for pH and blood-gas, electrolyte, and CO-oximetry instruments **40(8):820** *research article*
Limauro J et al: Responses to inhaled bronchodilator in patients with acute airflow obstruction **40(8):815** *research article*
Lowe B: Children and health-care reform **40(1):19** *editorial*
Lowe GR: Development of a safety module to satisfy the requirements of regulatory agencies for hospital staff safety education **40(1):35** *research article*
MacDonald M, *coauthor*: Liffmann **40(8):820**
MacIntyre NR: Efficacy assessment criteria based on risk and cost **40(9):968** *conference proceedings*
MacIntyre NR: Psychological factors in weaning from mechanical ventilatory support **40(3):277** *symposium paper*
MacIntyre NR: Respiratory factors in weaning from mechanical ventilatory support **40(3):244** *symposium paper*
MacLeod B, *coauthor*: Wood **40(3):219**
Mahler DA, *coauthor*: Limauro **40(8):815**
Mahoney JJ, *coauthor*: Wong **40(6):638**
Mahutte CK, *coauthor*: Sassoon **40(3):249**
Malinowski C: Neonatal resuscitation program and pediatric advanced life support **40(5):575** *conference proceedings*
Manthous CA, *coauthor*: Chatila **40(10):1048**
Marcelis J: Not turf protection but teamwork **40(3):302** *letter*
Marini JJ: Dyspnea during weaning **40(3):271** *symposium paper*
Marini JJ: Weaning techniques and protocols **40(3):233** *symposium paper* [correction in 40(5):574]
Mathewson HS: New avenues of asthma therapy **40(6):655** *Drug Capsule*
Mathewson HS: Selective drug therapy for pulmonary hypertension **40(8):871** *Drug Capsule*
Mazzagatti FA, coauthor: Lebowitz **40(10):1076**
McDonald G: review of Progress in Domiciliary Respiratory

Care: Current Status and Perspective [Kira & Petty, editors] **40(6):666** *book review*
McFalls DL: Laboratory evaluation of oxygen-enrichment methods using a portable volume ventilator **40(2):156** *research article*
Medin DL & Ognibene FP: Pulmonary disease in AIDS: implications for respiratory care practitioners **40(8):832** *review article*
Meibalane R, *coauthor*: Noblett **40(10):1063**
Milisch RA et al: Removal of a closed-system, directional-tip suction catheter **40(4):438** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*
Milisch RA et al: response to Lebowitz & Mazzagatti **40(10):1076** *letter*
Min LP, *coauthor*: Yuan **40(8):811**
Mishoe SC et al: Octave waveband analysis to determine sound frequencies and intensities produced by nebulizers and humidifiers used with hoods **40(11):1120** *original research*
Mishoe SC: Quiet—hospital zone: why we should reduce noise levels in hospitals **40(11):1116** *editorial*
Moffatt S, *coauthor*: Wood **40(3):219**
Moon L, *coauthor*: Simmons **40(6):618**
Morelli A, *coauthor*: Del Bufalo **40(10):1042**
Muza SR, *coauthor*: Gilmore **40(7):722**
Navarro R, *coauthor*: Abbona **40(7):734**
Nieman GF, *coauthor*: Fluck **40(6):631**
Noblett KE & Meibalane R: Respiratory care practitioners as primary providers of neonatal intubation services in a community hospital: an analysis **40(10):1063** *original research*
Noblett KE & Selby JW: Tracheobronchial fracture from blunt chest trauma: a case report **40(8):866** *case report*
Ognibene FP, *coauthor*: Medin **40(8):832**
Olmstead EM, *coauthor*: Limauro **40(8):815**
Olson PM: review of Hyperactive Software—clinical simulations for use with IBM PCs and Macintosh computers [Leffler] **40(7):777** *software review*
Op't Holt T: review of Respiratory Physiology, 3rd edition [Mines] **40(4):442** *book review*
Op't Holt TB: comparative review of respiratory care equipment texts: Respiratory Care Equipment, 5th ed, [McPherson]; Respiratory Care Equipment [Branson, Hess, & Chatburn, editors]; Principles & Applications of Cardiorespiratory Care Equipment [Eubanks & Bone, editors]; Equipment Theory for Respiratory Care [White] **40(8):876** *book review*
Pacilli AMG, *coauthor*: Del Bufalo **40(10):1042**
Paskanik AM, *coauthor*: Fluck **40(6):631**
Pepe PE: ACLS systems and training programs—do they make a difference? **40(4):427** *conference proceedings*
Perkins S: review of Interdisciplinary Handbook of Adult Lifespan Learning [Sinnott, editor] **40(10):1068** *book review*
Peters K, *coauthor*: Simmons **40(6):618**
Piedalue F: review of Principles and Applications of Cardiorespiratory Care Equipment [Eubanks & Bone, editors] **40(11):1148** *book review*
Pierson DJ: Current limitations of mechanical ventilation: what improvements should the clinician expect? **40(9):933** *conference proceedings*
Pierson DJ: Long-term mechanical ventilation and weaning **40(3):289** *symposium paper*
Pierson DJ: New Horizons in respiratory care: the first decade **40(3):225** *foreword*
Pierson DJ: Nonrespiratory aspects of weaning from mechanical ventilation **40(3):263** *symposium paper*
Pierson DJ: Weaning from mechanical ventilation: why all the confusion? **40(3):228** *symposium paper*
Prewitt MW, *coauthor*: Shaw **40(10):1038**
Prewitt MW, *coauthor*: Shaw **40(10):1052**
Prouty E, *coauthor*: Liffmann **40(8):820**
Quarta CC, *coauthor*: Del Bufalo **40(10):1042**
Rau JL Jr: ACLS drugs used during resuscitation **40(4):404** *conference proceedings*
Rau JL, *coauthor*: Harwood **40(2):187**
Rayburn BK, *coauthor*: Halperin **40(4):380**
Rho DS, *coauthor*: Milisch **40(10):1076**
Rho DS, *coauthor*: Milisch **40(4):438**
Ritz R, *coauthor*: Hess **40(7):702**
Rizzo A, *coauthor*: Blackson **40(11):1144**
Rubenfeld GD: Do-not-resuscitate orders—a critical review of the literature **40(5):528** *conference proceedings*
Rubenfeld GD: Study design: statistical and methodologic considerations **40(9):980** *conference proceedings*
Russell GB & Graybeal JM: Accuracy of laminated disposable pulse-oximeter sensors **40(7):728** *research article*
Samples DA: review of Respiratory Care Equipment, 5th edition [McPherson] **40(6):666** *book review*
Sanders AB: The development of AHA guidelines for emergency cardiac care **40(4):338** *conference proceedings*
Sassoon CSH & Mahutte CK: What you need to know about the ventilator in weaning **40(3):249** *symposium paper*
Sassoon CSH: Noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation in acute respiratory failure—review of reported experience with special attention to use during weaning **40(3):282** *symposium paper*
Schell SA, *coauthor*: Milisch **40(10):1076**
Schell SA, *coauthor*: Milisch **40(4):438**
Schellhase DE & Fan LL: Flexible endoscopy in the diagnosis and management of neonatal and pediatric airway and pulmonary disorders **40(1):48** *review article*
Schexnayder SM et al: High-frequency oscillatory ventilation as a bridge from extracorporeal membrane oxygenation in pediatric respiratory failure **40(1):44** *case series*
Selby JW, *coauthor*: Noblett **40(8):866**
Serebryansky BM, *coauthor*: Buff **40(6):624**
Sharar SR: The effects of artificial airways on airflow and

ventilatory mechanics: basic concepts and clinical relevance **40(3):257** *symposium paper*
Sharar SR: Weaning and extubation are not the same thing **40(3):239** *symposium paper*
Shaw RC & Prewitt MW: A behavioral science approach to clinical research **40(10):1038** *editorial*
Shaw RC & Prewitt MW: Selecting students for a baccalaureate-degree respiratory care program **40(10):1052** *original research*
Shrake K: RCPs and health-care reform: demonstrating value, creating opportunity **40(2):162** *Program Committee Special Lecture*
Silver P, *coauthor*: Kollef **40(11):1130**
Simmons M et al: Bench evaluation—three face-shield CPR barrier devices **40(6):618** *research article*
Sittig SE: Neonate with right hemithorax opacification **40(3):296** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*
Slutsky AS: FDA: the regulatory process **40(9):952** *conference proceedings*
Spiekermann BF et al: Nonsurgical airway management: general considerations and specific considerations in patients with coexisting disease **40(6):644** *review article*
Spiekermann BF, coauthor: Leisure **40(12):1279**
Spitzer AR, *coauthor*: Holt **40(2):145**
St Louis P, *coauthor*: Liffmann **40(8):820**
Stoller JK, *coauthor*: Komara **40(11):1125**
Stoller JK: Respiratory care in the era of work redesign: out with the bath water (maybe) but do save the baby! **40(7):700** *editorial*
Stone DJ, coauthor: Leisure **40(12):1279**
Stone DJ, *coauthor*: Spiekermann **40(6):644**
Strohl KP: Guidelines—a call for local implementation and assessment of impact **40(12):1269** *editorial*
Teague WG & Fortenberry JD: Noninvasive ventilatory support in pediatric respiratory failure **40(1):86** *review article*
Thompson JE, *coauthor*: Betit **40(7):706**
Tobin MJ et al: Using physiologic end points to assess innovations in mechanical ventilation **40(9):971** *conference proceedings*
Torres A Jr et al: Evaluation of a method for measuring minute volumes during bias-flow ventilation **40(1):22** *research article*
Torres A Jr, *coauthor*: Carmack **40(1):28**
Torres A Jr, *coauthor:* Schexnayder **40(1):44**
Tosteson ANA, *coauthor*: Limauro **40(8):815**
Tsitlik JE, *coauthor*: Halperin **40(4):380**
Van Kessel AL, *coauthor*: Wong **40(6):638**
Warren RH, *coauthor*: Alderson **40(1):114**
Warren RH: From then 'till now—a brief history of ACH, respiratory care services, and the Diamond Conference **40(1):17** *editorial*
Watson ME: Median nerve damage from brachial artery puncture: a case report **40(11):1141** *case report*
Weber K: review of Remark Office OMR Software from Principia Products Inc **40(10):1068** *software review*
Weber K: The Diamond Conference special issue: a tradition of excellence **40(1):15** *foreword*
Weg JG, *coauthor*: Haas **40(7):716**
Wessel DL, *coauthor*: Betit **40(7):706**
Wiedeman GT: Some RCPs jeopardize their careers and our future **40(1):123** *letter*
Wilson S, *coauthor:* Torres **40(1):22**
Wilson SW, *coauthor*: Carmack **40(1):28**
Wilson TN: review of Assisted Mechanical Ventilation at Home: A Practical Guide [Kinnear] **40(12):1344** *book review*
Wise CR, *coauthor*: Haas **40(7):716**
Wiswell TE, *coauthor*: Holt **40(2):145**
Wong RJ et al: Evaluation of the Ciba Corning 840 blood gas analyzer **40(6):638** *research article*
Wood G et al: Weaning from mechanical ventilation: physician-directed vs a respiratory-therapist-directed protocol **40(3):219** *research article*
Yeh MP, *coauthor:* Torres **40(1):22**
Yuan LC et al: Clinical evaluation of pulse-dose and continuous-flow oxygen delivery **40(8):811** *research article*

# Subject Index to Volume 40 (1995)

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1-128 | JAN | 313-456 | APR | 681-792 | JUL | 1017-1096 | OCT |
| 129-200 | FEB | 457-600 | MAY | 793-904 | AUG | 1097-1240 | NOV |
| 201-312 | MAR | 601-680 | JUN | 905-1016 | SEP | 1241-1384 | DEC |


**Abdominal Displacement Ventilation**
Mechanical ventilation in Duchenne's disease: a case report [Abbona & Navarro] **40(7):734** *case report*

**Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome (AIDS):** ***See*** **Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV)**

**Administrative Management:** ***See*** **Management, Administrative**

**Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome (ARDS)**
Acute respiratory distress syndrome in pediatric patients: redirecting therapy to reduce iatrogenic lung injury [Heulitt et al] **40(1):74** *review article*

**Advanced Cardiac Life Support (ACLS):** ***See*** **Resuscitation & Resuscitation Equipment & Supplies**

**Aerosol Therapy**
Assessing response to bronchodilator at the point of care **40(12):1300** *clinical practice guideline*
Pulmonary response to an inhaled bronchodilator in chronically ventilated preterm infants with suspected airway reactivity [Holt et al] **40(2):145** *research article*
Reader-investigators probe differences in aerosol study results [Fink & Dhand] **40(2):186** *letter* [response by Harwood, Rau, & Goodfellow]; *also see related article by Harwood et al* **39(9):886**
Selection of an aerosol delivery device for neonatal and pediatric patients **40(12):1325** *clinical practice guideline*

**AIDS:** ***See*** **Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV)**

**Airway Care & Management:** ***Also see*** **Intubation** ***and*** **Extubation of the Airway** ***and*** **Suction, Suctioning, & Suction Devices & Supplies**
Airway complications of instrumentation: a physiologic approach [Hoffman] **40(1):97** *review article*
Dyspnea during weaning [Marini] **40(3):271** *symposium paper* **[correction on 40(5):574]**
Flexible endoscopy in the diagnosis and management of neonatal and pediatric airway and pulmonary disorders [Schellhase & Fan] **40(1):48** *review article*
Long-term mechanical ventilation and weaning [Pierson] **40(3):289** *symposium paper*
Management of airway emergencies **40(7):749** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Non-respiratory aspects of weaning from mechanical ventilation [Pierson] **40(3):263** *symposium paper*
Noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation in acute respiratory failure: review of reported experience with special attention to use during weaning [Sassoon] **40(3):282** *symposium paper*
Nonsurgical airway management: general considerations and specific considerations in patients with coexisting disease [Spiekermann et al] **40(6):644** *review article*
Practice guidelines for airway care during resuscitation [Bishop] **40(4):393** *conference proceedings*
Pulmonary response to an inhaled bronchodilator in chronically ventilated preterm infants with suspected airway reactivity [Holt et al] **40(2):145** *research article*
Respiratory care practitioners as primary providers of neonatal intubation services in a community hospital: an analysis [Noblett & Meibalane] **40(10):1063** *original research*
The effects of artificial airways on airflow and ventilatory mechanics: basic concepts and clinical relevance [Sharar] **40(3):257** *symposium paper*
Weaning and extubation are not the same thing [Sharar] **40(3):239** *symposium paper*

**Airway Obstruction:** ***See*** **Sleep Apnea & Sleep-Disordered Breathing**

**Airway Reactivity**
Inhaled anti-inflammatory agents in childhood asthma: theory and practice [Fawcett] **40(1):108** *Drug Capsule*
New avenues of asthma therapy [Mathewson] **40(6):655** *Drug Capsule*

**Algorithms**
Research on ACLS training—which methods improve skill and knowledge retention? [Kaye] **40(5):538** *conference proceedings*
The impact of a postoperative oxygen therapy protocol on use of pulse oximetry and oxygen therapy [Komara & Stoller] **40(11):1125** *original research*
**American Heart Association Guidelines & Recommendations**
ACLS systems and training programs—do they make a difference? [Pepe] **40(4):427** *conference proceeding*
Clinical practice guidelines for resuscitation in acute care hospitals [Barnes] **40(4):346** *conference proceedings*
The development of AHA guidelines for emergency cardiac care [Sanders] **40(4):338** *conference proceedings*
The first ACLS course: resuscitation training for students [Fluck] **40(5):567** *conference proceedings*
**Apnea:** *See* **Sleep Apnea & Sleep-Disordered Breathing**
**ARDS:** *See* **Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome**
**Arkansas Children's Hospital Special Issue:** *See* **Diamond Conference 1994**
**Arterial Blood Gases/pH**
Evaluation of the Ciba Corning 840 blood gas analyzer [Wong et al] **40(6):638** *research article*
First, do no harm—balancing the risks and benefits of medical procedures [Durbin] **40(11):1118** *editorial*
Median nerve damage from brachial artery puncture: a case report [Watson] **40(11):1141** *case report*
Multisite evaluation of a hemoglobin-based control for pH and blood-gas, electrolyte, and CO-oximetry instruments [Liffmann et al] **40(8):820** *research article*
**Artificial Airways**
Airway complications of instrumentation: a physiologic approach [Hoffman] **40(1):97** *review article*
Airway management of the chronically intubated patient [Leisure et al] **40(12):1279** *review article*
Flexible endoscopy in the diagnosis and management of neonatal and pediatric airway and pulmonary disorders [Schellhase & Fan] **40(1):48** *review article*
Management of airway emergencies **40(7):749** *clinical practice guideline*
Practice guidelines for airway care during resuscitation [Bishop] **40(4):393** *conference proceedings*
Respiratory care practitioners as primary providers of neonatal intubation services in a community hospital: an analysis [Noblett & Meibalane] **40(10):1063** *original research*
The effects of artificial airways on airflow and ventilatory mechanics: basic concepts and clinical relevance [Sharar] **40(3):257** *symposium paper*
**Assessment, Neurologic**
Radiologic abnormalities due to penetrating chest trauma [Hiltner] **40(2):181** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*
**Assessment, Technology**
Case studies on mechanical ventilator innovations: perspectives of two clinicians [Hess & Branson] **40(9):957** *conference proceedings*
Clinical outcome end points and assessment of mechanical ventilation innovations [Dellinger] **40(9):975** *conference proceedings*
Consensus III: assessing innovations in mechanical ventilatory support [Brougher] **40(9):925** *editorial*
Current limitations of mechanical ventilation: what improvements should the clinician expect? [Pierson] **40(9):933** *conference proceedings*
Introducing new mechanical ventilation technology: the hospital perspective [Kacmarek] **40(9):947** *conference proceedings*
Mechanical ventilation innovations: the manufacturer's perspective [DeVries] **40(9):942** *conference proceedings*
Resources for assessing innovations on mechanical ventilatory support: the missing link [East] **40(9):987** *conference proceedings*
Study design: statistical and methodologic considerations [Rubenfeld] **40(9):980** *conference proceedings*
Using physiologic end points to assess innovations in mechanical ventilation [Tobin et al] **40(9):971** *conference proceedings*
**Asthma**
Asthma self-management programs can reduce the need for hospital-based asthma care [Lawrence] **40(1):39** *research article*
Circadian patterns of emergency asthma presentations: implications for staffing and treatment [Buff et al] **40(6):624** *research article*
Inhaled anti-inflammatory agents in childhood asthma: theory and practice [Fawcett] **40(1):108** *Drug Capsule*
New avenues of asthma therapy [Mathewson] **40(6):655** *Drug Capsule*
Responses to inhaled bronchodilator in patients with acute airflow obstruction [Limauro et al] **40(8):815** *research article*
**Awards, Publication**
American Respiratory Care Foundation literary awards **40(12):1373**
**Belief Networks**
Therapeutic touch and respiratory therapy [Haines] **40(11):1149** *letter*
**Bench Evaluations**
Bench evaluation: three face-shield CPR barrier devices [Simmons et al] **40(6):618** *research article*
Evaluation of a method for measuring minute volumes during bias-flow ventilation [Torres et al] **40(1):22** *research article*

Inhaled nitric oxide: evaluation of a continuous titration delivery technique for infant mechanical and manual ventilation [Betit et al] **40(7):706** *research article*

Laboratory evaluation of oxygen-enrichment methods using a portable volume ventilator [McFalls] **40(2):156** *research article*

Work of breathing imposed by five ventilators used for long-term support: the effects of PEEP and simulated patient demand [Branson & Davis] **40(12):1270** *research article*

**Blood Flow**

Compression techniques and blood flow during cardiopulmonary resuscitation [Halperin et al] **40(4):380** conference proceedings

Pulmonary vascular control in hypoplastic left-heart syndrome: hypoxic- and hypercarbic-gas therapy [El-Lessy] **40(7):737** *case report*

**Blood Gases/pH: *See* Arterial Blood Gases/pH**

**Blunt Chest Injury**

Tracheobronchial fracture from blunt chest trauma: a case report [Noblett & Selby] **40(8):866** *case report*

**Book Reviews (alphabetically by titles)**

Assisted Mechanical Ventilation at Home: A Practical Guide (Kinnear) [Wilson] **40(12):1344**

Cardiac and Pulmonary Management (Khan) [Holt] **40(1):121**

Comparative review of respiratory care equipment texts [Op't Holt] **40(8):876**

Equipment Theory for Respiratory Care (White)

Principles & Applications of Cardiorespiratory Care Equipment (Eubanks & Bone, editors)

Respiratory Care Equipment (Branson, Hess, & Chatburn, editors)

Respiratory Care Equipment, 5th ed, (McPherson)

Essentials of Anatomy and Physiology, 2nd ed, (Scanlon & Sanders) [Cairns] **40(4):444**

Handbook of Sleep-Related Breathing Disorders (Stradling) [Decker & Caruso] **40(2):185**

Interdisciplinary Handbook of Adult Lifespan Learning (Sinnott, editor) [Perkins] **40(10):1068**

Lung Surfactant: Basic Research in the Pathogenesis of Lung Disorders (Müller & von Wichert) [Cifuentes & Carlo] **40(6):667**

New Therapies for Neonatal Respiratory Failure: A Physiological Approach (Boynton, Carlo, & Jobe) [Courtney] **40(8):878**

Pediatric Respiratory Disease: Diagnosis and Treatment (Hilman) [Ciarlariello & Cohn] **40(7):776**

Principles and Applications of Cardiorespiratory Care Equipment (Eubanks & Bone, editors) [Piedalue] **40(11):1148**

Principles and Practice of Pulmonary Rehabilitation (Casaburi & Petty) [Lawrence] **40(4):442**

Progress in Domiciliary Respiratory Care: Current Status and Perspective (Kira & Petty, editors) [McDonald] **40(6):666**

Pulmonary Rehabilitation: Guidelines to Success, 2nd edition (Hodgkin, Connors, & Bell, editors) [Greene] **40(1):122**

Respiratory Care Equipment, 5th edition (McPherson) [Samples] **40(6):666**

Respiratory Infections: A Scientific Basis for Management (Niederman, Sarosi, & Glassroth, editors) [Goodfellow]

Respiratory Physiology, 3rd edition (Mines) [Op't Holt] **40(4):442**

**Bronchoalveolar Lavage (BAL)**

Ventilator-associated pneumonia: an update for clinicians [Kollef & Silver] **40(11):1130** *review*

**Bronchodilators & Bronchodilation**

Assessing response to bronchodilator therapy at the point of care **40(12):1300** *clinical practice guideline*

Pulmonary response to an inhaled bronchodilator in chronically ventilated preterm infants with suspected airway reactivity [Holt et al] **40(2):145** *research article*

Responses to inhaled bronchodilator in patients with acute airflow obstruction [Limauro et al] **40(8):815** *research article*

Selection of an aerosol delivery device for neonatal and pediatric patients **40(12):1325** *clinical practice guideline*

**Bronchoscopy**

Airway complications of instrumentation: a physiologic approach [Hoffman] **40(1):97** *review article*

Airway management of the chronically intubated patient (Leisure et al) **40(12):1279** *review article*

Flexible endoscopy in the diagnosis and management of neonatal and pediatric airway and pulmonary disorders [Schellhase & Fan] **40(1):48** *review article*

The effects of artificial airways on airflow and ventilatory mechanics: basic concepts and clinical relevance [Sharar] **40(3):257** *review article*

**Calorimeters & Calorimetry: See Work of Breathing**

**Capnometry**

Capnography/capnometry during mechanical ventilation **40(12):1321** *clinical practice guideline*

Management of Airway Emergencies **40(7):749** *clinical practice guideline*

Practice guidelines for airway care during resuscitation [Bishop] **40(4):393** *conference proceedings*

**Carbon Dioxide Therapy**

Pulmonary vascular control in hypoplastic left-heart syndrome: hypoxic- and hypercarbic-gas therapy [El-Lessy] **40(7):737** *case report*

**Cardiac Arrest: *See* Resuscitation & Related Equipment & Supplies**

**Cardiac Pacing & Electrical Therapy**
Defibrillation during resuscitation **40(7):744** *clinical practice guideline*
Pacemakers and electrical therapy during advanced cardiac life support [Aufderheide] **40(4):364** *conference proceedings*
**Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation:** ***See*** **Resuscitation & Related Equipment & Supplies**
**Caregiver Education:** ***See*** **Education & Training, Allied Health & Caregiver**
**Caregiver Protection:** ***Also see*** **Infection & Infection Control**
Bench evaluation: three face-shield CPR barrier devices [Simmons et al] **40(6):618** *research article*
**Case Reports**
A case of patient-ventilator dyssynchrony caused by inadvertent PEEP [Blackson et al] **40(11):1144** *case report*
High-frequency oscillatory ventilation as a bridge from extracorporeal membrane oxygenation in pediatric respiratory failure [Schexnayder et al] **40(1):44** *case series*
Mechanical ventilation in Duchenne's disease: a case report [Abbona & Navarro] **40(7):734** *case report*
Median nerve damage from brachial artery puncture: a case report [Watson] **40(11):1141** *case report*
Pulmonary vascular control in hypoplastic left-heart syndrome: hypoxic- and hypercarbic-gas therapy [El-Lessy] **40(7):737** *case report*
Tracheobronchial fracture from blunt chest trauma: a case report [Noblett & Selby] **40(8):866** *case report*
**Chest Compression**
Compression techniques and blood flow during cardiopulmonary resuscitation [Halperin et al] **40(4):380** *conference proceedings*
**"Classic Reprints" Feature**
RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX: How to Succeed in Failing without Really Trying [Comroe] **40(10):1069**
RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX: The Inside Story (Comroe) **40(12):1346**
RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX: The Witch Doctor, the Which Doctor, and the Wish Doctor [Comroe] **40(2):175**
RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX: Whodunit (and Why) Part I [Comroe] **40(6):658**
RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX: Whodunit (and Why) Part II [Comroe] **40(7):770**
**Clinical Instruction:** ***See*** **Education & Training, Allied Health & Caregiver**
**Clinical Practice Guidelines (prepared & published by the American Association for Respiratory Care):** ***See*** **Guidelines, Recommendations, & Statements**
**Cochrane Collaboration**
Second International Cochrane Colloquium—official annual meeting of the Cochrane Collaboration: a conference report [Jones] **40(2):171** *report*
**Complications & Side Effects:** ***Also see specific*** **Clinical Practice Guidelines**
Airway complications of instrumentation: a physiologic approach [Hoffman] **40(1):97** *review article*
First, do no harm—balancing the risks and benefits of medical procedures [Durbin] **40(11):1118** *editorial*
Flexible endoscopy in the diagnosis and management of neonatal and pediatric airway and pulmonary disorders [Schellhase & Fan] **40(1):48** *review article*
Median nerve damage from brachial artery puncture: a case report [Watson] **40(11):1141** *case report*
Ventilator-associated pneumonia: an update for clinicians [Kollef & Silver] **40(11):1130** *review article*
**Consensus Conference**
Assessing Innovations in Mechanical Ventilation (MacIntyre & East, editors) **40(9):925-993**
**Continuing Education**
CRCE through the Journal—1995 [Dunlevy & Douce] **40(10):1075** *examination key*
CRCE through the Journal—1995 [Dunlevy & Douce] **40(8):888** *examination*
Development of a safety module to satisfy the requirements of regulatory agencies for hospital staff safety education [Lowe] **40(1):35** *research article*
Research on ACLS training—which methods improve skill and knowledge retention? [Kaye] **40(5):538** *conference proceedings*
Strategies for maintaining ACLS skills in hospitals [Boudin] **40(5):550** *conference proceedings*
**Convention**
Exhibitor list 1995 **40(11):1219**
OPEN FORUM abstracts **40(11):1152**
OPEN FORUM author list **40(11):1210**
**Correction**
Corrected Table 4 from Stoller JK: Travel for the technology-dependent individual **39(4)347** correction **40(3):224**
Correction for Marini JJ: Dyspnea during weaning **40(3):271** correction **40(5):574**
**Cost Effectiveness & Cost Issues**
Accuracy of laminated disposable pulse-oximeter sensors [Russell & Graybeal] **40(7):728** *research article*
Asthma self-management programs can reduce the need for hospital-based asthma care [Lawrence] **40(1):39** *research article*
Broadening our outlook—oxygen therapy in the People's Republic of China [Branson] **40(8):810** *editorial*
Clinical evaluation of pulse-dose and continuous-flow oxygen delivery [Yuan et al] **40(8):811** *research article*
Efficacy assessment criteria based on risk and cost

[MacIntyre] **40(9):968** *conference proceedings*
Introducing new mechanical ventilation technology: the hospital perspective [Kacmarek] **40(9):947** *conference proceedings*
RCPs and health-care reform: demonstrating value, creating opportunity [Shrake] **40(2):162** *Program Committee Special Lecture*
Respiratory care in the era of work redesign: out with the bath water (maybe) but do save the baby! [Stoller] **40(7):700** *editorial*
Respiratory care practitioners as primary providers of neonatal intubation services in a community hospital: an analysis [Noblett & Meibalane] **40(10):1063** *original research*
The impact of a postoperative oxygen therapy protocol on use of pulse oximetry and oxygen therapy [Komara & Stoller] **40(11):1125** *original research*
Weaning from mechanical ventilation: physician-directed vs a respiratory-therapist-directed protocol [Wood et al] **40(3):219** *research article*

**CRCE:** *See* **Continuing Education**

**Curriculum:** *See* **Education & Training, Allied Health & Caregiver**

**Data Manipulation**
A behavioral science approach to clinical research [Shaw & Prewitt] **40(10):1038** *editorial*
Selecting students for a baccalaureate-degree respiratory care program [Shaw & Prewitt] **40(10):1052** *original research*

**Defibrillation**
Defibrillation during resuscitation **40(7):744** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

**Diagnosis:** *Also see* **"Test Your Radiologic Skill" Feature**

**Diamond Conference 1994**
A Special Issue based on Arkansas Children's Hospital's 1994 Diamond Conference (Anders & Warren, guest editors) **40(1):15-120**

**Diaphragm, Diaphragmatic Hernia**
Neonate with right hemithorax opacification [Sittig] **40(3):296** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*

**Discharge Planning**
Discharge planning for the respiratory care patient **40(12):1308** *clinical practice guideline*

**"Drug Capsule" Feature**
Inhaled anti-inflammatory agents in childhood asthma: theory and practice [Fawcett] **40(1):108** *Drug Capsule*
New avenues of asthma therapy [Mathewson] **40(6):655** *Drug Capsule*
Selective drug therapy for pulmonary hypertension [Mathewson] **40(8):871** *Drug Capsule*

**Drugs & Drug Therapy**
ACLS drugs used during resuscitation [Rau] **40(4):404** *conference proceedings*
Assessing response to bronchodilator at the point of care **40(12):1300** *clinical practice guideline*
Inhaled anti-inflammatory agents in childhood asthma: theory and practice [Fawcett] **40(1):108** *Drug Capsule*
Methods of emergency drug administration [Hess & Alagar] **40(5):498** *conference proceedings*
New avenues of asthma therapy [Mathewson] **40(6):655** *Drug Capsule*
Selective drug therapy for pulmonary hypertension [Mathewson] **40(8):871** *Drug Capsule*

**Dyspnea & Dyspnea Assessment**
Dyspnea during weaning [Marini] **40(3):271** *symposium paper* [**correction on 40(5):574**]
Responses to inhaled bronchodilator in patients with acute airflow obstruction [Limauro et al] **40(8):815** *research article*

**Editorials**
A behavioral science approach to clinical research [Shaw & Prewitt] **40(10):1038** *editorial*
Broadening our outlook—oxygen therapy in the People's Republic of China [Branson] **40(8):810** *editorial*
Children and health-care reform [Lowe] **40(1):19** *editorial*
Clinical practice guidelines: why, whence, and whither? [Hess] **40(12):1264** *editorial*
Consensus III: assessing innovations in mechanical ventilatory support [Brougher] **40(9):925** *editorial*
Continuing education: motivated or mandated? [Czachowski] **40(6):617** *editorial*
From then 'till now—a brief history of ACH, respiratory care services, and the Diamond Conference [Warren] **40(1):17** *editorial*
Guidelines: a call for local implementation and assessment of impact [Strohl] **40(12):1269** *editorial*
Inhaled nitric oxide delivery systems: a role for respiratory therapists [Hess et al] **40(7):702** *editorial*
New Horizons in respiratory care: the first decade [Pierson] **40(3):225** *editorial*
Quiet—hospital zone: why we should reduce noise levels in the hospitals [Mishoe] **40(11):1116** *editorial*
Respiratory care in the era of work redesign: out with the bath water (maybe) but do save the baby! [Stoller] **40(7):700** *editorial*

**Education & Training, Allied Health & Caregiver:** *Also see specific* **Clinical Practice Guidelines**
A behavioral science approach to clinical research [Shaw & Prewitt] **40(10):1038** *editorial*
ACLS systems and training programs—do they make a difference? [Pepe] **40(4):427** *conference proceeding*
Continuing education: motivated or mandated? [Czachowski] **40(6):617** *editorial*
Development of a safety module to satisfy the requirements of regulatory agencies for hospital staff safety

education [Lowe] **40(1):35** *research article*
Hyperactive Software—clinical simulations for use with IBM PCs and Macintosh computers by Bill Leffler [Olson] **40(7):777** *software review*
Neonatal resuscitation program and pediatric advanced life support [Malinowski] **40(5):575** *conference proceedings*
Research on ACLS training—which methods improve skill and knowledge retention? [Kaye] **40(5):538** *conference proceedings*
Selecting students for a baccalaureate-degree respiratory care program [Shaw & Prewit] **40(10):1052** *original research*
Strategies for maintaining ACLS skills in hospitals [Boudin] **40(5):550** *conference proceedings*
The first ACLS course: resuscitation training for students [Fluck] **40(5):567** *conference proceedings*
The status of research instruction in advanced respiratory care practitioner programs: a survey [Childers & Jones] **40(2):152** *research article*

**Education, Patient, Parent, & Lay Caregiver:** ***Also see specific*** **Clinical Practice Guidelines**
Asthma self-management programs can reduce the need for hospital-based asthma care [Lawrence] **40 (1):39** *research article*

**Efficacy**
Efficacy assessment criteria based on risk and cost [MacIntyre] **40(9):968** *conference proceedings*
FDA: the regulatory process [Slutsky] **40(9):952** *conference proceedings*

**Emergency Care**
ACLS drugs used during resuscitation [Rau] **40(4):404** *conference proceedings*
ACLS systems and training programs—do they make a difference? [Pepe] **40(4):427** *conference proceedings*
Clinical practice guidelines for resuscitation in acute care hospitals [Barnes] **40(4):346** *conference proceedings*
Compression techniques and blood flow during cardiopulmonary resuscitation [Halperin et al] **40(4): 380** *conference proceedings*
Management of airway emergencies **40(7):749** *clinical practice guideline*
Methods of emergency drug administration [Hess & Alagar] **40(5):498** *conference proceedings*
Neonatal resuscitation program and pediatric advanced life support [Malinowski] **40(5):575** *conference proceedings*
Pacemakers and electrical therapy during advanced cardiac life support [Aufderheide] **40(4):364** *conference proceedings*
Practice guidelines for airway care during resuscitation [Bishop] **40(4):393** *conference proceedings*
Research on ACLS training—which methods improve skill and knowledge retention? [Kaye] **40(5):538** *conference proceedings*
Resuscitation in acute care hospitals—the time for change is now! [Durbin] **40(4):335** *conference summary*
The development of AHA guidelines for emergency cardiac care [Sanders] **40(4):338** *conference proceedings*
Ventilatory support during cardiopulmonary resuscitation [Branson & Johannigman] **40(5):479** *conference proceedings*

**Endoscopy**
Flexible endoscopy in the diagnosis and management of neonatal and pediatric airway and pulmonary disorders [Schellhase & Fan] **40(1):48** *review article*

**Equipment & Supplies & Their Evaluation**
Accuracy of laminated disposable pulse-oximeter sensors [Russell & Graybeal] **40(7):728** *research article*
Bench evaluation: three face-shield CPR barrier devices [Simmons et al] **40(6):618** *research article*
Clinical evaluation of pulse-dose and continuous-flow oxygen delivery [Yuan et al] **40(8):811** *research article*
Comparative review of respiratory care equipment texts: Respiratory Care Equipment, 5th ed, (McPherson); Respiratory Care Equipment (Branson, Hess, & Chatburn, editors); Principles & Applications of Cardiorespiratory Care Equipment (Eubanks & Bone, editors); Equipment Theory for Respiratory Care (White) [Op't Holt] **40(8):876** *book review*
Efficacy assessment criteria based on risk and cost [MacIntyre] **40(9):968** *conference proceedings*
Evaluation of a method for measuring minute volumes during bias-flow ventilation [Torres et al] **40(1):22** *research article*
Evaluation of the Ciba Corning 840 blood gas analyzer [Wong et al] **40(6):638** *research article*
FDA: the regulatory process [Slutsky] **40(9):952** *conference proceedings*
Inhaled nitric oxide: evaluation of a continuous titration delivery technique for infant mechanical and manual ventilation [Betit et al] **40(7):706** *research article*
Laboratory evaluation of oxygen-enrichment methods using a portable volume ventilator [McFalls] **40(2):156** *research article*
Measurement of airway occlusion pressure ($P_{0.1}$) by a semi-automated bedside system [Gilmore et al] **40(7):722** *research article*
Multisite evaluation of a hemoglobin-based control for pH and blood-gas, electrolyte, and CO-oximetry instruments [Liffmann et al] **40(8):820** *research article*
Octave waveband analysis to determine sound level frequencies and intensities produced by nebulizers and humidifiers used with hoods [Mishoe et al] **40(11): 1120** *research article*

Respiratory Care Equipment, 5th edition (McPherson) [Samples] **40(6):666** *book review*
Review of Principles and Applications of Cardiorespiratory Care Equipment (Eubanks & Bone, editors) [Piedalue] **40(11):1148** *book review*
**Ethics & Ethical Considerations**
Do-not-resuscitate orders: a critical review of the literature [Rubenfeld] **40(5):528** *conference proceedings*
Resuscitation: when is enough, enough? [Hamill] **40(5):515** *conference proceedings*
**Extracorporeal Gas Exchange & ECMO**
Extracorporeal life support and high-frequency oscillatory ventilation: alternatives for the neonate in severe respiratory failure [Bower & Betit] **40(1):61** *review article*
High-frequency oscillatory ventilation as a bridge from extracorporeal membrane oxygenation in pediatric respiratory failure [Schexnayder et al] **40(1):44** *case series*
Pulmonary vascular control in hypoplastic left-heart syndrome: hypoxic- and hypercarbic-gas therapy [El-Lessy] **40(7):737** *case report*
**Extubation of the Airway: *Also see* Airway Care & Management**
Dyspnea during weaning [Marini] **40(3):271** *symposium paper* [**correction on 40(5):574**]
Long-term mechanical ventilation and weaning [Pierson] **40(3):289** *symposium paper*
Non-respiratory aspects of weaning from mechanical ventilation [Pierson] **40(3):263** *symposium paper*
Noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation in acute respiratory failure: review of reported experience with special attention to use during weaning [Sassoon] **40(3):282** *symposium paper*
The effects of artificial airways on airflow and ventilatory mechanics: basic concepts and clinical relevance [Sharar] **40(3):257** *symposium paper*
Weaning and extubation are not the same thing [Sharar] **40(3):239** *symposium paper*
Weaning from mechanical ventilation: why all the confusion? [Pierson] **40(3):228** *symposium paper*
Weaning techniques and protocols [Marini] **40(3):233** *symposium paper*
**Face-Shield Barrier Devices**
Bench evaluation: three face-shield CPR barrier devices [Simmons et al] **40(6):618** *research article*
**FDA (Food & Drug Administration)**
Case studies on mechanical ventilator innovations: perspectives of two clinicians [Hess & Branson] **40(9):957** *conference proceedings*
Consensus III: assessing innovations in mechanical ventilatory support [Brougher] **40(9):925** *editorial*
Consensus statement: assessing innovations in mechanical ventilatory support **40(11):928** *statement*
Efficacy assessment criteria based on risk and cost [MacIntyre] **40(9):968** *conference proceedings*
FDA: the regulatory process [Slutsky] **40(9):952** *conference proceedings*
MedWatch: The FDA medical products reporting program **40(10):1091**
**Guidelines, Recommendations, & Statements**
Assessing response to bronchodilator therapy at the point of care **40(12):1300** *clinical practice guideline*
Capnography/capnometry during mechanical ventilation **40(12):1321** *clinical practice guideline*
Clinical practice guidelines for resuscitation in acute care hospitals [Barnes] **40(4):346** *conference proceedings*
Clinical practice guidelines: why, whence, and whither? (Hess) **40(12):1264** *editorial*
Consensus statement: assessing innovations in mechanical ventilatory support **40(11):928** *statement*
Defibrillation during resuscitation **40(7):744** *clinical practice guideline*
Discharge planning for the respiratory care patient **40(12):1308** *clinical practice guideline*
Guidelines: a call for implementation and assessment of impact (Strohl) **40(12):1269** *editorial*
Infant/toddler pulmonary function tests **40(7):761** *clinical practice guideline*
Long-term invasive mechanical ventilation in the home **40(12):1313** *clinical practice guideline*
Management of airway emergencies **40(7):749** *clinical practice guideline*
Polysomnography **40(12):1336** *clinical practice guideline*
Selection of an aerosol delivery device for neonatal and pediatric patients **40(12):1325** *clinical practice guideline*
**Hazards: *Also see specific* Clinical Practice Guidelines**
**Health Awareness or Promotion**
RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX: The Witch Doctor, the Which Doctor, and the Wish Doctor [Comroe] **40(2):175** *Classic Reprint*
**Health-Care Costs: *See* Cost Effectiveness & Cost Issues**
**Health-Care Reform & Managed Care**
Children and health-care reform [Lowe] **40(1):19** *editorial*
RCPs and health-care reform: demonstrating value, creating opportunity [Shrake] **40(2):162** *Program Committee Special Lecture*
Respiratory care in the era of work redesign: out with the bath water (maybe) but do save the baby! [Stoller] **40(7):700** *editorial*
Some RCPs jeopardize their careers and our future [Wiedeman] **40(1):123** *letter* also see related letter **39(10):1004**

**High-frequency Oscillatory Ventilation:** *See* **Mechanical Ventilation, High-Frequency**
**"Historical Notes" Feature**
75 years ago in Texas medicine: February 1920—a case of foreign body in the lung by Sam N Key (published by Texas State Journal of Medicine) **40(10):1074**
On the Air Route (excerpted from Health Observation of School Children, 3rd edition, by GM Wheatley & GT Hallock, published by McGraw-Hill, New York, 1965) [Dunlevy, contributor] **40(9):999**
**History:** *See* **"Classic Reprints"** *and* **"Historical Notes" Features**
**HIV:** *See* **Human Immunodeficiency Virus**
**Home Care**
Broadening our outlook—oxygen therapy in the People's Republic of China [Branson] **40(8):810** *editorial*
Clinical evaluation of pulse-dose and continuous-flow oxygen delivery [Yuan et al] **40(8):811** *research article*
Discharge planning for the respiratory care patient **40(12):1308** *clinical practice guideline*
Laboratory evaluation of oxygen-enrichment methods using a portable volume ventilator [McFalls] **40(2):156** *research article*
Long-term invasive mechanical ventilation in the home **40(12):1313** *clinical practice guideline*
Mechanical ventilation in Duchenne's disease: a case report [Abbona & Navarro] **40(7):734** *case report*
Progress in Domiciliary Respiratory Care: Current Status and Perspective (Kira & Petty, editors) [McDonald] **40(6):666** *book review*
Work of breathing imposed by five ventilators used for long-term support: the effects of PEEP and simulated patient demand [Branson & Davis] **40(12):1270** *research article*
**Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV)**
Pulmonary disease in AIDS: implications for respiratory care practitioners [Medin & Ognibene] **40(8):832** *review article*
**Humidity, Humidifiers, & Humidification**
Octave waveband analysis to determine sound frequencies and intensities produced by nebulizers and humidifiers used with hoods [Mishoe et al] **40(11):1120** *research article*
Quiet—hospital zone: why we should reduce noise levels in the hospitals [Mishoe] **40(11):1116** *editorial*
**Hypoxemia, Hypoxia, & Hypoxic-Gas Therapy**
Pulmonary vascular control in hypoplastic left-heart syndrome: hypoxic- and hypercarbic-gas therapy [El-Lessy] **40(7):737** *case report*
Selective drug therapy for pulmonary hypertension [Mathewson] **40(8):871** *Drug Capsule*
**Imaging:** *See* **"Test Your Radiologic Skill" Feature**
**Infection & Infection Control:** *Also see* **Pneumonia, Nosocomial**
Accuracy of laminated disposable pulse-oximeter sensors [Russell & Graybeal] **40(7):728** *research article*
Bench evaluation: three face-shield CPR barrier devices [Simmons et al] **40(6):618** *research article*
Pulmonary disease in AIDS: implications for respiratory care practitioners [Medin & Ognibene] **40(8):832** *review article*
**Inflammation & Inflammatory Mediators**
New avenues of asthma therapy [Mathewson] **40(6):655** *Drug Capsule*
**Innovations**
Consensus III: assessing innovations in mechanical ventilatory support [Brougher] **40(9):925** *editorial*
Consensus statement: assessing innovations in mechanical ventilatory support **40(11):928** *statement*
Efficacy assessment criteria based on risk and cost [MacIntyre] **40(9):968** *conference proceedings*
Introducing new mechanical ventilation technology: the hospital perspective [Kacmarek] **40(9):947** *conference proceedings*
Mechanical ventilation innovations: the manufacturer's perspective [DeVries] **40(9):942** *conference proceedings*
**International Respiratory Care**
Broadening our outlook—oxygen therapy in the People's Republic of China [Branson] **40(8):810** *editorial*
Clinical evaluation of pulse-dose and continuous-flow oxygen delivery [Yuan et al] **40(8):811** *research article*
Mechanical ventilation in Duchenne's disease: a case report [Abbona & Navarro] **40(7):734** *case report*
Severity scores in respiratory intensive care: APACHE II predicted mortality better than SAPS II [del Bufalo et al] **40(10):1042** *original research*
Weaning from mechanical ventilation: physician-directed vs a respiratory-therapist-directed protocol [Wood et al] **40(3):219** *research article*
**Intrinsic PEEP:** *See* **Positive End-Expiratory Pressure (PEEP)**
**Intubation & Its Complications & Side Effects**
Airway complications of instrumentation: a physiologic approach [Hoffman] **40(1):97** *review article*
Airway management of the chronically intubated patient [Leisure et al] **40(12):1279** *review article*
Flexible endoscopy in the diagnosis and management of neonatal and pediatric airway and pulmonary disorders [Schellhase & Fan] **40(1):48** *review article*
Management of airway emergencies **40(7):749** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Nonsurgical airway management: general considerations and specific considerations in patients with co-

existing disease [Spiekermann et al] **40(6):644** *review article*
Practice guidelines for airway care during resuscitation [Bishop] **40(4):393** *conference proceedings*
Respiratory care practitioners as primary providers of neonatal intubation services in a community hospital: an analysis [Noblett & Meibalane] **40(10):1063** *original research*
The effects of artificial airways on airflow and ventilatory mechanics: basic concepts and clinical relevance [Sharar] **40(3):257** *symposium paper*

**Journal Conference**
Resuscitation in Acute Care Hospitals Part I (Barnes & Durbin, editors) **40(4):332-436** *conference proceedings*
Resuscitation in Acute Care Hospitals Part II **40(5): 476-587** *conference proceedings*

**"Kittredge's Corner" Feature**
Respiratory inductive plethysmography: application in infants [Alderson & Warren] **40(1):114** *Kittredge's Corner*

**Letters to the Editor**
A reader objects to small-type abstracts [Hagan] **40(2): 186** *letter* [response by Brougher]
Bad press for RCPs? [Fluck] **40(11):1149** *letter*
Closed-system suction catheter [Lebowitz & Mazzagatti] **40(10):1076** *letter* [response by Milisch et al] also see related article **40(4):438**
Not turf protection but teamwork [Marcelis] **40(3):302** *letter*
Reader-investigators probe differences in aerosol study results [Fink & Dhand] **40(2):186** *letter* [response by Harwood, Rau, & Goodfellow] also see related article **39(9):886**
Some RCPs jeopardize their careers and our future [Wiedeman] **40(1):123** *letter* also see related article **39(10):1004**
Therapeutic touch and respiratory therapy [Haines] **40 (11):1149** *letter*

**Lung Disease, Unilateral**

**Lung Injury**
Acute respiratory distress syndrome in pediatric patients: redirecting therapy to reduce iatrogenic lung injury [Heulitt et al] **40(1):74** *review article*
Effects of aerosolized synthetic surfactant in a canine model of wood smoke inhalation [Fluck et al] **40(6): 631** *research article*
Radiologic abnormalities due to penetrating chest trauma [Hiltner] **40(2):181** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*

**Lung Mechanics**
Assessing response to bronchodilator at the point of care **40(12):1300** *clinical practice guideline*
Infant/Toddler Pulmonary Function Tests **40(7):761** *clinical practice guideline*
Patient-determined inspiratory flow during assisted mechanical ventilation [Haas et al] **40(7):716** *research article*
Pulmonary response to an inhaled bronchodilator in chronically ventilated preterm infants with suspected airway reactivity [Holt et al] **40(2):145** *research article*
Respiratory factors in weaning mechanical ventilatory support [MacIntyre] **40(3):244** *symposium paper*
Respiratory inductive plethysmography: application in infants [Alderson & Warren] **40(1):114** *Kittredge's Corner*
Responses to Inhaled bronchodilator in patients with acute airflow obstruction [Limauro et al] **40(8):815** *research article*
The effect of pulmonary secretions on respiratory mechanics in intubated patients [Chatila W et al] **40 (10):1048** *case series*
The effects of artificial airways on airflow and ventilatory mechanics: basic concepts and clinical relevance [Sharar] **40(3):257** *symposium paper*

**Management, Administrative**
Circadian patterns of emergency asthma presentations: implications for staffing and treatment [Buff et al] **40(6):624** *research article*
Clinical evaluation of pulse-dose and continuous-flow oxygen delivery [Yuan et al] **40(8):811** *research article*
Weaning from mechanical ventilation: physician-directed vs a respiratory-therapist-directed protocol [Wood et al] **40(3):219** *research article*

**Manufacturers**
Mechanical ventilation innovations: the manufacturer's perspective [DeVries] **40(9):942** *conference proceedings*

**MDIs: *See* Metered Dose Inhalers**

**Measurement & Measurement Techniques**
Evaluation of a method for measuring minute volumes during bias-flow ventilation [Torres et al] **40(1):22** *research article*
Evaluation of the Ciba Corning 840 blood gas analyzer [Wong et al] **40(6):638** *research article*
Measurement of airway occlusion pressure ($P_{0.1}$) by a semi-automated bedside system [Gilmore et al] **40(7):722** *research article*
Multisite evaluation of a hemoglobin-based control for pH and blood-gas, electrolyte, and CO-oximetry instruments [Liffmann et al] **40(8):820** *research article*

**Mechanical Ventilators & Ventilation**
Acute respiratory distress syndrome in pediatric patients: redirecting therapy to reduce iatrogenic lung injury [Heulitt et al] **40(1):74** *review article*
Capnography/capnometry during mechanical ventilation **40(12):1321** *clinical practice guideline*
Case studies on mechanical ventilator innovations: per-

spectives of two clinicians [Hess & Branson] **40(9):957** *conference proceedings*
Clinical outcome end points and assessment of mechanical ventilation innovations [Dellinger] **40(9):975** *conference proceedings*
Comparison of inspiratory work of breathing in young lambs during flow-triggered and pressure-triggered ventilation [Carmack et al] **40(1):28** *research article*
Consensus statement: assessing innovations in mechanical ventilatory support **40(11):928** *statement*
Current limitations of mechanical ventilation: what improvements should the clinician expect? [Pierson] **40(9):933** *conference proceedings*
Efficacy assessment criteria based on risk and cost [MacIntyre] **40(9):968** *conference proceedings*
Evaluation of a method for measuring minute volumes during bias-flow ventilation [Torres et al] **40(1):22** *research article*
FDA: the regulatory process [Slutsky] **40(9):952** *conference proceedings*
Introducing new mechanical ventilation technology: the hospital perspective [Kacmarek] **40(9):947** *conference proceedings*
Laboratory evaluation of oxygen-enrichment methods using a portable volume ventilator [McFalls] **40(2):156** *research article*
Long-term invasive mechanical ventilation in the home **40(12):1313** *clinical practice guideline*
Mechanical ventilation in Duchenne's disease: a case report [Abbona & Navarro] **40(7):734** *case report*
Mechanical ventilation innovations: the manufacturer's perspective [DeVries] **40(9):942** *conference proceedings*
Patient-determined inspiratory flow during assisted mechanical ventilation [Haas et al] **40(7):716** *research article*
Using physiologic end points to assess innovations in mechanical ventilation [Tobin et al] **40(9):971** *conference proceedings*
Work of breathing imposed by five ventilators used for long-term support: the effects of PEEP and simulated patient demand [Branson & Davis] **40(12):1270** *research article*

**Mechanical Ventilation & Triggering**
Comparison of inspiratory work of breathing in young lambs during flow-triggered and pressure-triggered ventilation [Carmack et al] **40(1):28** *research article*
Ventilatory support during cardiopulmonary resuscitation [Branson & Johannigman] **40(5):479** *conference proceedings*

**Mechanical Ventilation, High-Frequency**
Case studies on mechanical ventilator innovations: perspectives of two clinicians [Hess & Branson] **40(9):957** *conference proceedings*
Extracorporeal life support and high-frequency oscillatory ventilation: alternatives for the neonate in severe respiratory failure [Bower & Betit] **40(1):61** *review article*
High-frequency oscillatory ventilation as a bridge from extracorporeal membrane oxygenation in pediatric respiratory failure [Schexnayder et al] **40(1):44** *case series*

**Mechanical Ventilation, Long-Term**
Assisted Mechanical Ventilation at Home: A Practical Guide (Kinnear) [Wilson] **40(12):1344** *book review*
Laboratory evaluation of oxygen-enrichment methods using a portable volume ventilator [McFalls] **40(2):156** *research article*
Long-term invasive mechanical ventilation in the home **40(12):1313** *clinical practice guideline*
Long-term mechanical ventilation and weaning [Pierson] **40(3):289** *symposium paper*
Mechanical ventilation in Duchenne's disease: a case report [Abbona & Navarro] **40(7):734** *case report*
Noninvasive ventilatory support in pediatric respiratory failure [Teague & Fortenberry] **40(1):86** *review article*
Work of breathing imposed by five ventilators used for long-term support: the effects of PEEP and simulated patient demand [Branson & Davis] **40(12):1270** *research article*

**Mechanical Ventilation, Noninvasive**
Dyspnea during weaning [Marini] **40(3):271** *symposium paper* **[correction on 40(5):574]**
Mechanical ventilation in Duchenne's disease: a case report [Abbona & Navarro] **40(7):734** *case report*
Noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation in acute respiratory failure: review of reported experience with special attention to use during weaning [Sassoon] **40(3):282** *symposium paper*
Noninvasive ventilatory support in pediatric respiratory failure [Teague & Fortenberry] **40(1):86** *review article*

**Mechanical Ventilation, Weaning**
Dyspnea during weaning [Marini] **40(3):271** *symposium paper* **[correction on 40(5):574]**
Long-term mechanical ventilation and weaning [Pierson] **40(3):289** *symposium paper*
Nonrespiratory aspects of weaning from mechanical ventilation [Pierson] **40(3):263** *symposium paper*
Noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation in acute respiratory failure: review of reported experience with special attention to use during weaning [Sassoon] **40(3):282** *symposium paper*
Psychological factors in weaning mechanical ventilatory support [MacIntyre] **40(3):277** *symposium paper*
Psychological issues in the ventilator-dependent patient [Criner & Isaac] **40(8):855** *review article*
Respiratory factors in weaning mechanical ventilatory

support [MacIntyre] **40(3):244** *symposium paper*
The effects of artificial airways on airflow and ventilatory mechanics: basic concepts and clinical relevance [Sharar] **40(3):257** *symposium paper*
Weaning and extubation are not the same thing [Sharar] **40(3):239** *symposium paper*
Weaning from mechanical ventilation: physician-directed vs a respiratory-therapist-directed protocol [Wood et al] **40(3):219** *research article*
Weaning from mechanical ventilation: why all the confusion? [Pierson] **40(3):228** *symposium paper*
Weaning techniques and protocols [Marini] **40(3):233** *symposium paper*
What you need to know about the ventilator in weaning [Sassoon & Mahutte] **40(3):249** *symposium paper*

**Medical Direction:** ***See specific*** **Clinical Practice Guidelines**

**Medications:** ***See*** **Drugs & Drug Therapy**

**Metered Dose Inhalers (MDIs)**
Pulmonary response to an inhaled bronchodilator in chronically ventilated preterm infants with suspected airway reactivity [Holt et al] **40(2):145** *research article*
Reader-investigators probe differences in aerosol study results [Fink & Dhand] **40(2):186** *letter* [response by Harwood, Rau, & Goodfellow] *also see related article by Harwood et al* **39(9):886**

**Method & Technique Evaluations:** ***See*** **Equipment & Supplies & Their Evaluation**

**Models, Animal**
Comparison of inspiratory work of breathing in young lambs during flow-triggered and pressure-triggered ventilation [Carmack et al] **40(1):28** *research article*
Effects of aerosolized synthetic surfactant in a canine model of wood smoke inhalation [Fluck et al] **40(6): 631** *research article*

**Models, Bench:** ***See*** **Bench Evaluations**

**Models, Student Selection**
A behavioral science approach to clinical research [Shaw & Prewitt] **40(10):1038** *editorial*
Selecting students for a baccalaureate-degree respiratory care program [Shaw & Prewitt] **40(10):1052** *original research*

**Monitoring:** ***See specific*** **Clinical Practice Guidelines**

**Mortality, Predicting**
Severity scores in respiratory intensive care: APACHE II predicted mortality better than SAPS II [del Bufalo et al] **40(10):1042** *original research*

**Nebulizers, Inhalers, & Vaporizers**
Octave waveband analysis to determine sound frequencies and intensities produced by nebulizers and humidifiers used with hoods [Mishoe et al] **40(11): 1120** *research article*
Quiet—hospital zone: why we should reduce noise levels in the hospitals [Mishoe] **40(11):1116** *editorial*

**Neonatal Respiratory Care:** ***See*** **Respiratory Care, Neonatal**

**Neurologic Assessment:** ***See*** **Assessment, Neurologic**
Mechanical ventilation in Duchenne's disease: a case report [Abbona & Navarro] **40(7):734** *case report*

**New Horizons Symposium**
Ventilator Weaning from A to Z (Pierson, guest editor) **40(3):228-295**

**Nitric Oxide**
Inhaled nitric oxide delivery systems: a role for respiratory therapists [Hess et al] **40(7):702** *editorial*
Inhaled nitric oxide: evaluation of a continuous titration delivery technique for infant mechanical and manual ventilation [Betit et al] **40(7):706** *research article*

**Noise & Hearing Loss**
Octave waveband analysis to determine sound frequencies and intensities produced by nebulizers and humidifiers used with hoods [Mishoe et al] **40(11):1120** *research article*
Quiet—hospital zone: why we should reduce noise levels in the hospitals [Mishoe] **40(11):1116** *editorial*

**Occupational Exposure:** ***See*** **Caregiver Protection**

**OPEN FORUM**
A reader objects to small-type abstracts [Hagan] **40(2):186** *letter* [response by Brougher]
OPEN FORUM abstracts **40(11):1152**
OPEN FORUM authors **40(11):1210**

**Orders for Therapy:** ***See*** **Protocols, Patient Driven Outcomes**
Clinical outcome end points and assessment of mechanical ventilation innovations [Dellinger] **40(9):975** *conference proceedings*
Consensus statement: assessing innovations in mechanical ventilatory support **40(11):928** *statement*
Efficacy assessment criteria based on risk and cost [MacIntyre] **40(9):968** *conference proceedings*
Study design: statistical and methodologic considerations [Rubenfeld] **40(9):980** *conference proceedings*
Using physiologic end points to assess innovations in mechanical ventilation [Tobin et al] **40(9):971** *conference proceedings*

**Oximeters & Oximetry**
The impact of a postoperative oxygen therapy protocol on use of pulse oximetry and oxygen therapy [Komara & Stoller] **40(11):1125** *original research*

**Oxygen Administration & Therapy**
Clinical evaluation of pulse-dose and continuous-flow oxygen delivery [Yuan et al] **40(8):811** *research article*
Laboratory evaluation of oxygen-enrichment methods using a portable volume ventilator [McFalls] **40(2): 156** *research article*
The impact of a postoperative oxygen therapy protocol

on use of pulse oximetry and oxygen therapy [Komara & Stoller] **40(11):1125** *original research*

**Peak Flow Meter:** ***Also see*** **Pulmonary Function Testing**

Assessing response to bronchodilator at the point of care **40(12):1300** *clinical practice guideline*

Asthma self-management programs can reduce the need for hospital-based asthma care [Lawrence] **40(1):39** *research article*

**Pediatric Respiratory Care:** ***See*** **Respiratory Care, Pediatric**

**PEEP:** ***See*** **Positive End-Expiratory Pressure**

**pH:** ***See*** **Arterial Blood Gases/pH**

**Pharmacology:** ***See*** **Drugs & Drug Therapy**

**Plethysmography, Respiratory Inductive**

Respiratory inductive plethysmography: application in infants [Alderson & Warren] **40(1):114** *Kittredge's Corner*

**Pneumonia, Nosocomial**

Ventilator-associated pneumonia: an update for clinicians [Kollef & Silver] **40(11):1130** *review article*

**Polysomnography:** ***See*** **Sleep Apnea & Sleep-Disordered Breathing**

**Positive End-Expiratory Pressure (PEEP)**

A case of patient-ventilator dyssynchrony caused by inadvertent PEEP [Blackson et al] **40(11):1144** *case report*

Clinical evaluation of pulse-dose and continuous-flow oxygen delivery [Yuan et al] **40(8):811** *research article*

Measurement of airway occlusion pressure ($P_{0.1}$) by a semi-automated bedside system [Gilmore et al] **40(7):722** *research article*

Mechanical ventilation in Duchenne's disease: a case report [Abbona & Navarro] **40(7):734** *case report*

Patient-determined inspiratory flow during assisted mechanical ventilation [Haas et al] **40(7):716** *research article*

Severity scores in respiratory intensive care: APACHE II predicted mortality better than SAPS II [del Bufalo et al] **40(10):1042** *original research*

**Product Problem Reporting Program:** ***See*** **FDA**

**Professionalism**

Continuing education: motivated or mandated? [Czachowski] **40(6):617** *editorial*

RCPs and health-care reform: demonstrating value, creating opportunity [Shrake] **40(2):162** *Program Committee Special Lecture*

Respiratory care in the era of work redesign: out with the bath water (maybe) but do save the baby! [Stoller] **40(7):700** *editorial*

Some RCPs jeopardize their careers and our future [Wiedeman] **40(1):123** *letter* also see related letter **39(10):1004**

**Prostaglandin $E_1$**

Pulmonary vascular control in hypoplastic left-heart syndrome: hypoxic- and hypercarbic-gas therapy [El-Lessy] **40(7):737** *case report*

**Protocols, Patient-Driven**

The impact of a postoperative oxygen therapy protocol on use of pulse oximetry and oxygen therapy [Komara & Stoller] **40(11):1125** *original research*

Weaning from mechanical ventilation: physician-directed vs a respiratory-therapist-directed protocol [Wood et al] **40(3):219** *research article*

**Protocols, Therapist-Driven** ***See*** **Protocols, Patient-Driven**

**Psychosocial Psychology & Aspects of Illness & Disability**

Nonrespiratory aspects of weaning from mechanical ventilation [Pierson] **40(3):263** *symposium paper*

Psychological factors in weaning mechanical ventilatory support [MacIntyre] **40(3):277** *symposium paper*

**Pulmonary Function & Pulmonary Function Testing:** ***Also see specific headings*** **(eg, Lung Mechanics, Spirometry)**

A case of patient-ventilator dyssynchrony caused by inadvertent PEEP [Blackson et al] **40(11):1144** *case report*

Infant/toddler pulmonary function tests **40(7):761** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Pulmonary response to an inhaled bronchodilator in chronically ventilated preterm infants with suspected airway reactivity [Holt et al] **40(2):145** *research article*

Respiratory inductive plethysmography: application in infants [Alderson & Warren] **40(1):114** *Kittredge's Corner*

The effect of pulmonary secretions on respiratory mechanics in intubated patients [Chatila W et al] **40(10):1048** *case series*

The effects of artificial airways on airflow and ventilatory mechanics: basic concepts and clinical relevance [Sharar]

**Pulmonary Hypertension**

Pulmonary vascular control in hypoplastic left-heart syndrome: hypoxic- and hypercarbic-gas therapy [El-Lessy] **40(7):737** *case report*

Selective drug therapy for pulmonary hypertension [Mathewson] **40(8):871** *Drug Capsule*

**Pulmonary Mechanics:** ***See*** **Lung Mechanics**

**Pulse Oximetry:** ***See*** **Oximeters & Oximetry**

**Quality Assurance & Control**

Multisite evaluation of a hemoglobin-based control for pH and blood-gas, electrolyte, and CO-oximetry instruments [Liffmann et al] **40(8):820** *research article*

**Radiography, Diagnostic:** ***See*** **"Test Your Radiologic Skill" Feature**

**Regulatory Issues:** *Also see* **FDA**
Development of a safety module to satisfy the requirements of regulatory agencies for hospital staff safety education [Lowe] **40(1):35** *research article*
FDA: the regulatory process [Slutsky] **40(9):952** *conference proceedings*
**Rehabilitation**
Essentials of Anatomy and Physiology, 2nd edition (Scanlon & Sanders) [Cairns] **40(4):444** *book review*
**Research:** *See* **Statistics & Study Design**
**Respiratory Care Departments/Services:** *See* **Protocols, Patient-Driven**
**Respiratory Care, Neonatal**
Extracorporeal life support and high-frequency oscillatory ventilation: alternatives for the neonate in severe respiratory failure [Bower & Betit] **40(1):61** *review article*
Flexible endoscopy in the diagnosis and management of neonatal and pediatric airway and pulmonary disorders [Schellhase & Fan] **40(1):48** *review article*
Inhaled nitric oxide: evaluation of a continuous titration delivery technique for infant mechanical and manual ventilation [Betit et al] **40(7):706** *research article*
Neonatal resuscitation program and pediatric advanced life support [Malinowski] **40(5):575** *conference proceedings*
Neonate with right hemithorax opacification [Sittig] **40(3):296** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*
New Therapies for Neonatal Respiratory Failure: A Physiological Approach (Boynton, Carlo, & Jobe) [Courtney] **40(8):878** *book review*
Octave waveband analysis to determine sound frequencies and intensities produced by nebulizers and humidifiers used with hoods [Mishoe et al] **40(11):1120** *research article*
Pulmonary response to an inhaled bronchodilator in chronically ventilated preterm infants with suspected airway reactivity [Holt et al] **40(2):145** *research article*
Quiet—hospital zone: why we should reduce noise levels in the hospitals [Mishoe] **40(11):1116** *editorial*
Respiratory care practitioners as primary providers of neonatal intubation services in a community hospital: an analysis [Noblett & Meibalane] **40(10):1063** *original research*
Respiratory inductive plethysmography: application in infants [Alderson & Warren] **40(1):114** *Kittredge's Corner*
Selection of an aerosol delivery device for neonatal and pediatric patients **40(12):1325** *clinical practice guideline*
**Respiratory Care, Pediatric**
Acute respiratory distress syndrome in pediatric patients: redirecting therapy to reduce iatrogenic lung injury [Heulitt et al] **40(1):74** *review article*
Flexible endoscopy in the diagnosis and management of neonatal and pediatric airway and pulmonary disorders [Schellhase & Fan] **40(1):48** *review article*
Infant/toddler pulmonary function tests **40(7):761** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Neonatal resuscitation program and pediatric advanced life support [Malinowski] **40(5):575** *conference proceedings*
Pediatric Respiratory Disease: Diagnosis and Treatment (Hilman) [Ciarlariello & Cohn] **40(7):776** *book review*
Selection of an aerosol delivery device for neonatal and pediatric patients **40(12):1325** *clinical practice guideline*
**Respiratory Care Practice & Procedures:** *See* **Guidelines, Recommendations, & Statements**
**Respiratory Care Practitioners & Role of**
Bad press for RCPs? [Fluck] **40(11):1149** *letter*
Continuing education: motivated or mandated? [Czachowski] **40(6):617** *editorial*
Discharge planning for the respiratory care patient **40(12):1308** *clinical practice guideline*
Inhaled nitric oxide delivery systems: a role for respiratory therapists [Hess et al] **40(7):702** *editorial*
Methods of emergency drug administration [Hess & Alagar] **40(5):498** *conference proceedings*
Pulmonary disease in AIDS: implications for respiratory care practitioners [Medin & Ognibene] **40(8):832** *review article*
RCPs and health-care reform: demonstrating value, creating opportunity [Shrake] **40(2):162** *Program Committee Special Lecture*
Respiratory care practitioners as primary providers of neonatal intubation services in a community hospital: an analysis [Noblett & Meibalane] **40(10):1063** *original research*
Some RCPs jeopardize their careers and our future [Wiedeman] **40(1):123** *letter* also see related article **39(10):1004**
Strategies for maintaining ACLS skills in hospitals [Boudin] **40(5):550** *conference proceedings*
The status of research instruction in advanced respiratory care practitioner programs: a survey [Childers & Jones] **40(2):152** *research article*
Ventilatory support during cardiopulmonary resuscitation [Branson & Johannigman] **40(5):479** *conference proceedings*
Weaning from mechanical ventilation: physician-directed vs a respiratory-therapist-directed protocol [Wood et al] **40(3):219** *research article*
**Respiratory Care Practitioners, Credentialing**
Hyperactive Software—clinical simulations for use with IBM PCs and Macintosh computers by Bill Leffler [Olson] **40(7):777** *software review*

**Respiratory Drive**
Measurement of airway occlusion pressure ($P_{0.1}$) by a semi-automated bedside system [Gilmore et al] **40(7):722** *research article*
**Respiratory Failure**
Noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation in acute respiratory failure: review of reported experience with special attention to use during weaning [Sassoon] **40(3):282** *symposium paper*
Noninvasive ventilatory support in pediatric respiratory failure [Teague & Fortenberry] **40(1):86** *review article*
**Respiratory Mechanics:** ***See*** **Lung Mechanics** ***and*** **Spirometry**
**Respiratory Muscles**
Respiratory factors in weaning mechanical ventilatory support [MacIntyre] **40(3):244** *symposium paper*
**Restructuring, Hospital**
RCPs and health-care reform: demonstrating value, creating opportunity [Shrake] **40(2):162** *Program Committee Special Lecture*
Respiratory care in the era of work redesign: out with the bath water (maybe) but do save the baby! [Stoller] **40(7):700** *editorial*
**Resuscitation & Related Equipment & Supplies**
ACLS drugs used during resuscitation [Rau] **40(4):404** *conference proceedings*
ACLS systems and training programs—do they make a difference? [Pepe] **40(4):427** *conference proceeding*
Bench evaluation: three face-shield CPR barrier devices [Simmons et al] **40(6):618** *research article*
Clinical practice guidelines for resuscitation in acute care hospitals [Barnes] **40(4):346** *conference proceedings*
Compression techniques and blood flow during cardiopulmonary resuscitation [Halperin et al] **40(4):380** conference proceedings
Defibrillation during resuscitation **40(7):744** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Do-not-resuscitate orders: a critical review of the literature [Rubenfeld] **40(5):528** *conference proceedings*
Methods of emergency drug administration [Hess & Alagar] **40(5):498** *conference proceedings*
Pacemakers and electrical therapy during advanced cardiac life support [Aufderheide] **40(4):364** *conference proceedings*
Practice guidelines for airway care during resuscitation [Bishop] **40(4):393** *conference proceedings*
Research on ACLS training—which methods improve skill and knowledge retention? [Kaye] **40(5):538** *conference proceedings*
Resuscitation in acute care hospitals—the time for change is now! [Durbin] **40(4):335** *conference summary*
Resuscitation: when is enough, enough? [Hamill] **40(5):515** *conference proceedings*
The development of AHA guidelines for emergency cardiac care [Sanders] **40(4):338** *conference proceedings*
The first ACLS course: resuscitation training for students [Fluck] **40(5):567** *conference proceedings*
Ventilatory support during cardiopulmonary resuscitation [Branson & Johannigman] **40(5):479** *conference proceedings*
**RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX:** ***See*** **"Classic Reprints" Feature**
**Risk:** ***Also see*** **Complications**
Efficacy assessment criteria based on risk and cost [MacIntyre] **40(9):968** *conference proceedings*
FDA: the regulatory process [Slutsky] **40(9):952** *conference proceedings*
First, do no harm—balancing the risks and benefits of medical procedures [Durbin] **40(11):1118** *editorial*
Median nerve damage from brachial artery puncture: a case report [Watson] **40(11):1141** *case report*
**Role:** ***See*** **Respiratory Care Practitioners & Role of**
**Safety Issues**
Development of a safety module to satisfy the requirements of regulatory agencies for hospital staff safety education [Lowe] **40(1):35** *research article*
**Scoring, Illness Severity**
Severity scores in respiratory intensive care: APACHE II predicted mortality better than SAPS II [del Bufalo et al] **40(10):1042** *original research*
**Self-Management**
Asthma self-management programs can reduce the need for hospital-based asthma care [Lawrence] **40(1):39** *research article*
**Sleep Apnea & Sleep-Disordered Breathing**
Guidelines: a call for implementation and assessment of impact (Strohl) **40(12):1269** *editorial*
Polysomnography **40(12):1336** *clinical practice guideline*
Sleep apnea: is your patient at risk? (NHLBI) **40(12):1287** *special article*
**Smoke Inhalation**
Effects of aerosolized synthetic surfactant in a canine model of wood smoke inhalation [Fluck et al] **40(6):631** *research article*
**Software Reviews**
Hyperactive Software—clinical simulations for use with IBM PCs and Macintosh computers by Bill Leffler [Olson] **40(7):777** *software review*
Remark Office OMR Software from Principia Products Inc [Weber] **40(10):1068** *software review*
**Spirometry:** ***Also see*** **Pulmonary Function Testing** ***and*** **Lung Mechanics**
Assessing response to bronchodilator at the point of

care **40(12):1300** *clinical practice guideline*
Infant/toddler pulmonary function tests **40(7):761** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Pulmonary response to an inhaled bronchodilator in chronically ventilated preterm infants with suspected airway reactivity [Holt et al] **40(2):145** *research article*
Responses to inhaled bronchodilator in patients with acute airflow obstruction [Limauro et al] **40(8):815** *research article*
The effect of pulmonary secretions on respiratory mechanics in intubated patients [Chatila W et al] **40 (10):1048** *case series*

**Statistics & Study Design**
A behavioral science approach to clinical research [Shaw & Prewitt] **40(10):1038** *editorial*
Clinical outcome end points and assessment of mechanical ventilation innovations [Dellinger] **40(9):975** *conference proceedings*
Second International Cochrane Colloquium—official annual meeting of the Cochrane Collaboration: a conference report [Jones] **40(2):171** *report*
Selecting students for a baccalaureate-degree respiratory care program [Shaw & Prewitt] **40(10):1052** *original research*
Study design: statistical and methodologic considerations [Rubenfeld] **40(9):980** *conference proceedings*
The status of research instruction in advanced respiratory care practitioner programs: a survey [Childers & Jones] **40(2):152** *research article*
Using physiologic end points to assess innovations in mechanical ventilation [Tobin et al] **40(9):971** *conference proceedings*

**Steroids**
Inhaled anti-inflammatory agents in childhood asthma: theory and practice [Fawcett] **40(1):108** *Drug Capsule*
New avenues of asthma therapy [Mathewson] **40(6): 655** *Drug Capsule*

**Suction, Suctioning, & Suction Devices & Supplies**
Closed-system suction catheter [Lebowitz & Mazzagatti] **40(10):1076** *letter* [response by Milisch et al] also see related article by Milisch et al **40(4):438**
Removal of a closed-system, directional-tip suction catheter [Milisch et al] **40(4):438** *Test Your Radiologic Skill* also see related letter by Lebowitz & Mazzagatti **40(10):1076**
The effect of pulmonary secretions on respiratory mechanics in intubated patients [Chatila W et al] **40 (10):1048** *case series*

**Surfactant & Surfactant Therapy**
Effects of aerosolized synthetic surfactant in a canine model of wood smoke inhalation [Fluck et al] **40(6): 631** *research article*
Lung Surfactant: Basic Research in the Pathogenesis of Lung Disorders (Müller & von Wichert) [Cifuentes & Carlo] **40(6):667** *book review*

**Symposium Proceedings: *See* Consensus Conference, Diamond Conference, Journal Conference, *and* New Horizons Symposium**

**Synchrony, Breathing**
A case of patient-ventilator dyssynchrony caused by inadvertent PEEP [Blackson et al] **40(11):1144** *case report*
Respiratory inductive plethysmography: application in infants [Alderson & Warren] **40(1):114** *Kittredge's Corner*

**Teamwork: *Also see* Professionalism**
Not turf protection but teamwork [Marcelis] **40(3):302** *letter*

**Technology Assessment: *See* Assessment, Technology**

**Terminology**
Weaning and extubation are not the same thing [Sharar] **40(3):239** *symposium paper*

**"Test Your Radiologic Skill" Feature (TYRS: brief case reports including radiographs, with questions, answers, & discussion)**
Neonate with right hemithorax opacification [Sittig] **40(3):296** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*
Radiologic abnormalities due to penetrating chest trauma [Hiltner] **40(2):181** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*
Removal of a closed-system, directional-tip suction catheter [Milisch et al] **40(4):438** *Test Your Radiologic Skill* also see related article **40(10):1076**

**Therapist-Driven Protocols: *See* Protocols, Patient-Driven**

**Tracheobronchomalacia**
Pulmonary response to an inhaled bronchodilator in chronically ventilated preterm infants with suspected airway reactivity [Holt et al] **40(2):145** *research article*

**Tracheostomy & Tracheotomy: *See* Airway Care & Management**

**Trauma & Trauma Care**
Median nerve damage from brachial artery puncture: a case report [Watson] **40(11):1141** *case report*
Radiologic abnormalities due to penetrating chest trauma [Hiltner] **40(2):181** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*
Tracheobronchial fracture from blunt chest trauma: a case report [Noblett & Selby] **40(8):866** *case report*

**Trends in Medicine**
Assessing Innovations in Mechanical Ventilation (MacIntyre & East, editors) **40(9):925**
Children and health-care reform [Lowe] **40(1):19** *editorial*
RCPs and health-care reform: demonstrating value, creating opportunity [Shrake] **40(2):162** *Program Committee Special Lecture*
Respiratory care in the era of work redesign: out with

the bath water (maybe) but do save the baby! [Stoller] **40(7):700** *editorial*

**Tuberculosis:** ***Also see*** **Infection & Infection Control**

**Tubes, Endotracheal & Tracheostomy:** ***See*** **Airway Care & Management**

**Ventilation-Perfusion Abnormality**

Pulmonary vascular control in hypoplastic left-heart syndrome: hypoxic- and hypercarbic-gas therapy [El-Lessy] **40(7):737** *case report*

**Ventilator Circuits:** ***Also see*** **Equipment & Supplies**

Ventilator-associated pneumonia: an update for clinicians [Kollef & Silver] **40(11):1130** *review*

**Weaning:** ***See*** **Mechanical Ventilation, Weaning**

**Work of Breathing**

Comparison of inspiratory work of breathing in young lambs during flow-triggered and pressure-triggered ventilation [Carmack et al] **40(1):28** *research article*

Measurement of airway occlusion pressure ($P_{0.1}$) by a semi-automated bedside system [Gilmore et al] **40(7):722** *research article*

Patient-determined inspiratory flow during assisted mechanical ventilation [Haas et al] **40(7):716** *research article*

Weaning techniques and protocols [Marini] **40(3):233** *symposium paper*

What you need to know about the ventilator in weaning [Sassoon & Mahutte] **40(3):249** *symposium paper*

Work of breathing imposed by five ventilators used for long-term support: the effects of PEEP and simulated patient demand [Branson & Davis] **40(12):1270** *research article*

**Work Redesign:** ***Also see*** **Professionalism**

Continuing education: motivated or mandated? [Czachowski] **40(6):617** *editorial*

Discharge planning for the respiratory care patient **40(12):1308** *clinical practice guideline*

Not turf protection but teamwork [Marcelis] **40(3):302** *letter*

RCPs and health-care reform: demonstrating value, creating opportunity [Shrake] **40(2):162** *Program Committee Special Lecture*

Respiratory care in the era of work redesign: out with the bath water (maybe) but do save the baby! [Stoller] **40(7):700** *editorial*

Some RCPs jeopardize their careers and our future [Wiedeman] **40(1):123** *letter*; also see related letter **39(10):1004**

# The American Respiratory Care Foundation Announces Literary Awards for 1995

### 1995 Award for Best Original Paper

*Best Paper Published from November 1994 through November 1995 ($2,000)*

Patient-Determined Inspiratory Flow during Assisted Mechanical Ventilation—Carl F Haas MLS RRT, Richard D Branson RRT, Linda M Folk RRT, Robert S Campbell RRT, Constance R Wise BS RRT, Kenneth Davis Jr MD, Ronald E Dechert MS RRT, and John G Weg MD [Respir Care 1995;40(7):716-721]

### Best Review Paper

*Best Review Paper Published from November 1994 to November 1995 ($500)*

Pulmonary Disease in AIDS: Implications for Respiratory Care Practitioners—Debra L Medin BS RRT and Frederick P Ognibene MD [Respir Care 1995;40(8):832-854]

### Allen & Hanburys OPEN FORUM Awards

*Best Papers Based on OPEN FORUM Presentations*

A Case of Patient-Ventilator Dyssynchrony Caused by Inadvertent PEEP—Tom Blackson RRT, Joseph Ciarlo BA RRT, and Albert Rizzo MD [Respir Care 1995;40 (11):1144-1147] ($500)

The Impact of a Postoperative Oxygen Therapy Protocol on Use of Pulse Oximetry and Oxygen Therapy—JJ Komara Jr RRT, and James K Stoller MD [Respir Care 1995;40(11):1125-1129] ($500)

Asthma Self-Management Programs Can Reduce the Need for Hospital-Based Asthma Care—Gretchen Lawrence BA RRT [Respir Care 1995;40(1):39-43] ($500)

Bench Evaluation: Three Face-Shield CPR Barrier Devices—Mark Simmons MSEd RPFT RRT, Dan Deao BS RRT, Laura Moon BS RRT, Kristi Peters MS, and Sally Cavanaugh PhD [Respir Care 1995;40(6):618-623] ($500)

Evaluation of a Method for Measuring Minute Volumes during Bias-Flow Ventilation—Adalberto Torres Jr MD, Minken P Yeh PhD, Sterling Wilson MS, Michael Anders RRT, and Mark J Heulitt MD [Respir Care 1995;40(1):22-27] ($500)

### Dr Allen DeVilbiss Technology Paper Award

*Best Paper published from November 1994 through November 1995 that addresses new technology or a new application of current technology in respiratory care ($2,000 cash plus travel expenses to the AARC Annual Meeting to receive the award)*

Inhaled Nitric Oxide: Evaluation of a Continuous Titration Delivery Technique for Infant Mechanical and Manual Ventilation—Peter Betit BS RRT, Ian Adatia MD, Patrice Benjamin RRT, John E Thompson RRT, and David L Wessel MD [Respir Care 1995;40(7):706-715]

### Radiometer Awards for Best Features

Kittredge's Corner—Respiratory Inductive Plethysmography: Application in Infants—Sheila Horan Alderson BS RRT and Robert Hughes Warren MD [Respir Care 1995;40(1):114-120] ($333)

Test Your Radiologic Skill—Neonate with Right Hemithorax Opacification—Steven E Sittig RRT [Respir Care 1995;40(3):296-301]

Test Your Radiologic Skill—Removal of a Closed-System, Directional-Tip Suction Catheter—Robert A Milisch MEd RRT, David S Rho MD, and Sheila A Schell RRT [Respir Care 1995;40(4):438-441]

RESPIRATORY CARE

# Manuscript Preparation Guide

## General Information

RESPIRATORY CARE welcomes original manuscripts related to respiratory care and prepared according to these Instructions. Manuscripts are blinded and reviewed by professionals who are experts in their fields. Authors are responsible for all aspects of the manuscript and receive galleys to proofread before publication. Each accepted manuscript is copyedited so that its message is clear and it conforms to the Journal's style. Published papers are copyrighted by Daedalus Inc and may not be published elsewhere without permission.

Editorial consultation is available at any stage of planning or writing. On request, specific guidance is provided for all publication categories. These Instructions and related materials are available. Write to RESPIRATORY CARE, 11030 Ables Lane, Dallas TX 75229-4593, call (214) 243-2272, or fax (214) 484-6010.

## Publication Categories & Structure

**Research Article:** A report of an original investigation (a study). It includes a Title Page, Abstract, Introduction, Methods, Results, Discussion, Conclusions, Product Sources, Acknowledgments, References, Tables, Appendices, Figures, and Figure Captions.

**Evaluation of Device/Method/Technique:** A description and evaluation of an old or new device, method, technique, or modification. It has a Title Page, Abstract, Introduction, Description of Device/Method/Technique, Evaluation Methods, Evaluation Results, Discussion, Conclusions, Product Sources, Acknowledgments, References, Tables, Appendices, Figures, and Figure Captions.

**Case Report:** A report of a clinical case that is uncommon, or was managed in a new way, or is exceptionally instructive. All authors must be associated with the case. A case-managing physician must either be an author or furnish a letter approving the manuscript. Its components are Title Page, Abstract, Introduction, Case Summary, Discussion, References, Tables, Figures, and Figure Captions.

**Review Article:** A comprehensive, critical review of the literature and state-of-the-art summary of a pertinent topic that has been the subject of at least 40 published research articles. Title Page, Outline, Introduction, Review of the Literature, Summary, Acknowledgments, References, Tables, Appendices, and Figures and Captions may be included.

**Overview:** A critical review of a pertinent topic that has fewer than 40 published research articles.

**Update:** A report of subsequent developments in a topic that has been critically reviewed in this Journal or elsewhere.

**Point-of-View Paper:** A paper expressing personal but substantiated opinions on a pertinent topic. Title Page, Text, References, Tables, and Illustrations may be included.

**Special Article:** A pertinent paper not fitting one of the foregoing categories may be acceptable as a Special Article. Consult with the Editor before writing or submitting such a paper.

**Editorial:** A paper drawing attention to a pertinent concern; it may present an opposing opinion, clarify a position, or bring a problem into focus.

**Letter:** A signed communication about prior publications in this Journal or about other pertinent topics. Tables and illustrations may be included. Mark "For publication."

**Blood Gas Corner:** A brief, instructive case report involving blood-gas values—with Questions, Answers, and Discussion.

**Drug Capsule:** A mini-review paper about a drug or class of drugs that includes discussions of pharmacology, pharmacokinetics, and pharmacotherapy.

**Kittredge's Corner:** A brief description of the operation of respiratory care equipment—with information from manufacturers and editorial comments and suggestions.

**PFT Corner:** Like Blood Gas Corner, but involving pulmonary function tests.

**Test Your Radiologic Skill:** Like Blood Gas Corner, but involving pulmonary medicine radiography and including one or more radiographs, may involve imaging techniques other than conventional chest radiography.

**Review of Book, Film, Tape, or Software:** A balanced, critical review of a recent release.

## Preparing the Manuscript

Print on one side of white bond paper, 8.5 in. x 11 in. (216 x 279 mm) with margins of at least 1 in. (25 mm) on all sides of the page. Use ***double-spacing*** throughout the ***entire*** manuscript. Use a standard font (eg, Times, Helvetica, or Courier) at least 10 points in size, and do not use italics except for special emphasis. Number all pages in upper-right corners. Indent paragraphs 5 spaces. Do ***not justify***. Do ***not*** put authors' names or other iden-

tification anywhere except on the title page. Repeat title only (no authors) on the abstract page. Begin each of the following on a new page: Title Page, Abstract, Text, Product-Sources List, Acknowledgments, References, each Table, and each Appendix. Use standard English in the first person and active voice.

Center main section headings on the page and type them in capital and small letters (eg, Introduction, Methods, Results, Discussion). Begin subheadings at the left margin and type them in capital and small letters (eg, Patients, Equipment, Statistical Analysis).

**References.** Cite only published works as references. Manuscripts accepted but not yet published may be cited as references: designate the accepting journal, followed by (in press). Please provide 3 copies of the in-press article for reviewer inspection. Cite references in the text with superscript numerals. Assign numbers in the order that references are first cited. On the reference page, list the cited works in numerical order. Follow the Journal's style for references. Abbreviate journal names as in *Index Medicus*. List all authors.

Article in a journal carrying pagination throughout volume:

1. Rau JL, Harwood RJ. Comparison of nebulizer delivery methods through a neonatal endotracheal tube: a bench study. Respir Care 1992;37(11):1233-1240.

Article in a publication that numbers each issue beginning with Page 1:

2. Bunch D. Establishing a national database for home care. AARC Times 1991;15(Mar):61,62,64.

Corporate author journal article:

3. American Association for Respiratory Care. Criteria for establishing units for chronic ventilator-dependent patients in hospitals. Respir Care 1988;33(11):1044-1046.

Article in journal supplement: (Journals differ in their methods of numbering and identifying supplements. Supply sufficient information to promote retrieval.)

4. Reynolds HY. Idiopathic interstitial pulmonary fibrosis. Chest 1986;89(3, Suppl):139S-143S.

Abstract in journal: (Abstracts citations are to be avoided. Those more than 3 years old should not be cited.)

5. Stevens DP. Scavenging ribavirin from an oxygen hood to reduce environmental exposure (abstract). Respir Care 1990;35(11): 1087-1088.

Editorial in journal:

6. Enright P. Can we relax during spirometry? (editorial). Am Rev Respir Dis 1993;148(2):274.

Editorial with no author given:

7. Negative-pressure ventilation for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (editorial). Lancet 1992;340(8833):1440-1441.

Letter in journal:

8. Aelony Y. Ethnic norms for pulmonary function tests (letter). Chest 1991;99(4):1051.

Paper accepted but not yet published:

9. Hess D. New therapies for asthma. Respir Care (year, in press).

Personal author book: (For any book, specific pages should be cited whenever possible.)

10. DeRemee RA. Clinical profiles of diffuse interstitial pulmonary disease. New York: Futura, 1990:76-85.

Corporate author book:

11. American Medical Association Department of Drugs. AMA drug evaluations, 3rd ed. Littleton CO: Publishing Sciences Group, 1977.

Chapter in book with editor(s):

12. Pierce AK. Acute respiratory failure. In: Guenter CA, Welch MH, editors. Pulmonary medicine. Philadelphia: JB Lippincott, 1977.

**Tables.** Use consecutively numbered tables to display information. Start each table on a separate page. Number and title the table and give each column a brief heading. Place explanations in footnotes, including all nonstandard abbreviations and symbols. Key the footnotes with conventional designations (asterisk, dagger, double dagger, etc) in consistent order, placing them superscript in the table body. Do not use horizontal or vertical rules or borders. Do not submit tables as photographs, reduced in size, or on oversize paper. Use the same typeface as in the text.

**Illustrations.** Graphs, line drawings, photographs, and radiographs are figures. Use only illustrations that clarify and augment the text. Number them consecutively as Fig. 1, Fig. 2, and so forth according to the order by which they are mentioned in the text. Be sure all figures are cited. If any figure was previously published, include copyright holder's written permission to reproduce. Figures for publication must be of professional quality. Data for the original graphs should be available to the Editor upon request. If color is essential, consult the Editor for more information. In reports of animal experiments, use schematic drawings, not photographs. A letter of consent must accompany any photograph of a person. Do not place titles and detailed explanations on figures; put this information in figure captions. If possible, submit radiographs as prints and full-size copies of film.

**Drugs.** Identify precisely all drugs and chemicals used, giving generic names, doses, and routes of administration. If desired, brand names may be given in parentheses after generic names. Drugs should be listed on the product-sources page.

**Commercial Products.** In parentheses in the text, identify any commercial product (including model number if applicable) the first time it is mentioned, giving the manufacturer's name, city, and state or country. If four or more products are mentioned, do not list any manufacturers in the text; instead, list them on a Product Sources page at the end of the text, before the Refer-

ences. Provide model numbers when available and manufacturer's suggested price, if the study has cost implications.

**Ethics.** When reporting experiments on human subjects, indicate that procedures were conducted in accordance with the ethical standards of the institution's committee on human experimentation. State that informed consent was obtained. Do not use patient's names, initials, or hospital numbers in text or illustrations. When reporting experiments on animals, indicate that the institution's policy, a national guideline, or a law on the care and use of laboratory animals was followed.

**Statistics.** Identify the statistical tests used in analyzing the data, and give the prospectively determined level of significance in the Methods section. Cite only textbook and published article references to support choices of tests. Identify any general-use or commercial computer programs used, naming manufacturers and their locations. These should be listed on the product-sources page.

**Units of Measurement.** Express measurements of length, height, weight, and volume in metric units appropriately abbreviated; temperatures in degrees Celsius; and blood pressures in millimeters of mercury (mm Hg). Report hematologic and clinical-chemistry measurements in conventional metric and in SI (Systémé Internationale) units. Show gas pressures (including blood gas tensions) in torr. List SI equivalent values, when possible, in brackets following non-SI values—for example, "PEEP, 10 cm $H_2O$ [0.981 kPa]." For conversion to SI, see RESPIRATORY CARE 1988;33(10):861-873 (Oct 1988) and 1989;34(2):145 (Feb 1989).

**Conflict of Interest.** Authors are asked to disclose any liaison or financial arrangement they have with a manufacturer or distributor whose product is part of the submitted manuscript or with the manufacturer or distributor of a competing product. (Such arrangements do not disqualify a paper from consideration and are not disclosed to reviewers.) A statement to this effect is included on the cover-letter page.

**Abbreviations and Symbols.** Use standard abbreviations and symbols. Avoid creating new abbreviations. Avoid all abbreviations in the title and unusual abbreviations in the abstract. Use an abbreviation only if the term occurs several times in the paper. Write out the full term the first time it appears, followed by the abbreviation in parentheses. Thereafter, employ the abbreviation alone. Never use an abbreviation without defining it. Standard units of measurement can be abbreviated without explanation (eg, 10 L/min, 15 torr, 2.3 kPa).

Please use the following forms: cm $H_2O$ (not cmH2O), f (not bpm), L (not l), L/min (not LPM, l/min, or lpm), mL (not ml), mm Hg (not mmHg), pH (not Ph or PH), $p > 0.001$ (not $p>0.001$), s (not sec), $S_{pO_2}$ (pulse-oximetry saturation).

### Submitting the Manuscript

Mail three copies of the manuscript, figures, diskette, and the Cover Letter & Checklist to RESPIRATORY CARE, 11030 Ables Lane, Dallas TX 75229-4593. Do not fax manuscripts. Protect figures with cardboard. Keep a copy of the manuscript and figures. Receipt of your manuscript will be acknowledged.

**Computer Diskettes.** A manuscript may be submitted on a Macintosh or IBM-DOS diskette. Macintosh documents on 3.5 in. diskettes written in Microsoft Word versions 4.0 and 5.0 are preferred. However, we can convert most documents (including PC-DOS format) to our format. Label each diskette with date; author's name; name of word-processing program and version used to prepare documents; and filename(s). Do not write on a diskette except with a felt-tipped pen. Tables and figures must be in their own separate files, with software identified. Supply 3 hard copies of the manuscript with the diskette.

**Prior and Duplicate Publication.** Work that has been published or accepted elsewhere should not be submitted. In special instances, the Editor may consider such material, provided that permission to publish is given by the author and original publisher. Please consult the Editor before submitting such work.

**Authorship.** All persons listed as authors should have participated in the reported work and in the shaping of the manuscript; all must have proofread the submitted manuscript; and all should be able to publicly discuss and defend the paper's content. A paper with corporate authorship must specify the key persons responsible for the article. Authorship is not justified solely on the basis of solicitation of funding, collection or analysis of data, provision of advice, or similar services. Persons who provide such ancillary services exclusively may be recognized in an Acknowledgments section.

**Permissions.** The manuscript must be accompanied by copies of permissions to reproduce previously published material (figures or tables); to use illustrations of, or report sensitive personal information about, identifiable persons; and to name persons in the Acknowledgments section.

**Reviewers.** Please supply the names, credentials, affiliations, addresses, and phone/fax numbers of three professionals whom you consider expert on the topic of your paper. Your manuscript may be sent to one or more of them for blind peer review.

**Editorial Office:**

RESPIRATORY CARE
11030 Ables Lane
Dallas TX 75229-4593
(214) 243-2272 (telephone)
(214) 484-6010 (fax)

## Cover Letter & Checklist

A copy of this completed form must accompany all manuscripts submitted for publication.

Title of Paper: _____

Publication Category: _____

Authors: _____

Author to be Contacted: _____ Phone: _____ FAX: _____

Mailing Address of Contact Author: _____

Reprints: ☐ Yes ☐ No

"We, the undersigned, have all participated in the work reported, proofread the accompanying manuscript, and approve its submission for publication." (Please print and include credentials, title, institution, academic appointments, city and state. If more that 4 authors, please use another copy of this form.)

Author Name: _____

Author Signature/Date _____

Author Name: _____

Author Signature/Date _____

Author Name: _____

Author Signature/Date _____

Author Name: _____

Author Signature/Date _____

Has this research been presented in a public forum? ☐ Yes ☐ No

If yes, where, when and by whom? _____

Has this research received awards? ☐ Yes ☐ No

If yes, please describe. _____

Do any of the authors have a financial interest in the products mentioned in this paper or competing products?

☐ Yes ☐ No If yes, please disclose: _____

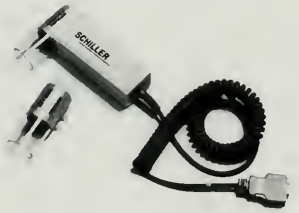
**Checklist:**

☐ Is double-spacing used throughout entire manuscript?
☐ Are all pages numbered in upper-right corners?
☐ Are all references, figures, and tables cited in the text?
☐ Has the accuracy of the references been checked, and are they correctly formatted?
☐ Have SI values been provided?
☐ Has all arithmetic been checked?
☐ Have generic names of drugs been provided?
☐ Have necessary written permissions been provided?
☐ Have authors' names been omitted from text and figure labels?
☐ Have copies of 'in press' references been provided?
☐ Has the manuscript been proofread by all the authors?

# New Products & Services

News releases about new products and services will be considered for publication in this section. There is no charge for these listings. Send descriptive release and glossy black and white photographs to RESPIRATORY CARE Journal, New Products and Services Dept, 11030 Ables Lane, Dallas TX 75229-4593.

**TRACHEOSTOMY KIT.** Smiths Industries Medical Systems offers a kit designed for bedside tracheostomy procedures. The Per-fit, according to the manufacturer, is designed to provide physicians with a quick and safe means of bedside tracheostomy for critically ill patients. The kit contains the Portex Per-fit Tube, with a radiopaque line for easy radiographic identification of tube location; a prep tray complete with sponge applicators, gauze, Iodophor PVP solution, and drape; and a procedural tray with a tracheostomy tube, anesthetics, and all instruments to perform the procedure. The kit is available in 3 sizes—7-mm, 8-mm and 9-mm ID. To order, call (800) 257-5361. Please mention RESPIRATORY CARE when calling.




**DISPOSABLE SENSOR.** Schiller America introduces a disposable spirometry sensor, the SP-150. The sensor is small and precise and can be disposed of after each patient use. According to Schiller, high-precision manufacturing makes the calibration of each sensor unnecessary. In addition, electronics in the system's handle immediately transfer measured data into a signal that makes long and sensitive transmission tubes unnecessary. The sensor is available with Schiller's spirometry and ECG combination systems. Mention RESPIRATORY CARE when you call (800) 247-8775 for more information.

**OXYGEN CYLINDERS.** Lightweight "E" cylinders are now available from Victor Medical. The company claims the cylinders are easy for patients to use. When compared to aluminum cylinders, the steel cylinders reduce owner operating costs by providing an additional 1.5 hours of oxygen and by requiring hydrotesting only once every 10 years. Each cylinder is painted with a quality paint for maintenance-free operation. For details, mention RESPIRATORY CARE when you call Victor Medical at (800) 382-8187.

**COMPUTER-BASED TRAINING PROGRAM.** Savant Audiovisuals Inc releases an interactive computer-based training program—*Protecting Yourself against Bloodborne Diseases*. According to Savant, the program teaches the critical elements of OSHA's Bloodborne Pathogens Standard and complies with OSHA training and record-keeping requirements. The program covers universal precautions, personal protective equipment, accidents and cleanup. An IBM-compatible PC running Windows 3.1 or later version is required to run the program. To order a demonstration disk, mention RESPIRATORY CARE when you call Savant at (800) 472-8268; California residents, call (714) 870-7880. Write to the company at Dept RC, 801 East Chapman Ave, P O Box 3670, Fullerton CA 92634.

**TUBERCULOSIS RESPIRATOR.** Neoterik Health Technologies Inc announces the new Tuberculosis Respirator designed to comply with the new OSHA policy and Center for Disease Control guidelines. The CF60 Respirator is battery-powered with a selection of comfortable and practical hoods, rechargeable batteries, 99.99% HEPA filters, and a 3-year warranty, according to Noeterik. The respirator provides protection to employees in hospitals, correctional institutions, homeless shelters, long-term care facilities, and drug treatment centers. For details, write to Neoterik Health Technologies Inc, 401 Main Street, Woodsboro MD 21798. Or mention RESPIRATORY CARE when you call (301) 845-2777.

# *1996 Call for Abstracts*

## RESPIRATORY CARE • OPEN FORUM

The American Association for Respiratory Care and its science journal, RESPIRATORY CARE, invite submission of brief abstracts related to any aspect of cardiorespiratory care. The abstracts will be reviewed, and selected authors will be invited to present posters at the OPEN FORUM during the AARC Annual Meeting in San Diego, California, November 3-6 1996. Accepted abstracts will be published in the October 1996 issue of RESPIRATORY CARE. Membership in the AARC is not required for participation.

### SPECIFICATIONS—READ CAREFULLY!

An abstract may report **(1) an original study, (2) the evaluation of a method or device, or (3) a case or case series.** Topics may be aspects of adult acute care, continuing care/rehabilitation, perinatology/pediatrics, cardiopulmonary technology, or health-care delivery. The abstract may have been presented previously at a local or regional—but not national—meeting and should not have been published previously in a national journal. The abstract will be the only evidence by which the reviewers can decide whether the author should be invited to present a poster at the OPEN FORUM. Therefore, *the abstract must provide all important data, findings, and conclusions*. Give specific information. Do not write such general statements as "Results will be presented" or "Significance will be discussed."

### Essential Content Elements

**Original study.** Abstract *must* include (1) Background: statement of research problem, question, or hypothesis; (2) Method: description of research design and conduct in sufficient detail to permit judgment of validity; (3) Results: statement of research findings with quantitative data and statistical analysis; (4) Conclusions: interpretation of the meaning of the results.

**Method/device evaluation.** Abstract *must* include (1) Background: identification of the method or device and its intended function; (2) Method: description of the evaluation in sufficient detail to permit judgment of its objectivity and validity; (3) Results: findings of the evaluation; (4) Experience: summary of the author's practical experience or a lack of experience; (5) Conclusions: interpretation of the evaluation and experience. Cost comparisons should be included where possible and appropriate.

**Case report.** Abstract *must* report a case that is uncommon or of exceptional educational value and must include (1) Introduction: Relevant basic information important to understanding the case. (2) Case Summary: Patient data and response, details of interventions. (3) Discussion: Content should reflect results of literature review. The author(s) should have been actively involved in the case and a case-managing physician must be a co-author or must approve the report.

### Abstract Format and Typing Instructions

Accepted abstracts will be photographed. The first line of the abstract should be the title in all capital letters. Title should explain content. Follow title with names of all authors (including credentials), institution(s), and location. Underline presenter's name. Type or electronically print the abstract *single spaced in the space provided on the abstract blank*. Insert only one letter space between sentences. Text submission on diskette is encouraged but must be accompanied by a hard copy. Identifiers will be masked (blinded) for review. Make the abstract all one paragraph. Data may be submitted in table form, *and simple figures may be included provided they fit within the space allotted*. No figures, illustrations, or tables are to be attached to the abstract form. Provide all author information requested at the bottom of abstract form. A clear photocopy of the abstract form may be used. Standard abbreviations may be employed without explanation. A new or infrequently used abbreviation should be preceded by the spelled-out term the first time it is used. Any recurring phrase or expression may be abbreviated, if it is first explained. Check the abstract for (1) errors in spelling, grammar, facts, and figures; (2) clarity of language; and (3) conformance to these specifications. An abstract not prepared as requested may not be reviewed. Questions about abstract preparation may be telephoned to the editorial staff of RESPIRATORY CARE at (214) 243-2272.

### Deadline Allowing Revision

Authors may choose to submit abstracts early. Abstracts postmarked by February 11, 1996 will be reviewed and the authors notified by letter only to be mailed by March 22, 1996. Rejected abstracts will be accompanied by a written critique that should, in many cases, enable authors to revise their abstracts and resubmit them by the final deadline (April 28, 1996).

### Final Deadline

The mandatory Final Deadline is April 28 (postmark). Authors will be notified of acceptance or rejection *by letter only*. These letters will be mailed by July 15, 1996.

### Mailing Instructions

Mail (Do not fax!) 2 clear copies of the completed abstract form, diskette (if possible), and a stamped, self-addressed postcard (for notice of receipt) to:

RESPIRATORY CARE OPEN FORUM
11030 Ables Lane
Dallas TX 75229-4593

# 1996 Respiratory Care Open Forum
## Abstract Form

18.8 cm or 7.4"

13.9 cm or 5.5"

1. Title must be in all upper case (capital) letters, authors' full names and text in upper and lower case.
2. Follow title with all authors' names including credentials (underline presenter's name), institution, and location.
3. Do not justify (ie, leave a 'ragged' right margin).
4. **Do not use type size less than 10 points.**
5. All text, tables, and figures must fit into the rectangle shown.
6. Submit 2 clean copies. This form may be photocopied if multiple abstracts are to be submitted.

Mail original & 1 photocopy (along with postage-paid postcard) to

**Respiratory Care Open Forum**
**11030 Ables Lane**
**Dallas TX 75229-4593**

*Early deadline is February 11, 1996 (postmark)*

*Final deadline is April 28, 1996 (postmark)*

**Presenter**

Name & Credentials

Mailing Address

Voice Phone & Fax

**Corresponding Author if Different from Presenter**

Name & Credentials

Mailing Address

Voice Phone & Fax

# MEDWATCH

THE FDA MEDICAL PRODUCTS REPORTING PROGRAM

For VOLUNTARY reporting by health professionals of adverse events and product problems

Page ___ of ___

Form Approved: OMB No. 0910-0291 Expires: 12/31/04
See OMB statement on reverse.

FDA Use Only (RESP CARE)

Triage unit sequence #

## A. Patient information

Patient identifier

In confidence

2. Age at time of event: _____ or Date of birth: _____

3. Sex ☐ female ☐ male

4. Weight _____ lbs or _____ kgs

## B. Adverse event or product problem

☐ Adverse event and/or ☐ Product problem (e.g., defects/malfunctions)

Outcomes attributed to adverse event (check all that apply)

☐ death _____ (mo/day/yr)
☐ life-threatening
☐ hospitalization – initial or prolonged
☐ disability
☐ congenital anomaly
☐ required intervention to prevent permanent impairment/damage
☐ other: _____

Date of event (mo/day/yr)

4. Date of this report (mo/day/yr)

Describe event or problem

Relevant tests/laboratory data, including dates

Other relevant history, including preexisting medical conditions (e.g., allergies, race, pregnancy, smoking and alcohol use, hepatic/renal dysfunction, etc.)

## C. Suspect medication(s)

1. Name (give labeled strength & mfr/labeler, if known)
#1
#2

2. Dose, frequency & route used
#1
#2

3. Therapy dates (if unknown, give duration) from/to (or best estimate)
#1
#2

4 Diagnosis for use (indication)
#1
#2

5. Event abated after use stopped or dose reduced
#1 ☐ yes ☐ no ☐ doesn't apply
#2 ☐ yes ☐ no ☐ doesn't apply

6. Lot # (if known)
#1
#2

7. Exp. date (if known)
#1
#2

8. Event reappeared after reintroduction
#1 ☐ yes ☐ no ☐ doesn't apply
#2 ☐ yes ☐ no ☐ doesn't apply

9. NDC # (for product problems only)
– –

10. Concomitant medical products and therapy dates (exclude treatment of event)

## D. Suspect medical device

1. Brand name

2. Type of device

3. Manufacturer name & address

4 Operator of device
☐ health professional
☐ lay user/patient
☐ other:

5. Expiration date (mo/day/yr)

6.
model # _____
catalog # _____
serial # _____
lot # _____
other #

7. If implanted, give date (mo/day/yr)

8. If explanted, give date (mo/day/yr)

9 Device available for evaluation? (Do not send to FDA)
☐ yes ☐ no ☐ returned to manufacturer on _____ (mo/day/yr)

10. Concomitant medical products and therapy dates (exclude treatment of event)

## E. Reporter (see confidentiality section on back)

1. Name, address & phone #

2. Health professional?
☐ yes ☐ no

3. Occupation

4. Also reported to
☐ manufacturer
☐ user facility
☐ distributor

5. If you do NOT want your identity disclosed to the manufacturer, place an " X " in this box. ☐

FDA

Mail to: MEDWATCH
5600 Fishers Lane
Rockville, MD 20852-9787

or FAX to:
1-800-FDA-0178

FDA Form 3500 (6/93)

Submission of a report does not constitute an admission that medical personnel or the product caused or contributed to the event.

# ADVICE ABOUT VOLUNTARY REPORTING

**Report experiences with:**

- medications (drugs or biologics)
- medical devices (including in-vitro diagnostics)
- special nutritional products (dietary supplements, medical foods, infant formulas)
- other products regulated by FDA

**Report SERIOUS adverse events. An event is serious when the patient outcome is:**

- death
- life-threatening (real risk of dying)
- hospitalization (initial or prolonged)
- disability (significant, persistent or permanent)
- congenital anomaly
- required intervention to prevent permanent impairment or damage

**Report even if:**

- you're not certain the product caused the event
- you don't have all the details

**Report product problems** – quality, performance or safety concerns such as:

- suspected contamination
- questionable stability
- defective components
- poor packaging or labeling

**How to report:**

- just fill in the sections that apply to your report
- use section C for all products except medical devices
- attach additional blank pages if needed
- use a separate form for each patient
- report either to FDA or the manufacturer (or both)

**Important numbers:**

- 1-800-FDA-0178 to FAX report
- 1-800-FDA-7737 to report by modem
- 1-800-FDA-1088 for more information or to report quality problems
- 1-800-822-7967 for a VAERS form for vaccines

**If your report involves a serious adverse event with a device** and it occurred in a facility outside a doctor's office, that facility may be legally required to report to FDA and/or the manufacturer. Please notify the person in that facility who would handle such reporting.

**Confidentiality:** The patient's identity is held in strict confidence by FDA and protected to the fullest extent of the law. The reporter's identity may be shared with the manufacturer unless requested otherwise. However, FDA will not disclose the reporter's identity in response to a request from the public, pursuant to the Freedom of Information Act.

The public reporting burden for this collection of information has been estimated to average 30 minutes per response, including the time for reviewing instructions, searching existing data sources, gathering and maintaining the data needed, and completing and reviewing the collection of information. Send your comments regarding this burden estimate or any other aspect of this collection of information, including suggestions for reducing this burden to:

Reports Clearance Officer, PHS
Hubert H. Humphrey Building,
Room 721-B
200 Independence Avenue, S.W.
Washington, DC 20201
ATTN: PRA

and to:
Office of Management and Budget
Paperwork Reduction Project
(0910-0230)
Washington, DC 20503

**Please do NOT return this form to either of these addresses.**

FDA Form 3500-back

**Please Use Address Provided Below – Just Fold In Thirds, Tape and Mail**

**Department of Health and Human Services**
Public Health Service
Food and Drug Administration
Rockville, MD 20857

**Official Business**
Penalty for Private Use $300

NO POSTAGE NECESSARY IF MAILED IN THE UNITED STATES OR APO/FPO

**BUSINESS REPLY MAIL**
FIRST CLASS MAIL PERMIT NO. 946 ROCKVILLE, MD

*POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY FOOD AND DRUG ADMINISTRATION*

MEDWATCH
**The FDA Medical Products Reporting Program**
**Food and Drug Administration**
**5600 Fishers Lane**
**Rockville, MD 20852-9787**

Not-for-profit organizations are offered a free advertisement of up to eight lines to appear, on a space-available basis, in Calendar of Events in RESPIRATORY CARE. Ads for other meetings are priced at $5.50 per line and require an insertion order. Deadline is the 20th of the month two months preceding the month in which you wish the ad to run. Submit copy and insertion orders to Calendar of Events, RESPIRATORY CARE, 11030 Ables Lane, Dallas TX 75229-4593.

# Calendar of Events

## AARC & AFFILIATES

**January 26, 1996 in Austin, Texas.** The TSRC announces its Annual Winter Forum at the Marriott Hotel on 11th Street. Contact the TSRC Executive Office in Dallas at (214) 680-2455 or contact Mimi Bartel in Houston at (713) 746-5354.

**January 31–February 2 in Clackamas, Oregon.** The OSRC announces its annual Pacific Northwest Respiratory Care Conference at the Monarch Hotel. Presentations include "Health Care Reform: What It Means to the Practitioner," "New Modes of Mechanical Ventilation," "What's Snooze in Sleep," and "Humor and Healing in Respiratory Care." CRCE credit has been requested. Contact Irene Iwata-Morgan at (503) 494-6158.

**February 20–23, 1996 in Reno, Nevada.** The American Lung Association (ALA) of Nevada and the NSRC host the 15th Annual High Sierra Critical Care Conference at the Peppermill Hotel-Casino. The conference covers critical care topics in adult, pediatric, and neonatal medicine. Contact Sherry Landis, ALA of Nevada, PO Box 7056, Reno NV 89510.

## OTHER MEETINGS

**February 25–28, 1996 in Snowbird, Utah.** The American College of Chest Physicians (ACCP) hosts its next meeting on Cardiopulmonary Wellness and Rehabilitation in Snowbird. The meeting is approved for 12 hours of CRCE credit. Contact Renata Simonsen, ACCP Education Department, 3300 Dundee Rd, Northbrook IL 60062, (708) 498-1400, fax (708) 498-5460.

**March 28–30, 1996 at Big Sky, Montana.** The American Lung Association (ALA) of Montana announces the 15th Annual Big Sky Pulmonary & Critical Care Medicine Conference. Contact the ALA of Montana, 825 Helena Ave, Helena MT 59601, (406) 442-6556, fax (406) 442-2346.

**April 9–15, 1996 in Miami, Florida.** The Ventilation Assisted Children's Center (VACC) of Miami Children's Hospital Division of Pulmonology announces its free camp for ventilation-assisted children and their families. Activities include field trips, swimming, games, arts, and crafts. The application deadline for overnight campers is January 5, 1996. Contact Director Moises Simpser or Coordinator Cathy Klein, VACC, Division of Pulmonology, Miami Children's Hospital, 3200 SW 60th Ct, Suite 203, Miami FL 33155-4076, (305) 662-VACC, fax (305) 663-8417.

**September 18–21, 1996 in San José, Costa Rica.** The Costa Rica Society for Respiratory Therapy presents the 2nd Latin America Congress and Caribbean Congress for Respiratory Therapy. Contact Lic Carlos E Pereira Hidalgo, Apartado 184-1017, San José 2000, San José, Costa Rica, (506) 232-8310, fax (506) 232-7786.

## Mark Your Calendars!

### Future AARC Conventions

**November 3-6, 1996 (Sunday – Wednesday)**
**San Diego, California**

**December 6-9, 1997**
**New Orleans, Louisiana**

**November 7-10, 1998**
**Atlanta, Georgia**

# Authors in This Issue


Bogdonoff, David L ..... 1279
Branson, Richard D ..... 1270
Comroe Jr, Julius H ..... 1346
Davis Jr, Kenneth ..... 1270
Hess, Dean ..... 1264
Leisure, George S ..... 1279
Spiekermann, Burkhard F ..... 1279
Stone, David J ..... 1279
Strohl, Kingman P ..... 1269
Wilson, Teri Nikolai ..... 1344


# Advertisers in This Issue

To advertise in RESPIRATORY CARE, contact Tim Goldsbury, 20 Tradewinds Circle, Tequesta FL 33469 at (407) 745-6793, Fax (407) 745-6795, email: timo2607@aol.com, for rates and media kits. For recruitment/classified advertising contact RESPIRATORY CARE's Marketing Assistant, Beth Binkley, at (214)243-2272, Fax (214)484-6010. Dale Griffiths is RESPIRATORY CARE's Marketing Director.


Allen & Hanburys Division of Glaxo Wellcome Inc ..1252-1255
Circle Reader Service No. 141 See ad

Arbor Medical ..... 1259
Circle Reader Service No. 141 Call (313) 663-6662

Breasy Medical Equipment (US) Inc ..... Cover 3
Circle Reader Service No. 98 Call (800) 845-8606

DeVilbiss Health Care Inc ..... 1244
Circle Reader Service No. 133 Call (800) DEV-1988

Dräger ..... 1247
Circle Reader Service No. 101 Call (703) 817-0100

Fisher & Paykel Healthcare ..... 1249, 1251
Circle Reader Service No. 124, 126 Call (800) 321-3832

Gwinnett Hospital System ..... 1259
Circle Reader Service No. 102 Call (800) 533-7138

HealthScan Products Inc ..... 1242
Circle Reader Service No. 119 Call (800) 962-1266

Nellcor Puritan Bennett ..... Cover 2
Circle Reader Service No. 155 Call (800) 255-6773

Passy-Muir Inc ..... 1241
Circle Reader Service No. 165 Call (800) 634-5397

Sherwood Medical ..... Cover 4
Circle Reader Service No. 104 Call (800) 325-7472

U.S. Army ..... 1259
Circle Reader Service No. 94 Call (800) USA-ARMY



**COPYRIGHT INFORMATION.** RESPIRATORY CARE is copyrighted by Daedalus Enterprises Inc. Reproduction in whole or in part without the express written permission of Daedalus Enterprises Inc is prohibited. Permission to photocopy material in this Journal for noncommercial purposes of scientific or educational advancement is granted. Anyone may, without permission, quote up to 500 words of material in this journal provided the quotation is for noncommercial use and RESPIRATORY CARE is credited. Longer quotation requires written approval by the author and publisher. Single reprints are available only from the authors. Reprints for commercial use may be purchased from Daedalus Enterprises Inc. For information and prices call (214) 243-2272.

**DISCLAIMER.** The opinions expressed in any article or editorial are those of the author and do not necessarily reflect the views of the Editors, the American Association for Respiratory Care (AARC), or Daedalus Enterprises Inc. Neither are the Editors, the AARC or the Publisher responsible for the consequences of the clinical applications or use of any methods or devices described in any article or advertisement.

**SUBSCRIPTION RATES.** Individual subscription rates are $65 per year (12 issues), $125 for 2 years, and $185 for 3 years in the US and Puerto Rico. Rates are $80 per year, $155 for 2 years, and $230 for 3 years in all other countries (add $84 per year for air mail). Single copies when available cost $5; add $7 for air mail postage to overseas countries. Checks should be made payable to RESPIRATORY CARE and sent to the subscription office at 11030 Ables Lane, Dallas TX 75229-4593.

**SUBSCRIPTION RATES FOR ASSOCIATIONS.** An association may offer individual subscriptions of RESPIRATORY CARE to its members at a reduced rate. The rates based on membership are: $6 per year for 101-500 members; $5.50 for 501-1,500 members; $5 for 1,501-10,000 members; $4 for more than 10,000 members. For information, contact Ray Masferrer at (214) 243-2272.

**CHANGE OF ADDRESS.** Notify RESPIRATORY CARE as soon as possible of any change in address. Note the subscription number (from the mailing label) and your name, old address, and new address. Allow 6 weeks for the change. To avoid charges for replacement copies of missed issues, requests must be made within 60 days in the US and 90 days in other countries.

**MANUSCRIPTS.** The Journal publishes clinical studies, method/device evaluations, reviews, and other materials related to cardiopulmonary medicine and research. Manuscripts may be submitted to the Editorial Office, RESPIRATORY CARE, 11030 Ables Lane, Dallas TX 75229-4593. Instructions for authors are printed in every issue. An expanded version of the Instructions is available from the editorial office.

*Copyright © 1995, by Daedalus Enterprises Inc.*

# RESPIRATORY CARE

**December 1995 Reader Service Reply Card** **Expires 3/31/96**

Name _____ Phone _____

Institution _____

Street _____

City/State/Zip _____

For faster service, FAX to (609) 786-4415

**Send Free Information on the Items Circled Below**
**(Please Circle No More Than 15 Items)**

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 80 | 81 | 82 | 83 | 84 | 85 | 86 | 87 | 88 | 89 | 90 | 91 | 92 | 93 | 94 |
| 95 | 96 | 97 | 98 | 99 | 100 | 101 | 102 | 103 | 104 | 105 | 106 | 107 | 108 | 109 |
| 110 | 111 | 112 | 113 | 114 | 115 | 116 | 117 | 118 | 119 | 120 | 121 | 122 | 123 | 124 |
| 125 | 126 | 127 | 128 | 129 | 130 | 131 | 132 | 133 | 134 | 135 | 136 | 137 | 138 | 139 |
| 140 | 141 | 142 | 143 | 144 | 145 | 146 | 147 | 148 | 149 | 150 | 151 | 152 | 153 | 154 |
| 155 | 156 | 157 | 158 | 159 | 160 | 161 | 162 | 163 | 164 | 165 | 166 | 167 | 168 | 169 |
| 170 | 171 | 172 | 173 | 174 | 175 | 176 | 177 | 178 | 179 | 180 | 181 | 182 | 183 | 184 |
| 185 | 186 | 187 | 188 | 189 | 190 | 191 | 192 | 193 | 194 | 195 | 196 | 197 | 198 | 199 |

**For AARC Membership Information, Circle 81.**
**For RESPIRATORY CARE Subscription Information, Circle 82.**

**I. Type of Institution/Practice**
1. ❑ Hosp 500 or more beds
2. ❑ Hosp 300 to 499 beds
3. ❑ Hosp 200 to 299 beds
4. ❑ Hosp 100 to 199 beds
5. ❑ Hosp 100 or less beds
6. ❑ Skilled Nursing Facility
7. ❑ Home Care Practice
8. ❑ School

**II. Department**
A. ❑ Respiratory Therapy
B. ❑ Cardiopulmonary
C. ❑ Anesthesia Service
D. ❑ Emergency Dept

**III. Specialty**
1. ❑ Clinical Practice
2. ❑ Perinatal Pediatrics
3. ❑ Critical Care
4. ❑ Clinical Research
5. ❑ Pulmonary Function Lab
6. ❑ Home Care/Rehab
7. ❑ Education
8. ❑ Management

**IV.Position**
A. ❑ Dept Head
B. ❑ Chief Therapist
C. ❑ Supervisor
D. ❑ Staff Technician
E. ❑ Staff Therapist
F. ❑ Educator
G. ❑ Medical Director
H. ❑ Anesthesiologist
I. ❑ Pulmonologist
J. ❑ Other MD
K. ❑ Nurse

**V. Are you a member of the AARC?**
1. ❑ Yes 2. ❑ No


# RESPIRATORY CARE

**December 1995 Reader Service Reply Card** **Expires 3/31/96**

Name _____ Phone _____

Institution _____

Street _____

City/State/Zip _____

For faster service, FAX to (609) 786-4415

**Send Free Information on the Items Circled Below**
**(Please Circle No More Than 15 Items)**

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 80 | 81 | 82 | 83 | 84 | 85 | 86 | 87 | 88 | 89 | 90 | 91 | 92 | 93 | 94 |
| 95 | 96 | 97 | 98 | 99 | 100 | 101 | 102 | 103 | 104 | 105 | 106 | 107 | 108 | 109 |
| 110 | 111 | 112 | 113 | 114 | 115 | 116 | 117 | 118 | 119 | 120 | 121 | 122 | 123 | 124 |
| 125 | 126 | 127 | 128 | 129 | 130 | 131 | 132 | 133 | 134 | 135 | 136 | 137 | 138 | 139 |
| 140 | 141 | 142 | 143 | 144 | 145 | 146 | 147 | 148 | 149 | 150 | 151 | 152 | 153 | 154 |
| 155 | 156 | 157 | 158 | 159 | 160 | 161 | 162 | 163 | 164 | 165 | 166 | 167 | 168 | 169 |
| 170 | 171 | 172 | 173 | 174 | 175 | 176 | 177 | 178 | 179 | 180 | 181 | 182 | 183 | 184 |
| 185 | 186 | 187 | 188 | 189 | 190 | 191 | 192 | 193 | 194 | 195 | 196 | 197 | 198 | 199 |

**For AARC Membership Information, Circle 81.**
**For RESPIRATORY CARE Subscription Information, Circle 82.**

**I. Type of Institution/Practice**
1. ❑ Hosp 500 or more beds
2. ❑ Hosp 300 to 499 beds
3. ❑ Hosp 200 to 299 beds
4. ❑ Hosp 100 to 199 beds
5. ❑ Hosp 100 or less beds
6. ❑ Skilled Nursing Facility
7. ❑ Home Care Practice
8. ❑ School

**II. Department**
A. ❑ Respiratory Therapy
B. ❑ Cardiopulmonary
C. ❑ Anesthesia Service
D. ❑ Emergency Dept

**III. Specialty**
1. ❑ Clinical Practice
2. ❑ Perinatal Pediatrics
3. ❑ Critical Care
4. ❑ Clinical Research
5. ❑ Pulmonary Function Lab
6. ❑ Home Care/Rehab
7. ❑ Education
8. ❑ Management

**IV.Position**
A. ❑ Dept Head
B. ❑ Chief Therapist
C. ❑ Supervisor
D. ❑ Staff Technician
E. ❑ Staff Therapist
F. ❑ Educator
G. ❑ Medical Director
H. ❑ Anesthesiologist
I. ❑ Pulmonologist
J. ❑ Other MD
K. ❑ Nurse

**V. Are you a member of the AARC?**
1. ❑ Yes 2. ❑ No

W[illegible]ram it down your throat, but there really is an alternative to Controlled Mechanical Ventilation (CMV). ***The Hayek Oscillator*** is a revolutionary non-invasive ventilator that avoids the complications of intubation and its inherent risks. ***The Hayek Oscillator.*** for the first time offers medical professionals a real choice. ***The Hayek Oscillator*** can be effectively used to treat acute and chronic respiratory insufficiency in adult and pediatric patients.

***The Hayek Oscillator*** can be used equally well in the hospital, the sub-acute care environment and in the home.

- Non-invasive.
- Ventilates normal and sick lungs.
- Improves oxygenation.
- Quick and easy to use.
- Avoids barotrauma.
- Provides effective physiotherapy.
- Superior secretion mobilization.
- May shorten hospital stays.
- Cost effective.

***For information in North America:***
Breasy Medical Equipment (US) Inc.,
4116B Rose Lake Drive, Charlotte, NC 28217
U.S.A. Tel: 800 845 8606

***For the rest of the world:***
Breasy Medical Equipment Ltd.,
9 Burroughs Gardens,
London NW4 4AU. U.K. Tel: +44 181 203 6877

Breasy Medical Equipment

**Circle 98 on reader service card**
**Visit AARC Booth 1320 in Orlando**

# Author
# in This


Bogdonoff, David
Branson, Richard
Comroe Jr, Julius
Davis Jr, Kenneth
Hess, Dean.....


# Advertis
# in This I


Allen & Hanburys D
Circle Reader Service
Arbor Medical .....
Circle Reader Service
Breasy Medical Equi
Circle Reader Service
DeVilbiss Health Ca
Circle Reader Service
Dräger .....
Circle Reader Service
Fisher & Paykel Heal
Circle Reader Service



NO POSTAGE NECESSARY IF MAILED IN THE UNITED STATES

**BUSINESS REPLY MAIL**
FIRST-CLASS MAIL PERMIT NO. 439 RIVERTON, NJ
POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

*AARC Publications*
PO BOX 11605
RIVERTON NJ 08076-7205

NO POSTAGE NECESSARY IF MAILED IN THE UNITED STATES

**BUSINESS REPLY MAIL**
FIRST-CLASS MAIL PERMIT NO. 439 RIVERTON, NJ
POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

*AARC Publications*
PO BOX 11605
RIVERTON NJ 08076-7205



**COPYRIGHT INFORMAT**
Daedalus Enterprises Inc.
express written permissi
Permission to photocopy
poses of scientific or edu
without permission, quote
vided the quotation is for
credited. Longer quotatio
publisher. Single reprints a
commercial use may be p
information and prices call


**DISCLAIMER.** The opinions expressed in any article or editorial are those of the author and do not necessarily reflect the views of the Editors, the American Association for Respiratory Care (AARC), or Daedalus Enterprises Inc. Neither are the Editors, the AARC or the Publisher responsible for the consequences of the clinical applications or use of any methods or devices described in any article or advertisement.

**SUBSCRIPTION RATES.** Individual subscription rates are $65 per year (12 issues), $125 for 2 years, and $185 for 3 years in the US and Puerto Rico. Rates are $80 per year, $155 for 2 years, and $230 for 3 years in all other countries (add $84 per year for air mail). Single copies when available cost $5; add $7 for air mail postage to overseas countries. Checks should be

[illegible] RESPIRATORY CARE as soon as possible of any change in address. Note the subscription number (from the mailing label) and your name, old address, and new address. Allow 6 weeks for the change. To avoid charges for replacement copies of missed issues, requests must be made within 60 days in the US and 90 days in other countries.

**MANUSCRIPTS.** The Journal publishes clinical studies, method/device evaluations, reviews, and other materials related to cardiopulmonary medicine and research. Manuscripts may be submitted to the Editorial Office, RESPIRATORY CARE, 11030 Ables Lane, Dallas TX 75229-4593. Instructions for authors are printed in every issue. An expanded version of the Instructions is available from the editorial office.


*Copyright © 1995, by Daedalus Enterprises Inc.*

# INTUBATE OR OSCILLATE?

## AT LAST, A VIABLE ALTERNATIVE TO THIS.

We don't want to ram it down your throat, but there really is an alternative to Controlled Mechanical Ventilation (CMV). ***The Hayek Oscillator*** is a revolutionary non-invasive ventilator that avoids the complications of intubation and its inherent risks. ***The Hayek Oscillator,*** for the first time offers medical professionals a real choice. ***The Hayek Oscillator*** can be effectively used to treat acute and chronic respiratory insufficiency in adult and pediatric patients.

A secretion "management" program on the oscillator achieves superior secretion mobilization when compared to conventional physiotherapy.

***The Hayek Oscillator*** can be used equally well in the hospital, the sub-acute care environment and in the home.

- Non-invasive.
- Ventilates normal and sick lungs.
- Improves oxygenation.
- Quick and easy to use.
- Avoids barotrauma.
- Provides effective physiotherapy.
- Superior secretion mobilization.
- May shorten hospital stays.
- Cost effective.

***For information in North America:***
Breasy Medical Equipment (US) Inc.,
4116B Rose Lake Drive, Charlotte, NC 28217
U.S.A. Tel: 800 845 8606

***For the rest of the world:***
Breasy Medical Equipment Ltd.,
9 Burroughs Gardens,
London NW4 4AU U.K. Tel: +44 181 203 6877

Breasy Medical Equipment

Circle 98 on reader service card
Visit AARC Booth 1320 in Orlando

*INTRODUCING*

# 3 NEW Technologies in Arterial Blood Sampling

## ASPIR-PULSE™ Arterial Blood Gas System

### NEW, Advanced ASPIR-PULSE™ Syringe

Patented design improves filling for both **Aspir**ation and ***Puls***ation techniques

### NEW, Purge Guard™

One-Handed Safety Needle Venting System

Patent-pending design allows One-Handed operation to immediately **Purge** Air Bubbles, immediately **Guard** the needle point and immediately free the other hand to apply pressure at the puncture site

### NEW, Total Ca++ Lyte™

Precision Heparin

A breakthrough patented heparin to maximize the precision of test results obtained from the new critical-care blood gas and critical analyte analyzers

| Non-Heparinized Control | Aspir-Pulse™ Total Ca++ Lyte |
|---|---|
| 1.22, 1.24 | 1.23 |
| 2.38 | 2.35 |
| 0 | 12 |

See your Sherwood Medical O.R./Critical Care Sales Representative or call 1-800-325-7472 for a complete listing of ASPIR-*Pulse*™ Arterial Blood Gas Kits.

Sherwood MEDICAL
ST. LOUIS, MO 63103 U.S.A.

Circle 104 on reader service card
Visit AARC Booths 533 and 535 in Orlando

© 1994 Sherwood Medical Company